## OXFORD

EVET B

14

# Oxford **Nord Skills** UPPER-INTERMEDIATE - ADVANCED VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic



# Oxford **Nord Skills** UPPER-INTERMEDIATE - ADVANCED VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic



#### OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

#### Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, 0x2 6pr, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

#### O Oxford University Press 2020

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted First published in 2020 2024 2023 2022 2021 2020 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

#### No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

#### You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 460574 8	Pack
ISBN: 978 0 19 460575 5	Student's Book
15BN: 978 0 19 479862 4	Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 10th edition app

#### Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher. Front cover images: Alamy Stock Photo (woman with laptop/Mariusz Szczawinski): Oxford University Press (shark/Shane Gross), (hiker/ Olga Danylenko): Shutterstock (man on scooter/OPOLJA), (CT scanner/ zlikovec), (apple/Gunnar Pippel), (drilling platform/Oil and Gas Photographer), (protest poster/nicostock), (man with saxophone/Africa Studio), (dining/Pressmaster), (graffiti/Mehaniq).

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity. Disclaimer: This book includes some words which have or are asserted to

have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the listing of that word in the Word list but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

p.20 Entries from Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary, 10th edition © Oxford University Press, reprinted by permission. p.104 Adapted from 'A Revolutionary Era in Medicine' from http://fiftyyears.healthcare.ucla. edu/, 1955-2005, UCLA Health, reprinted by permission. p.125 Extract from 'What's so wrong with coalition governments?' by Martin Kettle, Courtesy of Guardian News & Media Ltd. p.133 Extract from 'Media watchdog to investigate broadcasting of Christchurch livestream' by Jennifer Duke, 18 March, 2019, *The Sydney Morning Herald*, reproduced by permission. p.148 Extracts adapted from 'Here's how I exploited a gap in the market', an interview with Jeff Sacree', from www. businesslink.gov.uk, © Crown Copyright 2012, used under the terms of the Open Government Licence v1.0 and reprinted by permission of Jeff Sacree'/Gecko Head Gear Limited.

Sources: www.holisticonline.com, www.bbc.co.uk/news

#### Some of the ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people: Elżbieta Rudniak (Poland), Eva Paulerová (Czech Republic), Florence Waeni (Kenya), Franky Lau (China), Katalin Elekes (Hungary), Mallika Ghosh (India), Susana Dichiera (Argentina).

Alamy Stock Photo pp.22 (woman/Tetra Images). (tattoo/Scott Dumas), (old lady/David Grossman), 26 (diving/Wavebreakmedia Ltd), 34 (pinching/Hugh Threfall), 59 Clynt Garnham Lifestyle, 128 Maggie Sully, 132 dpa picture alliance, 156 (barn/Linda Kennedy), 157 (guide book/Jeff Greenberg). 166 Incamerstock. 194 (shade/Paul Biggins); Getty Images pp.26 (split coffee/Lew Robertson), 34 (tapping/PhotoObjects. net). (punching/Rubberball Productions): Oxford University Press pp.56 (mango), (broccoli), 57(grater), 80 (Algarve), 85, 104, 137; Shutterstock pp.18 (drawing pin/Garsya), (paper clip/Gunchanit Thanompong), (nail polish/suravid), 22 (baby/Monkey Business Images). (grungy girl/Jetrel), (bing man/Discovod), 23 (woman in stripes/Daniella Danilejko), (woman in blue/Alena Ozerova), 24 Koldonov, 25 (clenched fist/Vidl Studio), (folded arms/Kopytin Georgy), (two people/fizkes), (young girl/Haley Alex), 26 (baby/New Africa), (praying/ildintoriak), (man/fizkes), (sweeping/Syda Productions), (shrugging/The Faces), (lipstick/Makistock), (leaning/baranq), (dragging/Elnur), (tearing paper/ Obprod), (plugging in/Tang Wai Chung/Truphotos.com), (combing/ Dirima), (folding/Cultura Creative RF), (begging/Andrey\_Popov). (sewing/Lightfield Studios Inc), (drilling/ALPHA PROD), (screw/ Prafull P Patil). 28 (hiker/seirceil), 29 (stretch/WeStudio), (press-ups/ slonme), 31 FLPA, 32 Wavebreakmedia Ltd, 34 (squeeze/FREEPIK2), (grabbing/Photographee.eu). (cat/Tamonwan apaikawee). (hugging/ Twinster Photo0, (slapping/Anton -Dios), (sun tan lotion/Maridav). 35 Prostock-studio, 36 (rash/Sanapth Chindathong), (lungs/Explode). white t shirt/Freeman Studio), 38 (skull/Baimeng), (black eye/rdgraphe), (sprained wrist/Chanintorn.v), (blister/Cherries), (bruise/BERNATSKAIA OKSANA), 39 (plaster/oatawa), (gauze/Todor Rusinov), (bandage/ Pixel-Shot), 40 javi\_indy, 42 (Joel/kikovic), (Makito/wong sze yeun), (marek/Olena Simko), (Jacinta/Zurijeta), 46 Stokkete, 47 michaeljung), 52 (mother and daughter/milatas). (daughter/comzeal images). 54 DONOT6\_STUDIO, 56 (avocado), (grapefruit/Robert Zp), (apricot/ Vitaly Korovin). (raspberry, aubergine/Nattika). (raisins/Diana Taliun). (celery/Kaiskynet Studio), (asparagus/zcw), (courgette/Superhenag168), (beetroot/Valentina Razumov), (spinach/Jiri Hera), (almonds/sinelev), (basil/Hortimages), (lentils/mtphoto19), (ginger/MRAORAOR), 57 (deep fat fryer/gowithstock), (casserole/Alekseykolotivin), (food processor/ PERLA BERANT WILDER), (whisk/Jiri Hera), (colanderindigolotos), (peeler/M.Schuppich), (lemon squeezer/ViktoriyaFivko), (corkscrew) ajt), (scales/showcake), (knife/masik0553), (frying pan/Tatiana Popova), 62 (ambulance/Joerg Huettenhoelscher), (helicopter/ChiccoDodiFC). (radio/PunkerBarbyO), 64 PongMoji, 66 (suede/photocell), (silk/sindii), 68 (socket/Lazy Bear), (plug/K-U Haessler), (stool/JoEimaGe), (doormat/ Stephen Lavery), (hoover/tale), (ironing board/socrates471), (smoke alarm/Zerbor0, (dustbin/Natalis Boroda0, (radiator/VH-Studio), (broom/ akf ffm), (chest of drawers/ANTHONY PAZ), (doorbell/ArtWell), (bunk bed/Scott-lee), (bookcase/New Africa), (letter box/Happy Stock Photo), 69 (tap/banu sevim), (blind/SOLOTU), (porch step/Hannahmariah), 70 (yawning/Luis Molinaro), (pyjamas/Art Directors & Trip), (nightdress/ WendyTDavis), (alarm/nito), 77 (man/mimagephotography), 79 Speedkinz, 80 (Prague/Jasmine\_K), (China/Hung Chung Chih), 82 4H4 Photography), 83 Alan Curtis, 84 (terraced house/andersphoto). (semi-detached/DrimaFilm), 86 (tree/Potapov Alexander), (pond/ Kwangmoozaa), (frog/Nancy Hixon), (greenhouse), 87 (bush/Volodymyr\_ Shutun), (digging/Syda Productions), (mowing/fotosparrow), (relaxing/ Inigogutierrez), 92 (Bowie/Fabio Diana), (Queen/Muhammad suyanto), (cinema/Dean Drobot) (audience/aergondo2). 100 (phone charging/ Remitski Ivan), (batteries/art\_photo\_sib), (solar panels/Smileus), 103 Scott Ward, 104 (kidney/Peyker), 107 Kay fochtmann, 111 Simon Ling. 114 AnMenshikova, 118 (tank/viper-zero). (helicopter/Thor Jorgen Udvang), (parachute/Phuong D Nguyen), (missile/aapsky), 138 (plumber/ Andrey\_Popov), (electrician/Lightfield Studios Inc), (carpenter/ Dusan Petkovic), 150 (helmet/Ajintai), (lifeboat/Paul Brewer), (surfer/ EpicStockMedia), 156 (old barn/Andrew Roland), 157 (anti snore device/ Manju Mandavya), (clock/Photohedgehog), (cat/David Asch), (bike/ Sergiy1975), 170 (skyscraper/Vladmir Zhuk), (cranes/Yakiv Korol), 181 (gold/Galina Tiun), (feather/Stargazer0, (bat/Rosa Jay), (post/Sulae), (rake/Oleksandr Kostiuchenko). (bedsheet/bane.em), (beetroot/Kyselov Inna). (bone/Leo Fernandes). (cake/space\_heater). (log/josefauer). (asleep/fizkes), (sieve/Vadarshop), 194 (football/Lazlo Szirtesi). All illustrations by: CCS Digital Education.

## Contents

Acknowledgements	2
Introduction	6

## EXPAND YOUR VOCABULARY

01	Meaning and style	
02	Familiar words, new meanings	
03	Word families	
04	Collocation	
05	Compounds	
06	Using a dictionary	

## THE BODY

07	Describing appearance	22
08	Body language	24
09	Physical actions	26
10	Physical movement	. 28
11	Sight	. 30
12	Sounds and hearing	. 32
13	Touch	. 34
14	Illness	. 36
15	Injuries	. 38

## PEOPLE

16	Character	
17	Assessing character	
18	Feelings	
19	Relationships	
20	Heroes and villains	
21	Behaviour	
22	Families	
23	Manners	

## EVERYDAY LIFE

24	Food	56
25	Opinions about food	58
26	Cars and driving	60
27	Accidents	62
28	Weather	64
29	Clothes	66
30	At home	68
31	Sleep	70
32	Personal finance	72
33	Crime	74
	Urban living	
35	Rural life	78

## LEISURE AND LIFESTYLE

36	Holidays	
37	Holiday accommodation	
38	Buying and renting	
39	Gardens and gardening	
40	Personal technology	
41	Competitive football	
42	Music	
43	Plays and films	
44	Socializing	

## A CHANGING WORLD

45	Describing change	98
46	Energy conservation	100
47	Wildlife under threat	102
48	Medical advances	104
49	Migration	106
50	Politics: ideology	108

## INSTITUTIONS

51	Local government	110
52	Health care services	112
53	The police	114
54	Prisons	116
55	The armed forces	118

## NEWS AND CURRENT AFFAIRS

56	News headlines	120
57	Writing for a newspaper	122
58	Politics in practice	124
59	Protest movements	126
60	Disasters	128
61	Investigations	130
62	Celebrity	132
63	Human interest stories	134

## WORK AND BUSINESS

64	Jobs	136
65	Careers	138
	Ways of working	
67	The workplace	142
68	Time management	144
69	The business world	146
70	A successful business	148

### CONCEPTS

71	Success and failure	150
72	Problems and solutions	152
73	Old and new	154
74	Time	156

## WRITTEN ENGLISH

75	Link words and phrases	158
76	Academic English	160
77	Literature	162
78	Art	164
79	Scientific English	166
80	Technical English	168

### SPOKEN ENGLISH

81	Everyday language	170
82	Phrasal verbs	172
83	Idioms (1)	174
84	Idioms (2)	176
85	Two-part expressions	178
86	Similes	179
87	Connecting speech	180
88	Sayings	182
89	Vague language	184

4

## ASPECTS OF LANGUAGE

-

90	The passive	185
91	Prefixes	186
92	Suffixes that form nouns	188
93	Suffixes that form adjectives and verbs	
94	Verbs and nouns with the same form	192
95	Verbs with prepositions	
96	Nouns with prepositions	196
97	Adjectives with prepositions	197
98	Prepositional phrases	
99	Adjectives	
100	Adverbs	
An	swer key	204
Wo	ord list	
Ab	breviations	256

## Introduction

#### What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



Level 1: Elementary (CEFR levels A1 and A2)



Level 2: Intermediate (CEFR level B1)



Level 3: Upper-Intermediate – Advanced (CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

#### How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, often on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 4–12 units. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. People, Leisure and lifestyle, News and current affairs, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Expand your vocabulary, Aspects of language.

The Upper-Intermediate - Advanced level also contains:

- an Answer key for all the exercises
- a Word list of all the vocabulary taught with a reference to the units where each item appears and the CEFR level for words/phrases in the Oxford 3000<sup>™</sup>/5000<sup>™</sup> or Oxford Phrase List<sup>™</sup>.

Oxford Word Skills comes with the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the 🐵 to check the correct pronunciation.

#### What vocabulary is included?

At Upper-Intermediate - Advanced level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of topic areas, e.g. behaviour, competitive sport, medical advances
- · a range of concepts, e.g. problems and solutions, time, old and new
- different fields of written English, e.g. literature, science, technical English
- a wide range of phrasal verbs and idioms
- various aspects of language, e.g. compounds, prefixes and suffixes, prepositional phrases

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels increasingly add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative use of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000 or Oxford 5000. These are lists of 3,000 and 5,000 words, respectively, identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the



most important words for learners of English. These items have been divided in the Oxford 3000 into four levels in accordance with the CEFR (A1, A2, B1 and B2), and the Oxford 5000 contains additional words at CEFR levels B2 and C1.

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling items from the A2 level.
- The Upper-Intermediate Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes additional B2 items and C1 words from the Oxford 5000.

The Oxford 3000/5000 lists are supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List, which contains just under 1,000 phrases considered important for students at each level. The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced word list also draws on topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000/5000 alongside the topic lists, we are able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *overtake* when talking about driving, *extinct/extinction* when talking about climate change and the danger to wildlife, or *self-catering* when talking about holidays. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we are also able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases at each level.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary effort information on other meanings.

## To the teacher

#### How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

visuals



#### sentences and short dialogues

Time Management tips	basis	a particular way in which sth is organized or done: <b>on a day</b> -
<ul> <li>Do you note down jobs you have to do on a daily basis?</li> <li>Do you put up reminders in the office about these aims?</li> <li>Do you prioritize the tasks you have to accomplish by the end of the day?</li> <li>Do you stick to your priorities, no matter what happens?</li> <li>Do you focus on one thing at a time?</li> </ul>	reminder prioritize	to-day/daily/weekly/regular basis sth that makes you remember sth remind sb (of/about sth) v put tasks, problems, etc. in order of importance so that you can do the most important first priority n: a high/low/top priority

Idiom	Meaning
I'm going to do the essay again. ~ What for?	for what purpose or reason
Are you going to the party? ~ You bet!	used to emphasize that you are keen to do sth
I've got my exam today. ~ OK. (The) best of luck.	used to wish sb success in what they are going to do

#### different types of extended written text

The Glasgow School of Art has been devastated yet again by a huge fire. More than 120 firefighters tackled the blaze, which began on Friday night and spread to a concert hall next door. There were no reported casualties, but police evacuated 27 people from nearby properties as a precaution. At the moment, there is no suspicion the fire was started deliberately, but the intense heat is preventing fire officers from getting in to assess the damage. First Minister, Nicola Sturgeon, praised the courage of the firefighters who fought to save the building.

GLOSSARY	
devastate	destroy or damage sth badly devastation n
firefighter	a person whose job is to stop fires, working for the <b>fire brigade</b>
tackle	make an effort to deal with a difficult problem or situation
blaze	a large and often dangerous fire
casualty	a person who is killed or injured in a war or accident
precaution	sth you do in order to avoid danger or problems
suspicion	a feeling or belief that sth is wrong or that sb has done sth wrong <b>suspicious (of sb)</b> adj <b>suspect</b> v
deliberately	in a way that was planned <b>deliberate</b> adj
intense	very great, strong or serious: intense heat/cold/ pressure intensity n
assess	judge or form an opinion about sth assessment n
praise	say that sb is good and should be admired for sth praise n
courage	the ability to do sth dangerous without showing fear syn bravery; courageous adj

- Visuals provide a clear guide to meaning; sentences, dialogues and extended text show words being used naturally, with the meaning explained in a glossary (or within a table). The input varies from approximately 15 items in a single A or B section, to 25–30 items on a full page of input. Here is a procedure you could follow:
- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for five-ten minutes for an A or B section, or tenfifteen minutes for a full page. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and
  the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of new items in the presentation
  sentences, dialogues or extended text. With the information from the glossary, students should then go back to
  the presentation text and check that they fully understand the meaning of the new words in those contexts.

Tell students to look at the extra words in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. The spotlight box is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value. For example:

#### SPOTLIGHT accept

Accept means 'say yes to an offer', but has some other meanings, too.

- 1 allow sb to be part of a group:
- They accepted me as one of the family. (as in the text) 2 agree to sth:
- The council has **accepted** the latest proposal. 3 admit you did sth wrong:
- I accept responsibility for the mistakes.

#### SPOTLIGHT expressing family similarities

If you **resemble someone/something**, you look like or are similar to another person/ thing. The emphasis is more on looks than character. **resemblance** *n* If you **take after someone**, you look or behave like an older member of your family. If you **follow in someone's footsteps**, you do the same job or have the same lifestyle as someone else, usually a member of your family.

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the
  items. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise, the
  presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to
  read sections of it, etc.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. This is probably a better approach, as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on practising the pronunciation if necessary. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically, as they tend to progress from pronunciation practice to receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the <u>ABOUT YOU</u> or <u>ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY</u> activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary. When they have finished an exercise, you will find that many of the exercises sentence completion and particularly dialogue completion lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs, or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- **TEST YOURSELF** When they have completed written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a book, notebook or piece of paper) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- You will often notice <u>ABOUT YOU</u> or <u>ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY</u>. These are personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pairwork activities for students to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer key, possible answers for these exercises are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

#### How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the end, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. For self-study learners in particular, it is a good idea to start with the first module on expanding your vocabulary. Self-study learners can check their answers to exercises using the Answer key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. They can also select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their vocabulary.

## Meaning and style

## A Asking about meaning

1

- Would it be accurate to say that student and pupil A are synonymous?
- No, not exactly. A student is a person who studies in a B school, college or university. Pupil has a more restricted use. A pupil is someone who only studies in a school, especially a primary school.
- It's a bit ambiguous to say she's a good student, isn't it? A
- Yes, you can interpret it in different ways. Good can B mean 'well-behaved' or 'hard-working'.
- A The meaning of wrapping paper is fairly obvious, isn't it?
- Yes, it's self-explanatory: just paper for wrapping B presents and stuff.
- Can you give me a precise definition of soul? A
- B Well, it's virtually the same as spirit: the part of you that is believed to exist after you die. But spirit has several other meanings too.

Mark the stress on these words. Use the 🔤 to help you.

#### GLOSSARY

exact and correct; without mistakes OPP inaccurate; accuracy n
having the same, or nearly the same meaning synonym n
controlled or limited
not clear; able to be explained in different ways <b>ambiguity</b> n
explain the meaning of sth interpretation n
easy to understand and not needing more explanation
clear and accurate SYN exact; precision n
almost, very nearly: virtually the same virtual adj

1	accurate	3	synonymous	5	ambiguity	7	interpretation
2	synonym	4	ambiguous	6	interpret	8	self-explanatory
Is	the meaning the sam	e or	different? Write S	or D.			
1	The meaning is virtually				ly the same.		
2	They are both students						
3	The meaning is quite p					1.044944664	
4	The sentence is ambigu					*******	
5	I don't know the exact						
6	Tom is fairly inaccurate.				e meaning.	********	
7	His soul will live on. / Hi			starcs.			
8	What she said was fairly			aid was	fairly accurate		
	wildt sile said was fairly	ann	iguous./ what sile s		any accurate.		
0	omplete the sentences	wit	h the correct form	of the	word in capitals	at the end	L
1	If you want to make sor	neth	ing clear, it's better to	avoid		AMBIGU	OUS
2	She always expresses h					PRECISE	
3	Hide and conceal are ve					SYNONY	M
4	Elsie is quite fluent but :					ACCURA	TE
5	I think this sentence is c	pen	to			INTERPR	ET
6	The instructions were		; a child c	ould und	erstand them.	EXPLAIN	L.
7	They are					VIRTUAL	
A	nswer the questions.						
1	What's the exact meani	ngo	f huge?				
2	Which word is more res	tricte	ed: aet or acauire? W	hv?			
3	Is the meaning of waitin	ng ro	om fairly self-explan	atory? W	nv? / Why not?	**********************	
4	Are slim and thin synor	vms	Why? / Why not?				
5	Is it accurate to say that	apu	pil studies in a secor	dary sch	ool? Why? / Why n	ot?	
6	I picked up my bag. Why						



## **B** Explaining style

Example	Meaning
'Thanks for your help, Sam,' she said <b>ironically</b> . Sam hadn't helped at all.	ironically using words to say the opposite of what you mean, often humorously ironic <i>adj</i> ; irony <i>n</i>
The literal sense of <i>gold</i> is 'a valuable yellow metal used to make coins, jewellery, etc.'.	literal (of words and phrases) being the basic or usual meaning literally adv
<b>Golden</b> is used <b>figuratively</b> in the sentence Working in this company is a <b>golden opportunity</b> for him.	<b>figuratively</b> (of words and phrases) not used in the basic or usual way, but in a way that makes a description more interesting ( <b>Golden</b> here means 'wonderful' or 'special'.) <b>figurative</b> adj
She has a heart of gold is an example of a metaphor. It means 'she is a very kind person'.	metaphor a word or phrase used to describe sb/ sth else in a way that is different from its normal use metaphorical adj = figurative
The dictionary marks stupid as disapproving.	disapproving (often used in dictionaries) showing that sth is bad or wrong
In <b>slang</b> , a <i>shrink</i> is a psychiatrist or a psychologist.	slang very informal words and phrases, used by particular groups of people in spoken language
Swear words are offensive to many people and not appropriate in most everyday conversations.	offensive rude in a way that causes you to be upset or angry OPP inoffensive appropriate suitable or correct OPP inappropriate
He called Tom 'an old woman'. How insulting!	insulting rude or offensive insult n, v

#### SPOTLIGHT swear

Swearing is the use of swear words (= rude or offensive language). If you swear at somebody, you might make them angry. Swear can also mean to make a serious promise to do something.

He swore that he would kill anyone who touched me.

#### 5 Underline the words which usually suggest something negative.

disapproving	figurative	inappropriate	insulting	irony
literal	metaphor	offensive	slang	swearing

#### 6 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are correct.

- The literal / figurative meaning of curtain is a piece of cloth which covers a window.
- 2 The curtain fell on her career is figurative / metaphorical. It means 'her career ended'.
- 3 Irony / Slang is commonly used to say the opposite of what you mean.
- 4 Ana is so kind; she has a heart of silver / gold.
- 5 It may be appropriate / inappropriate to ask someone how much they earn or how old they are.
- 6 He was being ironic / offensive he didn't mean to be rude.
- 7 I think it was a metaphor / an insult to say you were stupid.
- 8 Swearing is offensive / inoffensive to many people.

#### Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 Naïve often has a negative meaning and is marked '\_\_\_\_\_' in the dictionary.
- 2 Flood is one of those words that can be used literally or \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He said my food was tasteless, which I found incredibly
- 4 Knackered is very informal, means 'extremely tired', and is an example of British English .....
- 5 The offer is a \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity for my brother to work abroad for a year.
- 6 Pull your socks up is often used as a \_\_\_\_\_ meaning 'you must work harder and do better'.
- 7 A man \_\_\_\_\_\_at me in the street because I got in his way. I was very upset.
- 8 They live \_\_\_\_\_ just round the corner, so I see them every day.

2 Familiar words, new meanings

## A Using words and phrases figuratively

Familiar words may appear with an unfamiliar meaning (often a figurative meaning), or surrounded by other words that together form an idiom or common phrase.

A s I crawled along the motorway, I was having second thoughts about staying with Marcus. I'd been in two minds about going in the first place, but it was sweet of him to invite me, and I wasn't tied up, so I said 'yes'. But now it struck me that perhaps he wanted to go out with me! How could I be so thick? Marcus was very nice, but a romantic relationship was the last thing on my mind. How can I get out of this, I wondered? Just then, the traffic suddenly started to speed up, and something went into the back of me. I pulled my mobile out of my bag. 'Is that you Marcus? Listen, you're not gonna believe this, but ...'

GLOSSARY	
crawl	(of a vehicle) move very slowly
have second thoughts (about sth)	start having doubts about a decision you have made
be in two minds about sth	be unable to decide what to do about sth
sweet (of sb)	kind (of sb): It was <b>sweet of</b> you to come.
be tied up	be busy and unable to do other things
strike sb (that)	(of a thought or idea) suddenly come into sb's mind
thick inf	stupid
be the last thing on sb's mind	be the thing that sb is least likely to be thinking about
get out of sth	avoid doing sth
you're not gonna believe this	used to introduce surprising and often unwelcome news (gonna inf = going to)

\_\_\_\_\_

#### Make sentences from the jumbled words.

- 1 gonna / not / lost / this / I / but / you're / believe.
- 2 homework / out / 1 / this / get / doing / of / how / can ?
- 3 going / two / about / I'm / minds / to / in / Greece.
- 4 thing / on / university / mind / is / the / last / my.
- 5 it / take / of / sweet / to / us / was / him.

#### 2 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

- 1 Do you still want to go? ~ Actually, I'm having
- 2 Are you thinking of getting married? ~ No, that's the last thing \_\_\_\_\_!
- 3 Do you want to go to the wedding? ~ Not really, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 4 You're not gonna \_\_\_\_\_, but ... ~ You've lost my keys, again! How could you?
- 5 Did he invite all of you? ~ Yes, it was very \_\_\_\_\_\_ of him. He's a lovely man.
- 6 Are you going or not? ~ I'm still in \_\_\_\_\_\_about it, actually.
- 7 Did you think she looked like her sister? ~ Yes, I was \_\_\_\_\_\_ by how similar they are.
- 8 Could we talk about it this morning? ~ I'm afraid I'm this morning.
- 9 Why are you so late? ~ Half the road was closed. We were \_\_\_\_\_\_ along for ages.
- 10 He may not have understood the instructions. ~ Yeah, he's a bit

3 Complete the sentences using words from above with their more usual literal meanings.

- 1 Leyla is only eight months; so she's still \_\_\_\_\_\_ across the living room floor.
- 2 It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ book almost 1,000 pages.
- 3 These oranges are lovely. They're very
- 4 The men were \_\_\_\_\_, with both hands behind their backs.
- 5 I saw him \_\_\_\_\_\_ the dog with a large stick. I was really angry.
- 6 The policeman stopped me and asked me to the car.
- 7 I've just had a \_\_\_\_\_, Carrie. Do you think we could hire a car for the weekend?
- I think his \_\_\_\_\_\_ was disturbed when he had that accident.

TEST YOURSELF

12 Expand your vocabulary

## **B** Common verbs with less familiar meanings

The words in **bold** in the examples are very common when the verbs are used with the meanings in the table.

Verb	Examples	Meaning
get sb/sth to do sth	I couldn't get him to leave the house. I finally got the car to start.	make or persuade sb/sth to do sth
see what/how, etc	We may be able to help. <b>I'll see</b> what Rob says. It may be ok. <b>Let's see</b> what happens.	find out sth by looking, asking or waiting
keep	We must eat the grapes - they won't keep.	remain fresh
put	I think he <b>put</b> it very well in his essay.	say or write sth in a particular way ALSO put sth into words
push sb/yourself	Some parents push their kids really hard.	make sb work harder
leave sth to/with sb	We need to book a table. I'll leave that to you.	allow sb to take care of sth
make sth sth	My watch says 10.20. What time do you make it? He bought ten more; I make that 25 now.	think or calculate sth to be a particular time or number
bring sb/sth + adverb/preposition	It was the war that <b>brought</b> him to power. What <b>brings</b> you here? ~ I've got a meeting.	cause sb/sth to reach a particular condition or place
come with/in sth	I'm sure the radio <b>comes with</b> batteries. The chairs <b>come in</b> four different colours.	be sold or produced with a particular feature
do (for sb/sth)	I peeled six potatoes. Will that <b>do</b> ? Will these shoes <b>do for</b> the wedding?	be enough/ acceptable in a particular situation

One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?
How did you him to do it? ~ I offered him money.
These batteries in all sorts of different sizes.
If both brothers come, that will it 20 altogether.
It's the fishing that most people to this part of the coast.
When I speak to the staff tomorrow, I'll what they think.
We'd better finish the cream: it won't after today.
He has great ideas but finds it difficult to them into words.
I've got a packet of noodles. Do you think that will for six people?
Complete the dialogues with suitable verbs.
A Hello. What (1) you to this part of the building?

- B I can't (2) this new clock to work, and it didn't (3) with instructions.
- A OK, (4) it with me. I'll (5) what I can do.
- B Thanks. Oh, one other thing, we've run out of paper for the photocopier.
- A Er, there's some over there. Will that (6) ?
- B Yeah, that's plenty.
- A What are the bookings like for this evening?
- B We had two more this morning, so I (7) that 36 now.
- A Ok, but we'll need more tables. Can I (8) that with you?
- B Well, I'll (9) how things go, but I may have to (10) Mario to do it.
- A OK, but don't (11) him too hard; he's had a very tough week.

## 6 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Translate the verbs in the table into your own language. What verbs are used?

# 3 Word families

By learning words that are part of the same word family, you can often increase your vocabulary quickly and easily. For example, you will probably know the words in the left-hand column below, but do you know the related words?

Word	Related word and its meaning	Example
mistake n	mistake sb/sth for sb/sth v wrongly think that sb/sth is sb/sth else	I <b>mistook</b> the woman in the café <b>for</b> a friend of mine.
certain adj	<b>certainty</b> <i>n</i> the state of being completely sure about sth OPP <b>uncertainty</b>	Is there any certainty things will improve?
problem n	problematic adj difficult to deal with; full of problems	Some places can be <b>problematic</b> for journalists
possession n	possess v formal have or own sth	Some players just possess natural ability.
benefit n, v	beneficial adj having a good or useful effect	The extra money has been very beneficial.
require v	<b>requirement</b> <i>n</i> sth that you need or that you must have or do	A university degree is a minimum requirement
house n	<b>housing</b> <i>n</i> buildings for people to live in <b>household</b> all the people who live in one house	We need more family <b>housing</b> . Most <b>households</b> have at least one car.
likely adv	likelihood n the chance of sth happening	There's not much likelihood of success.
handle v	handling n the way sb deals with sth/sb	The situation needs careful handling.
guide n,v	guidelines n (usually pl) official rules	There are guidelines on repairing old buildings
	guidance n help or advice	Our teacher gave us some guidance.
apologize v	apologetic adj showing you are sorry	It's his fault and he's very apologetic.
notice v	noticeable adj easily seen/noticed	The scar on his face is quite noticeable.
include v	inclusive <i>adj</i> (of the cost of sth) including everything inclusion <i>n</i> the fact of including sb/sth; the fact of being included	Bed and breakfast is £80, <b>fully inclusive</b> . The <b>inclusion</b> of dancing as part of the entertainment was unnnecessary.
compare v	comparable adj similar; able to be compared	This year looks good. Are there <b>comparable</b> figures for last year?
replace v	replacement <i>n</i> a thing that replaces sth that is old, broken, etc. irreplaceable cannot be replaced	The coffee machine isn't working, so can we get a <b>replacement</b> ? My wedding ring is <b>irreplaceable</b> .
human n, adj	humanity <i>n</i> all the people in the world SYN the human race humanitarian concerned with trying to make people's lives better	War crimes are crimes against <b>humanity</b> . The war has caused a <b>humanitarian</b> crisis.
race n (of people)	<b>racism</b> <i>n</i> the unfair treatment of people who belong to a different race. The person who does this is a <b>racist</b> . <b>racist</b> <i>adj</i>	We must take action to stop <b>racism</b> in the workplace. He was attacked by a group of <b>racists</b> . The newspaper was <b>racist</b> and was closed down
recognize v	<b>recognition</b> <i>n</i> the fact that you can identify sb/ sth that you see	She'd seen me several times but showed no sign of <b>recognition</b> .

SPOTLIGHT related words with different meanings	
<ul> <li>Words in the same word family do not always have similar meanings. For example, the adjective worth can mean:</li> <li>1 having a particular value;</li> <li>2 used as a way of recommending: The castle is worth seeing.</li> </ul>	It also has these related forms and meanings: The necklace is worthless. (= without value) He's a worthy champion. (= one who deserved to win) The meeting was worthwhile. (= important, interesting, etc.)

problematic	likelihood	requirement	benefit	beneficial
vorthwhile	recognition	comparable	apologize	irreplaceable
pologetic	household	humanity	humanitarian	possess
ircle the corr	ect answer.			
This painting	g is unique; it's unre	placeable / irre	placeable.	
You get fligh	nts, accommodation	, and food; the	holiday is fully included	/ inclusive.
There is a no	oticeable / noticed d	fference betwe	een the two performance	ces.
We're amate	urs and they're prof	essionals, so w	e're not comparable / co	mparative.
People are o	lying. It's a humanite	arian / humani	ty crisis.	
I enjoyed the	e trip: it was very wo	orthy/worthwl	hile.	
			ing / apologetic about it	
People are h	omeless because th	ere's a shortag	e of cheap households	/housing.
				s. Keep the same meaning.
	it will happen?			ainty it will happen?
He deserved		WO		
	ance we'll win?		KELY	
	s earn more than in		USE	
	that he's lost a lot o	-	***************************************	
	al vase but has no v		KIH	
of these mea	t realize the importa	RECOGN	1175	
	interesting conferen			
	had a positive effect		*********	***************************************
	dialogues with a			
	ough homes in the		~ No, we need m	nore
	ople do about the o	langer of infec		nt has issued .
Was she sorr			~ Yes, very	•
	r everything?		~ Yes, it's fully	
	class to teach.		~ Yes, they're ver	у
	nge affects everyone	2.	~ Yes, it's a probl	em for
This lamp do			~ Yes, I've already	ordered a
It's a difficult	situation.		~ Yes, and it need	ds careful
	sentences with a			u ta brina un abildran
Source young	tios have warned th	ent nom more	on ho	is in parts of Africa
The post offi	ce said the parcel w	at we are facing	g a cris	's no of that.
			price very expensive.	or that.
	lvan			
I walked off	with someone else's	coat: I	it for my own.	
Flats in big c	ities are expensive in	England A	flat in Sp	ain would cost a lot less.
Some say we	will win, others say	we'll lose. The	re is a lot of	about the result.
BOUT YOUR	COUNTRY Write a	nswers to th	e questions, or talk to	another student.
Is housing a	particular problem i	n any part of th	ne country?	
Are prices ge	nerally comparable	with other cou	intries nearby, or are the	y very different?
Is there a mir	nimum requirement	for going to un	niversity?	
Do you feel t	here are any proble	ms with racism	in your country?	
			ture career?	

Expand your vocabulary

## Collocation 4

## A Verb + noun

Collocation is the common combination of particular words with each other, and particular collocations may be different in your language. In English, certain verbs collocate with certain nouns. You will need to learn many of these collocations.

In any school, the headteacher obviously has to make an effort to set an example to their staff and students, and that starts by treating everyone with respect. It is also their job to take responsibility for important decisions that the school makes. If things go well, the headteacher gets the credit; if they don't, he or she has to be prepared to take the blame.

COMPANY OF A DESCRIPTION OF A DESCRIPTIO

Carrie had been spreading a rumour that Sean and Sophie were going to have a baby, although she told everyone else to keep it a secret. It was, therefore, quite a shock when Sean finally broke the news to everyone that they were going to get a cat. We all roared with laughter - everyone except Carrie.

#### GLOSSARY attempt to do sth, especially when it make an effort is difficult (to do sth) do sth good or well that people can try to set an example copy or achieve: set a good example (to sb) behave towards sb in a polite and caring treat sb with way OPP treat sb like dirt respect accept a duty to deal with sth/sb, so that take responsibility it is your fault if sth goes wrong (for sth/sb) OPP pass the buck make sb else responsible for a difficult situation be admired and given the praise for doing get the credit sth successfully (for sth) accept responsibility for sth that take the blame (for sth) goes wrong tell a lot of people about a piece of news spread a rumour or information that may not be true not tell anyone about sth that others must keep (sth) a secret not know ALSO keep a promise / an appointment / a record be the first person to tell others about break the news sth important roar with laughter laugh loudly or a lot



- 5 It was a very funny joke, and everyone \_\_\_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_\_. My parents \_\_\_\_\_\_a good \_\_\_\_\_\_to me, and now I always \_\_\_\_\_\_an
- to do the same with my children.
   I can't remember who \_\_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ about the wedding, but we were all delighted. 8 My boss never accepts responsibility for things. He always \_\_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ and makes someone else \_\_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_. He's awful.
- 9 Young people must learn to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for their actions; it's part of growing up.

There are many combinations with take, make and set. Do you know which verbs combine with each of these nouns?

control of sth	a limit	an impression	pleasure in doing sth	sth on fire	a noise
a profit	tablets	an offer	a look at sth	the standard	
take:	******	make:	se	t:	



## **B** Adjective + noun

There are also many common *adjective* + *noun* collocations that you may need to learn. For example, a person you know well and like is a **close friend** (NOT a near friend OR an intimate friend).

#### EXAMPLE

I gave them a **detailed description** of the burglary. He speaks with a **strong accent**. Our **main concern** for the party is the weather. It was a **typical example** of his stupidity. The house was **utter chaos** when I got home.

The children had a **narrow escape**. Nice to see a **familiar face** at the party. The **vast majority** of students passed. My sister's ring is **pure gold**. I thought he'd be tall but he was **the complete opposite**.

#### MEANING

a description full of information OPP brief description a very noticeable accent OPP slight accent most important worry SYN principal concern very good example SYN perfect example complete confusion ALSO utter nonsense ideas that you think are stupid or not true = they were lucky to escape safely a person you recognize and know a very large majority not mixed with anyting else ALSO pure silk/cotton a person or thing that is as different as possible from sb/sth else SYN the exact opposite

<b>4</b> C	over the tex	t above and	match 1–8 w	ith a-h.			
1	a familiar		a e	scape			
2	a typical		bc	haos			
3	a vast		c fa	ace			
4	a slight		d o	pposite			
5	utter	*******	e a	ccent			
6	a detailed		f n	najority			
7	the exact		g d	escription			
8	a narrow		h e	xample			
5 A	nswer the q	uestions. Wh	at's				
1	a synonym	for a typical e	xample?		4	the opposite of a det	ailed description?
2	the opposit	te of a slight ad	cent?		5	a synonym for the co	mplete opposite?
3	a synonym	for the main c	oncern?		6	a noun that combine	s with <b>utter</b> ?
6 0	omplete the	e dialogues w	ith a suitable	e adjective	2+1	noun combination.	
1		what your dad		-			. Don't believe
						he says.	
2	Did they all	understand?		~ No, th	e		. I had to explain it.
3	You manag	ed to avoid the	accident?	~ Yes, bu	ut it	was a	
4	Are you wo	prried about the	exam?	~ Yes, m	y		is that I get nervou
5	Did the top	feel nice when	you tried it o	n? ~ Yes, lo	vely	. It was	
6	Do you kno	ow what she loc	oks like?	~ Yes, m	y ur	ncle gave me a	
7	Did you see	e your old friend	ds in Cardiff?			was great to see so ma	
8	Ingrid's Eng	lish is good.				ne speaks with a	
9	Do you get			~ Yes, w	e're		•
10	Was everyt	hing tidy when	you got there	? ~ No, th	e pl	ace was in	· · ·

7 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE How would you translate the phrases above? Would you use similar adjective and noun combinations, or would they be different?

## 5 Compounds

## **A** Nouns

English has a large number of compound nouns formed from a *noun* + *noun*. Cover the compounds below and read the meanings. Do you know these compounds, or can you guess them?

eaning			Compound noun
drawing pin	paper clip	barbed wire	nail polish/varnish
1	Ø	×	
		*	

Meaning	Compound noun
an official document that shows you are qualified to drive	driving licence
an official document showing when and where someone was born	birth certificate
a card given to customers by a shop to encourage them to shop there regularly. Each time they shop, they get money off goods they buy in the future.	loyalty card
a part for a car or machine to replace an old or broken part	spare part
confidence in yourself and your abilities	self-confidence
the number of years that a person is likely to live	life expectancy
a path or route that is quicker than the normal way	shortcut
the language that you first learn to speak as a child	mother tongue
food that is quick and easy to prepare and eat but not good for your health	junk food
a person that you admire and try to copy	role model

------

......

......

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

Replace the crossed-out word with a word that forms a compound noun.

- 1 Do you know a short way to the school from here?
- 2 Have you got any nail paint?
- 3 Does she have enough personal confidence?
- 4 I ripped my shirt on the twisted wire around the field.
- 5 What's the average life length for men in your country?
- 6 I stepped on a drawing nail it really hurt.
- 7 I need some paper staples to put these notes together.
- 8 Is it easy to get new parts for your car?
- 2) Complete the compound in each sentence.

  - 2 Have you got a driving \_\_\_\_\_? How long have you had it?
  - 3 Do you know where your birth \_\_\_\_\_\_ is? If so, where?
  - 4 Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_ cards for different shops? If so, which?
  - 5 Are there any short \_\_\_\_\_\_ you often take? If so, where to?
  - 6 Who has been the most important role \_\_\_\_\_ in your life?
  - 7 Do you ever wear \_\_\_\_\_ polish? If so, what colour?
  - 8 Do you often eat \_\_\_\_\_\_ food? If so, what, and why?
  - ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.
- 4 Eight of the words below form compounds with card, one forms a compound with pass, and one forms a compound with pass and card (with the same meaning). Can you complete the compounds correctly?

greetings identity bus credit rail post boarding debit SIM gift



Most compound adjectives have a hyphen (-).

It was very much a last-minute decision to go, but the kids loved it and were very well behaved.

My cousin is very absent-minded. We have a long-standing joke that whenever we meet, he pretends he doesn't know me.

These boots are worn out now, but they've been incredibly hard-wearing.

I have an uncle who is very narrowminded and self-righteous. He thinks I'm bad-tempered, but it's only him who makes me angry; we argue all the time.

GLOSSARY	
last-minute well behaved	happening at the last possible moment (compounds with <i>well</i> are hyphenated before a noun but not after a noun) behaving in a way that people think is correct and polite: <b>a well-behaved child</b>
long-standing	that has existed or lasted for a long time
worn out	1 (of a thing) no longer useful because it has been used so much 2 (of a person) exhausted from work or exercise
hard-wearing	(of a product) remaining in good condition for a long time
self-righteous	believing that what you say or do is right and other people are wrong
bad-tempered	often angry and easily annoyed

#### SPOTLIGHT adjectives with -minded

You can be narrow-minded (= not willing to listen to the ideas and opinions of others) OPP broad-minded, open-minded; absent-minded (= forgetful); or single-minded (= thinking in a concentrated way about sth and determined to achieve it).

#### 5 Answer the questions.

- 1 If something is worn out, is it no use or very comfortable?
- 2 If something is last-minute, is it very quick or at the last possible moment?
- 3 If someone is single-minded, are they determined or closed to new ideas?
- 4 If something is hard-wearing, is it uncomfortable or does it last a long time?
- If someone is worn out, are they exhausted or unhealthy? 5
- 6 If someone is absent-minded, are they stupid or forgetful?

#### 6 Form six compound adjectives using words from the box.

long	worn	behaved	standing	minded	self	
tempered	well	narrow	bad	righteous	out	

#### Complete the dialogues with a suitable compound adjective.

- 1 He always thinks he's right, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he's very \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Your parents are always open to ideas. ~ Yes, they're very \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Had you planned to go?
  3 Do you often meet up?
  4 She's very determined, isn't she?
  5 He gets angry very easily.
  6 Your correction of the set -


8	Can you complete these	compound adjectives using eit	her self or well?
-	known	confident	employed
	behaved	dressed	conscious
	service	informed	

## 6 Using a dictionary

A learner's dictionary includes a wide range of information that will help you to expand your vocabulary and use words more effectively when you speak and write. Look at these entries from the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary.

The key (()) tells you that reflect is in the Oxford 3000 and is an important word.

re-flect () (T, usually passive] to show the image of sb/sth on the surface of sth such as a mirror, water or glass: be reflected (in sth) His face was reflected in the mirror.  $\diamond$  She could see herself reflected in his eyes. 2 (1) [T, 1] to throw back light, heat, sound,

work. 4 **SE2** [1, T] to think carefully and deeply about sth: Before I decide, I need time to reflect.  $\diamond \sim on/upon$  sthes She was left to reflect on the implications of her decision.

The words before the definition give a general idea of the different meanings of **count**.

**ab·sorb ¥+ 32** /əb'zə:b; NAm£ -'zə:rb/ verb • LIQUID/GAS **1 ¥+ 32** to take in a liquid, gas or other sub-

• INFORMATION 4 1+ 1 - sth to take sth into the mind and learn or understand it 1 take in: It's a lot of information to absorb all at once.

The phrases in bold show common phrasal structures and/or collocations: they will help you to use **favour** naturally in typical contexts.

Propose is a *formal* word and more common in written English.

**Pro-pose B2** /pra'pauz/verb - SUGGEST PLAN **1 C B2** [T] (formal) to suggest a plan, an idea, etc. for people to think about and decide on: ~sth The

∼ that... She proposed that the book be banned.  $\diamond$  (BrE also) She proposed that the book should be banned.  $\diamond$  it is proposed that... It was proposed that the president be elected for a period of two years.  $\diamond$  ∼ doing sth He proposed changing the name of the company.  $\diamond$  it is proposed to do sth It was proposed to pay the money from public funds.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are listed at the end of the entry.

from a journalist) I have nothing to say about that: 'Will you resign, sir?' 'No comment!'

count a gainst sb | count sth a gainst sb to be considered or to consider sth to be a disadvantage in sb: For that job her lack of experience may count against her. count down (to sth) to think about a future event with The numbers tell you that reflect has different meanings.

Prepositions that follow reflect are shown in bold.

count () A2 /kaunt/ verb, noun

• SAY NUMBERS 1 ℃ [1] to say numbers in the correct order: Billy can't count yet. ◇ ~ (up) to sth She can count up to 10 in Italian. ◇ ~ from sth (to/up to sth) to count from 1 to 10 • FIND TOTAL 2 ℃ [T, 1] to calculate the total number of • INCLUDE 3 ℃ [T] ~ sb/sth to include sb/sth when you calculate a total: We have invited 50 people, not counting the children.

Dictionaries often provide synonyms (take sth in is a synonym for one meaning of absorb) and opposites: these help you to expand your vocabulary.

fa·Vour () B) (US favor) /'fervə(r)/ noun, verb noun • HELP 1 % B) [C] a thing that you do to help sb: Could you do

me a favour and pick up Sam from school today? ◇ I'll ask Steve to take it. He owes me a favour. ◇ Thanks for helping me out. TH return the favour (= help you because you have helped me) some time. ◇ as a ~ (to sb) I'm going as a favour to Ann, not because I want to. ◇ Do yourself a favour (= help yourself) and wear a helmet on the bike. ⊃ EXPRESS YOURSELF at PERMISSION

It is followed by a noun, a *that* clause, or an -*ing* form, so you cannot say: *He proposed us to go*.

The grammar of each word is labelled, e.g. whether a noun is countable [C], uncountable [U], plural, or usually plural (as here), etc.

cir-cum-stance ③ B2 ⊙ /'ss:kəmstəns, -sta:ns, -stæns; NAmE'ss:rkəmstæns/ noun 1 ℃ B2 [C, usually pl.] the conditions and facts that are connected with and affect a situation, an event or an action: Police said there were no suspicious circumstances surrounding the boy's death. ◇ under... circumstances Under normal circumstances, your white blood cells are able to fight infections. ◇ in... circumstances The company reserves the right to cancel this agreement in certain circumstances. ◇ In exceptional circumstances, detainees could be denied access to a lawyer.

20

he was standing behind me, but aplete the sentences with a am, could you low many people were there? here was so much information only went to the party as a prime Minister, do you have any	d on whi because the sponge has fifteen who still have n to in or their eyes and t I could see his face word from the opposit me a favour? ~ Sure. What ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	at we've said to her. all the juice. en't replied to the invitation. ne session; it was impossible. up to 50, while the others hide. in the water. <b>te page.</b> at is it?	
here's no liquid at the bottom rom the list, I have here was too much information in this game, one person closes le was standing behind me, bu <b>aplete the sentences with a</b> am, could you low many people were there? here was so much information only went to the party as a mine Minister, do you have any	because the sponge has fifteen who still have n to in or their eyes and t I could see his face word from the opposit me a favour? ~ Sure. What ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	all the juice. en't replied to the invitation. ne session; it was impossible. up to 50, while the others hide. in the water. <b>te page.</b> at is it?	
rom the list, I have here was too much information in this game, one person closes he was standing behind me, but <b>aplete the sentences with a</b> am, could you how many people were there? - here was so much information only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any	fifteen who still have n to in or their eyes and t I could see his face word from the opposit me a favour? ~ Sure. What ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	en't replied to the invitation. ne session; it was impossible. up to 50, while the others hide. in the water. te page. at is it?	
there was too much information in this game, one person closes le was standing behind me, but <b>aplete the sentences with a</b> am, could you low many people were there? here was so much information only went to the party as a mine Minister, do you have any	n to in or their eyes and t I could see his face word from the opposit me a favour? ~ Sure. What ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	ne session; it was impossible. up to 50, while the others hide. in the water. te page. at is it? ythem.	
this game, one person closes le was standing behind me, but aplete the sentences with a am, could you low many people were there? here was so much information only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any	their eyes and t I could see his face word from the opposit me a favour? ~ Sure. What ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	up to 50, while the others hide. in the water. <b>te page.</b> at is it? ythem.	
he was standing behind me, but aplete the sentences with a am, could you low many people were there? here was so much information only went to the party as a prime Minister, do you have any	t I could see his face word from the opposit me a favour? ~ Sure. Wha ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	in the water. <b>te page.</b> at is it? ythem.	
am, could you low many people were there? - here was so much information only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any	me a favour? ~ Sure. Wha ~ Lots, but I didn't actually I couldn't	at is it? ythem.	
low many people were there? here was so much information only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any	~ Lots, but I didn't actually , I couldn't	y them.	
here was so much information, only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any	l couldn't		
here was so much information, only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any	l couldn't		
only went to the party as a rime Minister, do you have any		IL dil III.	
rime Minister, do you have any	to Aine.		
	ain		
ould I ask a ?		vou want?	
m sure Bob will do it. He		,	
s out the grammar mistake	in each sentence and	write the corrections at the end	
		the the concettoris at the end.	
			************
-			
	-		*****
	J.		
words shown on the opposi	ite page.		
		vthing.	
c up these words in the 🐵. '	What special informati	on is given for each one? Write a	n exar
ence for each.			
m			
rve			
ng			
une			
	s out the grammar mistake le could see our faces reflected the proposed to leave the child ou can take dogs into shops in there were ten people there, no l need to reflect in what he said e proposed us to take the car. The <b>P</b> to complete these set words shown on the opposi myself lucky m favour nder the , l w the whole incident ou can email us or leave a then you buy someone a prese up these words in the <b>P</b> . No ence for each.	s out the grammar mistake in each sentence and the could see our faces reflected on the water. The proposed to leave the children behind. Sou can take dogs into shops in certain circumstance. There were ten people there, no counting the two of us. I need to reflect in what he said. The set to complete these sentences. You will find the vords shown on the opposite page. myself lucky to have a job that I really from favour equal pay. Inder the incident badly on everyone on our webs then you buy someone a present, it's the thought that the set these words in the set. Market for each. Market for each.	s out the grammar mistake in each sentence and write the corrections at the end. The proposed to leave the children behind. Sou can take dogs into shops in certain circumstance. There were ten people there, no counting the two of us. I need to reflect in what he said. The complete these sentences. You will find the answers in the full dictionary words shown on the opposite page. myself lucky to have a job that I really enjoy. m favour equal pay. m favour on the opposite page. Multiplication on the opposite page. Multiplication on the opposite page. Multiplication on the opposite page. Multiplication of the opposite page

## **Describing** appearance 7

## A Physical features



My little niece Keira is so cute. She's got chubby cheeks' and huge brown eyes. My sister Jessica is a bit skinny and wears a lot of make-up. Sophie is gorgeous, with a great figure, and always looks very glamorous. One of my neighbours is bald<sup>2</sup>, overweight and has a hideous tattoo<sup>3</sup>. My gran's getting on for 85 and has guite a few wrinkles<sup>4</sup> now.

#### GLOSSARY

cute chubby skinny inf	pretty and attractive, often used to describe babies, puppies, etc. slightly fat, but in an attractive way too thin ( <b>Slim</b> and <b>slender</b> are 'thin' in an attractive way.)	gorgeous inf figure glamorous	very beautiful and attractive SYN <b>stunning</b> the shape of a person's body appearing more exciting and attractive than ordinary people
make-up	cream, powder, etc. that you put on your face to make you look more attractive: wear make-up	overweight hideous be getting on for sth	rather fat very ugly be nearly a particular age, time or number: It's <b>getting on for</b> midnight.

#### Would you be happy, unhappy or not sure to be described in these ways?

bald chu	bby cute	full of wrinkles	glamorous	gorgeous	hideous	overweight	skinny	slim	stunning
HAPPY:		UNH	APPY:		N	NOT SURE:			

#### Find six pairs of words in the box and explain the connection.

chubby	gorgeous	overweight	wrinkles	babies	wear
cute	skin	make-up	cheeks	stunning	fat

#### Complete the sentences.

- 1 My brother has now got a \_\_\_\_\_\_ of a heart on his chest. I think it's horrible.
- 2 My mother's \_\_\_\_\_ 50, but still has a great \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Most babies seem to have a round face and chubby
- 4 I want people to think I'm \_\_\_\_\_, but not too skinny.
  5 He's got a few \_\_\_\_\_\_ now he's in his 70s, but I think they give his face character.
- 6 There's a picture of the two kittens asleep on a chair. They look very
- 7 My sister's boyfriends are usually quite ugly, but the new one is really \_\_\_\_\_
- Film stars always look so , don't they? I'm sure they're different in real life. 8
- 9
- much make-up these days. 10 I don't

## B Clothes and appearance

### DRESS FOR YOUR SHAPE

The key to dressing for your body shape is to enhance your best features and cleverly conceal the not so good ones. Here are a few guidelines:

- Wearing dark colours or vertical stripes1 will create the illusion ٠ of being slimmer.
- For women, high heels<sup>2</sup> are flattering because they exaggerate the length of their legs.
- If you are pear-shaped (with narrow shoulders and broad hips<sup>3</sup>), jeans that sit below the waist are flattering, as they draw attention to the waistline and make your bottom look smaller.



GLOSSARY			
key to sth	the thing that makes you able to understand or achieve sth	create an illusion (of sth) flattering	make sth appear true, which in fact is false making sb look more attractive
enhance	increase or improve the quality, value or status of sth a part of sb's face or body	exaggerate	OPP <b>unflattering</b> make sth seem bigger, better, worse or more important than it really is <b>exaggeration</b> <i>n</i>
conceal formal guidelines	hide sth information that can help you make a decision or form an opinion	broad	wide: <b>broad shoulders/hips</b> OPP <b>narrow</b> (We use <b>wide</b> more to talk about distance and geographical areas: <i>The room was 4</i> <i>metres</i> <b>wide</b> .)
vertical	OPP horizontal	draw (sb's) attention to sth	make sb notice sth

4 Underline the main stress on each word. Use the a to help you. horizontal illusion vertical conceal create enhance exaggerate exaggeration guidelines

#### 5 Circle the correct answer.

- If you create an illusion, you make something appear true / false.
- 2 Guidelines usually stop you doing something / help you.
- 3 Enhancing something is a positive / negative change.
- 4 Lines that go up and down are horizontal / vertical.
- 5 If you exaggerate something, you make it seem more / less important than it really is.
- 6 People came to the music festival from a broad / wide area.
- 7 If you wear something that is flattering, it makes you look worse / better than usual.
- 8 If you conceal something, others can / can't see it.

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- 1 The right clothes can show off your best \_\_\_\_\_\_, e.g. long legs or a slim waist.
- 2 I don't look good in jeans: my waist is quite small but I've got broad
- 3 Clothes with vertical make you look slimmer; high make you taller.
- 4 The \_\_\_\_\_\_to her success is talent, not good looks!
- 5 He wears a hat because he doesn't want to \_\_\_\_\_\_ attention to the fact he's bald.
- 6 To say he's the best-looking man in the world is a bit of an
- 7 He's getting fat but he tries to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it by wearing very loose jackets.
  8 Those trousers are very \_\_\_\_\_\_: they make her look fat.
- 9 I've got \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ shoulders, but quite a small \_\_\_\_\_\_. I've never put on much weight.
- 10 I think it's useful when fashion experts give you on how to dress.

## **Body language** 8

## **A** Reading the signs



**B**ODY LANGUAGE can tell you a lot, but if you jump to conclusions when you are trying to interpret a particular gesture, you may misinterpret what it means. For example, people who look away to avoid eye contact may not necessarily be lying: they could just be very shy. To understand body

language, therefore, we need to observe a combination of behaviour. With lying, for example, look out for any of these:

- avoiding eye contact
- sweating a lot
- going red
- biting fingernails<sup>1</sup>
- constantly moving about

#### GLOSSARY

jump to conclusions	make a decision about sth too quickly, before you have thought about all the facts	observe formal	see or notice sth. An <b>observant</b> person is good at noticing things. <b>observation</b> <i>n</i>
interpret	decide that sth has a particular meaning	combination	two or more things that exist or are put together
	interpretation n If you misinterpret sth, you give it an incorrect meaning.	look out for sth/sb	look and try to see or find sth/sb
gesture	a body movement you make to show a particular meaning	sweat	If you <b>sweat</b> , water appears on the surface of your skin because you are hot or nervous. <b>sweat</b> n
eye contact not necessarily	looking into another person's eyes used to say that sth is possibly true but is	go red	become red in the face, often when you're embarrassed syn <b>blush</b>
	not always true	constantly	all the time or very frequently

#### Good or bad? Write G or B.

1	He sweats a great deal.		5	He jumps to conclusions.	
2	She goes red all the time.		6	She's very observant.	
3	She has strong powers of observation.		7	He always makes eye contact.	
4	She never bites her fingernails.	********	8	He misinterprets what people say.	

#### Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 You should stop and think before to conclusions.
- 2 The teacher said she'd \_\_\_\_\_ out for more articles on body language.
- 3 In groups, I like to sit and listen, so I can how people react to each other.
- 4 I used to bite my \_\_\_\_\_\_a lot, but not any more.
- 5 Is it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_\_ someone's body language if you don't know them well?
- 6 If you go red, does it mean you're angry? ~ No, not
- 7 I use hand \_\_\_\_\_\_a lot. Sometimes it annoys people.
- 8 The increase in the number of students is the result of a \_\_\_\_\_\_ of different factors.
- 9 It was so hot in the room, I was starting to
- 10 I move my feet when I'm nervous I can't stop it.

#### 3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you use lots of gestures? If so, what type?
- 2 Do you think you are good at making eye contact with people?
- 3 Do you think you are observant? For example, do you notice what people are wearing?
- 4 Do you ever bite your fingernails? If so, why?
- 5 Do you blush easily? If so, does it worry you?
- 6 Do you like sitting and observing people when you are in public places? If so, why?

## **B** Interpreting gestures

Here are some common interpretations of gestures, but remember the danger of **making generalizations about** body language.



1 A clenched fist<sup>1</sup> often shows anger.



2 People who fold their arms<sup>2</sup> and cross their legs<sup>3</sup> may be defensive, and may be signalling the fact that they disagree with you.



3 People who lean towards<sup>4</sup> each other are displaying an interest in one another.



4 Women who fancy someone often touch their hair. Women also lift their heads to show more of their neck when they're flirting.

GLOSSARY				irlanguage		
make generalizations (about sth) anger defensive	make general statements about sth that may only be based on a few examples the state of being <i>angry</i> showing that you feel sb is criticizing you	d fa	ignal isplay ancy inf irt (with sb)	If you <b>signal</b> sth, you do sth that sends a particular message. <b>signal</b> <i>n</i> show signs of sth <b>display</b> <i>n</i> be sexually attracted to sb behave towards sb as if you find them sexually attractive, but not in a serious way		
Cross out the w	rong word.					
1 flirt with / by s		5	lean by / to	owards somebody		
2 make/do ger		6 fold your arms / legs				
3 a clenched ho		7		nal / display		
4 cross your boo	dy / legs	8		eone / with someone		
Complete the s	entences.					
	Conrad, and they're always		with h	nim.		
2 She	towards him and whisper	ed so	mething in	his ear. I think she him.		
3 If you say neg	ative things about his work, he be	ecom	es a bit			
4 I think I often	my arms and	*******	my	legs when I'm sitting.		
5 A clenched	sometimes indica e they've just scored a goal.	tes		, but footballers also do it when they are		
	es between couples clearly		that t	they fancy each other.		

- 7 Hand and body gestures can mean different things in different countries, so it can be dangerous to make about their meaning.
- 8 Even when he's angry, he doesn't really \_\_\_\_\_\_ any signs of emotion.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you often fold your arms or cross your legs? If so, why?
- 2 Do you think you lean towards people to show you are interested?
- 3 Do you think you flirt much?
- If you fancy someone, what gestures do you make?

TEST YOURSELF

\_\_\_\_\_

## Physical actions 9



1 He's crawling along the floor.



5 He's sweeping the floor.



9 He's dragging



2 She's kneeling (down) and praying.



3 She spilt the coffee.



7 She's putting on lipstick.



4 He's diving into the water.



8 He's leaning against a wall.



the cabinet along the floor.



6 She's shrugging

10 She's tearing a piece of paper in half.



11 He's plugging it in.



12 She's combing her hair.



13 She's folding the blanket in half.



14 He's begging for money.



15 He's sewing on a button.



16 He's nodding his head.



17 She's screwing it into the wall.

The body

26

#### SPOTLIGHT nod and shake your head

In some countries, including Britain, you can nod your head (= move it up and down) to say 'yes', and shake your head (= move it from side to side) to say 'no'.



	help you.				
1	put/shrug	6	sew	/ screw	
2	shrug / button	7	blar	nk <u>e</u> t / sp <u>i</u> ll	
3	comb/nod	8	sew	/comb	
4	lean / tear v	9	lear	n/leant	
5	sw <u>ee</u> p / kn <u>ee</u> l	10	kne	el/com <u>b</u>	
w	rite the past tense and the past part	ticiple of the	ese ve	erbs.	
1	beg	6	kne	el	
2	sweep	7	sew		
3	tear	8	put		
4	shake	9	lear	1	
5	nod		spill		
Co	omplete the phrases.				
1	fold something half	5	plug		the kettle
2	leanthe wall	6	knee	<u>.</u>	
3	divethe lake	7	sew		a button
\$	putlipstick	8			
1-	darling the correct spawar				
	nderline the correct answer.			K. I.I.	
	He was leaning against a <i>piece of paper</i>	/ door.	6		n on the blanket / kettle.
2	She folded the <i>towel / cabinet</i> in half.		7		into the water / floor.
	He dragged the <b>body/wall</b> to the door		8		e drinks / blanket.
	I'm going to put on my hair / lipstick.				ged her legs / shoulders.
	Could you plug in the <i>toaster / button</i> ?		10	He crawled	along the water / carpet.
	mplete the sentences.				
	There are more and more homeless pee	ople		for mone	ey in the streets.
2	People to God in a chu	urch.			
1	I asked Dad if I could go, but he just		his he	ead.	
ŀ	She's only ten months, so she's still				ost of the time.
	I tried to in the kettle, t				
	We all down on the flo				
	Marta was so angry, she				
	Could you help me the				
	I tried to the chest of d		dama	ged the floo	Dr.
	He was his head, so I as			-	
A P	BOUT YOU Write your answers, or ta	alk to anoth	er ste	Ident	
	Do you ever (or often) spill things?		er su	dent.	
	Do you ever (or often) spill things?	******			
	How often do you comb your hair?	******			
	Do you ever wear lipstick?				******
	Are you good at sewing? Do you pray? If so, what do you pray for	2	•••••		
	bo you pidy. It so, what do you pidy los				
	Can you dive well?				
	Can you dive well?	nes it mean '	/oc'7		***************************************
	Can you dive well? In your country, if you nod your head, do In your country, are there a lot of people	Desit mean y	es :		

## 10 / **Physical movement**

## A Ways of moving

It was a nice day so we decided to go for a stroll. I just spent the day wandering around town. We were hiking in the countryside, and I stumbled' on a rocky bit of path.

The soldiers marched along the street. The police charged across the square towards the protesters.

I rushed to catch my train.

Two policemen chased the robber across the park. I ran flat out to get home before the others.

#### GLOSSARY

stroll wander (around/ about) hike stumble (over/ on sth) march charge rush chase

a slow, relaxed walk: go for a stroll; stroll v walk somewhere slowly, often without any particular aim or in any particular direction walk a long way in the country: go hiking hit your foot against sth when you are walking or running and almost fall over trip (over) walk fairly quickly with regular steps (like a soldier) run straight at sb/sth in a noisy or aggressive way move or do sth at great speed, usually for an important reason or because you are late for sth run after sb/sth in order to catch them run after sb/sth



#### SPOTLIGHT idioms and phrasal verbs with run

run flat out run as fast as you can run off with sth take or steal sth: The thief ran off with my handbag. run sb/sth over hit sb/sth with a vehicle: I ran over the child's toy.

- run away escape from somewhere:
- The boy threw a stone then ran away.

#### Answer the questions.

- 1 Who often marches?
- ...... 2 Who might run off with something?
- 3 Who might chase after people?
- 4 What animals sometimes charge at people? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Why do people rush? 6 Why do people trip over things?
- 7 Why do people wander around?

......

.....

- 8 Where do people go hiking?

#### 2 Correct any mistakes in the underlined verbs. Be careful: the answer may be correct.

- We often go chasing in the countryside at the weekend.
- 2 About 100 angry demonstrators stumbled down the street.
- 3 The car appeared suddenly, so I had to stroll across the road.
- 4 I tripped over and hurt my ankle.
- 5 He was terribly upset when he marched over the cat.
- 6 My dog loves to <u>charge</u> rabbits.
- 7 It was a very hot humid day so we just ran flat out through the park.
- The teenager ran away because she was unhappy living at home. 8

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 When Jordan heard about his brother's accident, he to the hospital.
- and fell into some long wet grass.
- We had lots of time so we decided to go for a ...
- They broke into the shop then \_\_\_\_\_\_ with the money across the park. 4
- 5 The police car was \_\_\_\_\_\_a black BMW through the streets at great speed.
- My train was just leaving, and I had to run \_\_\_\_\_\_ to catch it. 6
- We had nothing to do so we just \_\_\_\_\_\_ around for a couple of hours. 7

## **B** Physical exercise

## My 20-minute workout

I'm not as **agile** as I used to be, and I was beginning to feel quite **stiff** early in the morning, so I asked a friend to **devise** a workout routine for me. First I **warm up** with some **stretching**<sup>1</sup> and **bending**, then I go on to more **demanding** activities, like **pressups**<sup>2</sup> to **strengthen** my muscles. But the key for me is variety: I like a **constant** change of activity to stay **motivated**. It's also **vital** that you finish by **warming down** with fairly gentle activities.



GLOSSARY	
workout	a period of physical exercise you do to keep fit work out v
agile	able to move quickly and easily agility n
stiff	feeling some pain, and unable to move easily
devise	invent a method or plan of doing sth SYN <b>think sth up</b>
warm up	do physical activities to prepare the muscles for exercise OPP warm down
bend	move your body forwards and downwards <b>bent</b> <i>adj</i>
demanding	(used about a task) needing a lot of effort or skill
constant	happening or existing all the time or again and again
motivated	wanting to do sth badly, often for a reason <b>motivation</b> <i>n</i>
vital	extremely important SYN essential, crucial

#### SPOTLIGHT verbs with -en

You can add -(e)n to a few nouns and some adjectives to form verbs.

- I want to strengthen my arms. ( = make them stronger)
- They plan to widen the road. (= make it wider)
- The illness has weakened him. (= made him weaker)

Put these words in three groups according to the pronunciation of the letter 'i'. Use the 🐵 to help you.

stiff	agile	agility	crucial	motivated	devise	demanding	widen	essential	vital	
	******									

#### 5 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

- 1 I worked in the garden yesterday, so I feel a bit stiff / demanding today.
- 2 It's easier to touch your toes if you stretch / bend your knees.
- 3 It's vital / crucial that you do exercises that are suitable for you.
- 4 You should warm up / down when you have finished your exercises.
- 5 My brother thought up / devised this new training method last year.
- 6 I can reach the ceiling if I stretch / bend my arms.
- 7 I do a short workout / press-up every morning.
- 8 I can't do certain activities because I'm not demanding / agile enough.

#### Complete the sentences.

- 1 I couldn't finish my exercises because of the \_\_\_\_\_ phone calls I was getting.
- 2 I want to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a way of doing more exercise during my working day.
- 3 If I forwards quickly, I get a bit of a pain in my back.
- 4 My brother does 30 \_\_\_\_\_\_ every day. He wants to stay fit so is very \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You must do this exercise with your knees \_\_\_\_\_, not straight.
- 6 I've got a bad knee so | need to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the muscles to give my knee more support.
- 7 My brother usually \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the gym two or three times a week.
- 8 The problem is that a lot of people don't have the \_\_\_\_\_\_ to exercise regularly.
- 9 I want to run a marathon next year, but I know it will be very ......
- 10 I had much more \_\_\_\_\_\_ when I was younger. Now I feel stiff when I get up.

## 11) Sight

## A Are computers bad for your eyesight?

eyesight

Many of us spend hours every day working at a computer. As a result, **eye strain** and **blurred vision** are common complaints. Most people also **blink** less frequently when they are **concentrating**, resulting in poor **tear** production, which can **irritate** the eyes. Here's how you can change your computer use and **ease** your **discomfort**:

- adjust your computer screen so that it is 50-65 cm from your eyes, just below eye level
- adjust the lighting to eliminate any very bright lights
- take frequent breaks, blink often to stop your eyes becoming dry, and let your eye muscles relax by looking into the distance every 15 minutes.

Remember: if a problem continues, see an optician.

#### GLOSSARY

eyesight	the ability to see ALSO sight SYN vision; good/ poor eyesight
strain	an injury in part of your body often from using it too much: eye strain, back strain
blurred vision	If your vision is blurred, you cannot see clearly.
blink	shut and open your eyes quickly
concentrate	give all your attention or effort to sth concentration n
tear	a drop of liquid that comes out of your eye when you cry
irritate	cause a part of the body to be painful or sore <b>irritation</b> <i>n</i>
ease	make sth less unpleasant or painful
discomfort	a slight feeling of pain and being uncomfortable
adjust	change sth slightly to make it more suitable adjustment n
eliminate	remove or get rid of sth elimination n
optician	a person whose job is to test people's eyes, sell glasses, etc. An <b>optician's</b> is a shop where an optician works.

## The pronunciation of the letter 'i' is the same as in bit in eight of the cases underlined. Which four are different? Use the @ to help you.

irritate vision blink optician strain eliminate eyesight discomfort

2 Circle the correct word(s). Be careful: sometimes both words are possible.

- 1 Did you know that pigs often have really poor sight / vision?
- 2 The optician can eliminate / adjust your glasses if they are too loose.
- 3 We are currently trying to eliminate / ease theft from our offices.
- 4 I can get eye strain if I irritate / concentrate for too long without taking a break.
- 5 These eye drops should adjust / ease the pain.
- 6 I could see a strain / tear in the corner of her eye.
- 7 If you get any discomfort / irritation, go and get your eyes checked.
- 8 She got a new pair of glasses from the doctor's / optician's.

One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?
Sore, tired or burning eyes are symptoms of eye.
I went to the chemist's to get some stuff to the pain.
I think these glasses will be fine with a small.
Even with glasses, there are some problems you can't completely.
The said I needed new glasses.
Bright lights for a period of time can your eyes.
People's vision can be a bit if they drink too much alcohol.
There were in her eyes when she told me the sad news.
The flash of a camera makes a lot of people.
If you work too long, tiredness will affect your powers of.

4 ABOUT YOU Have you suffered from any of these problems? If so, what did you do about it? Write your answer, or talk to another student.

## **B** A peaceful sight

We stood at the top of the hill for ages, gazing at the spectacular view below. In the distance, the port was barely visible through the early morning mist, but we could just make out the island. As we drove back down, I caught a glimpse of a waterfall and asked Marcello to stop. Then, all of a sudden, a young deer appeared with its mother. They stood completely still, looking at us suspiciously, then ran off and vanished into thin air.



GLOSSARY	
gaze at sb/sth	look at sb/sth for a long time because you are interested in them/it or are thinking about sth else <b>gaze</b> <i>n</i>
spectacular	very impressive to see
barely	only with great difficulty or effort SYN only just
visible	Sth that is visible can be seen. OPP invisible
mist	a thin cloud just above the ground making it difficult to see <b>misty</b> adj
make sth/sb out	see, hear or understand sth/sb with difficulty
stand still	stand without moving at all: keep/stay/sit still
suspiciously	carefully because you think there may be sth wrong or dishonest <b>suspicious</b> adj; <b>suspicion</b> a
vanish	disappear <b>vanish into thin air</b> disappear suddenly

#### SPOTLIGHT ways of seeing

If you **catch a glimpse of sth/sb**, you see it/them for a very short time and not clearly or completely. If you **glance at sb/sth**, you look at them/it for a moment. If you **spot sb/sth**, you see or notice sb/sth, especially suddenly or when it is not easy to do.

- We caught a glimpse of the actress as she left the theatre.
- I glanced at my watch to see if it was time to go.
- I spotted several mistakes in my work just before I handed it in.

#### 5 Correct the spelling mistake(s) in each sentence.

- 1 The view was spectactular.
- She looked at us suspisiously.
- 3 I could barily see them.
- 4 When the bird was stil, it was unvisible.
- 5 We just caught a glimse of the deer.
- 6 I granced at my friend.

#### 6 Underline the words which are possible. More than one word is often possible.

- The bottom of the valley was invisible / misty / suspicious.
- The castle was visible / standing still / spectacular.
- 3 The man was badly dressed and looked suspicious / spectacular / misty.
- 4 After an hour, we finally caught a glimpse of / spotted / glanced at the rare bird.
- 5 Could you please stand / wait / keep still?
- 6 When Lia came in, I quickly glanced at / gazed at / spotted John next to me. He smiled.
- 7 We could suspiciously/only just / barely see the church in the distance.

### Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

1	He sat without moving while I drew him.	STILL	
2	I was only just able to see the boat on the horizon	. MAKE	
3	They were both watching me; I don't know why.	GAZE	
4	Those stars can't be seen without a telescope.	INVISIBLE	
5	We could barely see the trees through the mist.	ONLY	
6	After a while I could see Leo in the crowd.	SPOT	
7	The thief ran out of the building and disappeared.	THIN AIR	
8	I briefly saw Blanca as she left the shop.	GLIMPSE	
9	Please don't move.	KEEP	
10	I didn't believe he was telling the truth.	USPICION	



## 12 Sounds and hearing

## A Things I don't want to hear

There are noises I love – when someone **bursts out laughing**, or people **cheer** at football matches, for example – but if I went **deaf**, there would also be noises I wouldn't miss:

- background noise of cars, machines, etc. that can be so irritating
- · the sound of a child in tears
- the sound of someone sneezing<sup>1</sup> that makes me worry I will be the next person to catch their cold.
- someone whispering behind me I imagine they are talking about me!
- overhearing something unpleasant that I wasn't meant to hear
- someone sighing
- people booing at sports events or other occasions it's very rude.
- my partner snoring!

#### GLOSSARY

burst out laughing	suddenly start laughing, often loudly	catch a cold whisper	get an illness: <b>catch</b> a cold / (the) flu speak very quietly in sb's ear so others cannot
cheer	shout to show that you like sth or to encourage sb in a sporting event, etc. OPP <b>boo</b> unable to hear. <b>Blind</b> is unable to see.	overhear	hear whisper n: He spoke in a whisper. hear what sb is saying, by accident, when they are speaking to sb else
background	sounds or noise that can be heard but aren't the centre of attention and are often unwanted	sigh	let out a long deep breath to show you are tired, sad, disappointed, etc.
irritating in tears	annoying; making you angry crying	snore	breathe noisily through your nose and mouth when you are asleep

#### Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- There was a lot of background noises.
   We burst out laugh.
- 3 The poor boy was into tears.
- 4 Did you overhere what she said?
- 5 Please stop wispering like that.
- 6 My husband snorts in his sleep.

#### 2 Find five phrases from the words in the box

T	background	in	catch	in a	burst out	whisper	tears	laughing	noise	a cold	

#### B Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 When you have a cold, you often \_\_\_\_\_\_a lot.
- 2 My next-door neighbour has been \_\_\_\_\_\_ for several years, and now has a guide dog.
- 3 The poor man can't hear a thing: he's been \_\_\_\_\_\_ for years.
- 4 If you spend time with someone with a cold, you might \_\_\_\_\_\_ their cold.
- 5 If you don't want someone to hear what you are saying, you should
- 6 Most people stood up and \_\_\_\_\_\_ when Liam won, but a couple \_\_\_\_\_\_
  It was a bit embarrassing.
- 7 One or two people have told me I \_\_\_\_\_ in my sleep.
- 8 When my mother like that, I can tell she's disappointed.
- 9 I two people on the bus talking about unpleasant noises. It was quite funny.

10 A lot of young people talk very quickly and not very clearly. It's very



## **B** A sound story

It was a dark and stormy night. I shut my eyes ...

- · I could hear a car horn in the distance.
- Several dogs were barking.
- I heard a crash.
- Someone yelled.
- A car door slammed.
- Something hit my window it cracked.
- I heard footsteps in the hall.
- Silence. Then my door handle turned.
- I screamed and woke up.
- It was a nightmare. I breathed a sigh of relief.

GLOSSARY	
horn	the thing in a car that makes a loud warning noise
bark	(of dogs) make a loud short noise or noise
crash	a sudden loud noise made by sth hitting sth, etc. <b>crash</b> v
yell	shout very loudly
slam	shut or make sth shut very loudly
crack	break or make sth break so that a line appears on the surface but doesn't break into pieces: The glass has <b>cracked</b> . The stone <b>cracked</b> the windscreen. <b>crack</b> n
footsteps	the sound or marks made when you walk or run
silence	no noise or sound at all
scream	make a loud, high, unpleasant sound scream n
(breathe) a sigh of relief	let out a long deep breath when sth unpleasant stops

#### SPOTLIGHT nightmare

A **nightmare** is a frightening or unplesant dream. It is also used informally to describe a bad or unpleasant experience.

My trip to London was a nightmare: all the trains were delayed.

### 4 Put these words in three groups: 1 no noise 2 a noise 3 a loud noise.

	cr	ack bark	sigh	yell	sile	ence	scream	footsteps	slam	crash
	1				2			3		
5	м	atch 1-5 wit	ha-e.							
	1	The door			а	bark	ed.			
	2	The car			b	crack	ked.			
	3	The dog			c	slam	med.			
	4	The glass			d	screa	med.			
	5	The woman			e	crash	ned.			
6	Re	place the u	nderlined	words	with	a sind	ale word. K	eep the same	e meanin	a.
-	1	Replace the underlined words with a single word. Keep the same meaning. I walked into the classroom. There was no noise at all.								
	2 I opened the door and someone started shouting really loudly.								***************************************	
	3 My partner has had <u>bad unpleasant dreams</u> for some time now.									
	4	4 I could hear the sound of somebody walking along the path towards the door.								
	5	He walked o						partitionalds	une 0001.	***************************************
	6							a something		

- 6 I heard the car's brakes and then a loud noise of it hitting something.
- 7 After I dropped the glass, it had <u>lines along the surface</u>, so I got rid of it.

## 8 A spider suddenly appeared, and Kasia let out a high unpleasant sound.

#### Complete the text.

Where I work is terrible. For a start, there's constant background noise from the traffic, with drivers sounding their car (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_all day long. Then there is a dog that's often tied to a tree outside, so of course it (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_all the time. And in my office I have several colleagues who are always (3) at each other – they can't talk in a normal voice – and can't seem to leave the office without (4) the door. It's an absolute (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_, and I breathe a (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ of (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_ every day at 5.30 when it's time to go home.



## Touch 13 /

## A Ways of touching



1 She squeezed the bottle. 2 I tapped him on the



5 He punched him.



9 She rubbed the suntan lotion on.



shoulder.





3 He grabbed my bag.



6 The cat scratched me. 7 They hugged each other. 8 She slapped his face.



4 She pinched my arm.



#### SPOTLIGHT verbs and nouns

Some of these verbs can be used as nouns with the same meaning.

She gave him a punch/slap on the arm.

- He gave her hand a squeeze.
- Give him a tap on the shoulder.
- I got a scratch on the car.



## **B** Massage

## A Simple Face Massage

1 Start by gently stroking the whole face. With both hands, slide up the neck, across the cheeks1, then up and over the forehead2. Apply gentle pressure to the sides of the head.

5

1

4

3

- 2 Stimulate the skin by gently patting the cheeks and neck.
- 3 Use your fingertips<sup>3</sup> to lightly massage the skin around the jaw<sup>4</sup>.
- 4 To release tension around the eyes, firmly press down on the eyebrows<sup>5</sup> with your fingertips.
- 5 Massage the scalp vigorously as if shampooing your hair.

#### GLOSSARY

massage stroke slide apply pressure (to sth) stimulate	(see picture): have a massage; massage v move your hand over sb's skin, hair, etc. gently and slowly move or make sth move smoothly along a surface press on sth hard with your hand, foot, etc. make a part of the body or skin more active touch sb/sth gently a number of times with a flat hand or	SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner Gently and lightly are soft, relaxed movements. Firmly is much stronger. If you move your hands steadily, you make regular movements. Vigorously
pat tension scalp	both hands You have <b>tension</b> if your muscles are tight and not relaxed and you need to <b>release</b> (= free) the tension. the skin that covers the part of the head where the hair grows	means in a very energetic and active way. <b>energetically</b> .

Are these actions usually gentle, or can they be quite vigorous? slide stroke massage apply pressure pat stimulate GENTLE: USUALLY VIGOROUS: 5 Cover the text and look at the face. What does each number identify? -----5 1 2 6 Complete the sentences. 1 I often \_\_\_\_\_ my forehead, cheeks and neck: it stimulates the skin. 2 I love going to have a \_\_\_\_\_ – it's so relaxing. 3 She sat quietly, gently \_\_\_\_\_\_ the cat.
4 The physio just used his fingertips to apply \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the back of my neck. 5 When the hairdresser washes my hair, he massages my \_\_\_\_\_ quite \_\_\_\_\_ 6 The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ pressure to the wound to stop the bleeding. 7 Don't use the whole of your fingers for massage, just the \_\_\_\_\_.

- 8 I think a massage is one of the best ways to release \_\_\_\_\_\_ in your body.
- 9 Massage and exercise help to \_\_\_\_\_\_ blood circulation in the body.
- 10 The doors open automatically as you approach.
- I tapped him on the shoulder to get his attention. 11

12 | pressed the button but still nothing happened.
AT	ypes of illne	55	rash		ngs	breast
MORE	AINOR		Ros Mary	e wirelest		Ser Carlor
hay fev		the eyes, no:	se and throat, cau	sed by breathin	g GLOSSAR	,
a rash:	an area of red spot	s commonly	caused by an illne	ess or an allergy		not very big, serious or
MORES	ERIOUS					important
an aller	gy: a condition that ma certain things that Allergies can be mi	don't norma	lly make people il	l, e.g. eating nut		the powder produced by some plants usually; very often; by most people
asthma					inability	the fact of not being able to do sth
diabete	es: a disease caused by the blood	y an inability	to control the lev	el of sugar in	potentially	that may possibly happen or become sth potential adj
POTEN	TIALLY FATAL				fatal	causing or ending in death: a fatal accident
cancer	e.g. lung cancer, br a lump grows in th		a very serious illn	ess in which	lump	a swelling under the skin which can be
hel 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	he pronunciation of t pyou. heart breast3 allergy rash4 mplete the sentences I'mto p Drugs are ato p Drugs are seriously over and, of course, heart One of my friends died Theto	diabetes fe allergy lun orawns. I get used tre creases your ery serious eve weight, it is a in a control the l	ever 5 g 6 a6	diabetes minor hay fatal on my face if le illnesses. , whi he eats peanuts 's only a problem: you are dent. e blood is	7 <u>a</u> ller 8 pote eat just one. ch is s, he has a bad re proble e more at risk fro	gy <u>a</u> llergic ential asthm <u>a</u> fatal. maction. m. I don't worry m serious.
5 00	hay fever diabetes breathing difficulties	asthma allergy	breast cancer sugar pollen	rash lump		



37

# 15 / Injuries

# A From head to toe

	GLOSSARY	
wrist	fracture unconscious	break in a st an illr
	dislocate sprain	put st injure ankle your
	blister	a swe with l or bu
ankle 3 bruise	bruise	get of after
	hundreds (of sth) inf	a lot; SYN m
My cousin fractured his skull' when he came off his		11
motorbike. He was unconscious for several minutes.	SPOTLIGHT	verbs
once got a black eye <sup>2</sup> in a fight at school. dislocated my shoulder playing rugby. sprained my wrist when I fell off my bike. twisted my ankle running for a bus. used to get lots of blisters <sup>3</sup> on my feet from running. 've bruised myself hundreds of times.	A number of the some of the paradjectives. He's got sever I've got a larg my arm.	nst part pral <b>fra</b> d
1) Answer Yes or No.		
1 Can you talk when you're conscious?		you b
2 Can you twist your eye?		you di
3 Can you sprain your ankle?		you g
4 Can you fracture a fingernail?	a Can	you w
2 Put the following in order from most serious (		
a twisted ankle	a disloc	ated e
a fractured skull	a black	eye

GLOSSARY	
fracture	break a bone or some other hard material
unconscious	in a state like sleep, often because of an injury or an illness OPP <b>conscious</b>
dislocate	put sth (usually a bone) out of its correct position
sprain	injure a part of your body, especially your wrist or ankle, by suddenly bending or turning it SYN twist your ankle (NOT USUALLY twist your wrist)
blister	a swelling on the surface of the skin that is filled with liquid and is often caused by rubbing or burning
bruise	get or make a blue, brown, etc. mark on the skin after sb has fallen, been hit by sth, etc. <b>bruise</b> n
hundreds (of sth) inf	a lot; a large amount: <i>hundreds of</i> things to do syn <b>masses (of sth)</b>

#### s, nouns and adjectives

bs above can also be used as nouns, and ticiples from these verbs can be used as a sprained wrist

- ctures. ise on
- a twisted ankle
- a dislocated arm
- oruise your hair? dislocate a finger? get a blister on your hand? vrite when you're unconscious? (6). Give your reasons. elbow ...... ..... a blister a bruise on the arm

## Complete the sentences.

- He's injured himself of times playing rugby.
- 2 The man wasn't moving. I thought he was dead, but in fact he was
- 3 He told me he got a black \_\_\_\_\_\_ when his dog jumped up and hit him in the face.
- 4 When I \_\_\_\_\_ my finger, the doctor put it back into position and it hurt!
- 5 His arm is black and blue from the \_\_\_\_\_ he got from falling off the wall.
- 6 Do you often get \_\_\_\_\_ on your feet from walking in new shoes?
- 7 Clara \_\_\_\_\_ her leg skiing and hasn't been able to walk for weeks.
- 8 I sprained my \_\_\_\_\_, and then the next day I twisted my \_\_\_\_\_.

# ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- How many of the injuries at the top of the page have you had? 1
- Which of the injuries at the top of the page require a visit to the hospital? Which require a visit to the doctor? 2

# **B** First Aid

FIRST AID: To clean a wound, you need to bathe it thoroughly. For a small cut, just put on a plaster. For a more serious wound, especially if it is bleeding quite a lot, cover it with a clean dressing to prevent infection, and then hold that in place with a bandage. Most cuts heal within seven days.

If a part of the body is swollen, apply a bag of frozen peas wrapped in a towel to reduce the swelling.



GLOSSART				
first aid wound bathe thoroughly	simple medical treatment that is given to sb, often before a doctor comes or before the person can be taken to a hospital an injury to a part of your body, especially a cut, and often from a weapon <b>wound</b> v (usually passive) wash part of the body, often for medical reasons in a careful and complete way	bleed in place heal swollen wrap	<i>in place</i> (especially of a cut) become healthy again	SPOTLIGHT infection An infection is an illness caused by bacteria or a virus. (Both are small living things that can only be seen through a microscope.) An infectious illness or disease travels easily from one person to another.

# 5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the 🤓 to help you.

- 1 bathe bandage
- 2 bandage infection
- 3 bathe plaster
- 4 heal bleed
- 5 virus infection

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

1 We did a bit of first \_\_\_\_\_\_ when I was at school.

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

.....

- 2 My arm was quite \_\_\_\_\_\_after I fell and bruised it.
- 3 If I hit my nose hard, it often \_\_\_\_\_ quite a bit.
- 4 It's not a bad cut, so I think it will \_\_\_\_\_ quite quickly.
- 5 If you want to prevent infection, you need to clean the wound \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Could you put your finger there to hold the dressing in \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7 An infection can be caused by \_\_\_\_\_ or a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 He was \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the leg when he was attacked by a man with a knife.
- 9 I put a large plaster on the cut to stop the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 If you \_\_\_\_\_\_ some packs of ice round the bruise, it will reduce the \_\_\_\_\_\_.

# 7 Test your knowledge of first aid. Answer the questions.

- 1 What is the purpose of doing first aid?
  - 2 What is the first thing you should do with a wound?
  - 3 What can you put on a small cut?
  - 4 Why do you need a clean dressing?
  - What is the purpose of a bandage? 5
  - How long does it take for most cuts to heal? 6
  - Why would you wrap frozen peas in a towel? 7
  - What is the main risk with an infectious disease or illness?



- 6 wound thoroughly
- 7 thoroughly infectious
- 10 bacteria dressing
- 8 body swollen
- 9 wound swollen



......

\_\_\_\_\_

39

The body

# 16 Character

# **A** Personal qualities

# Online dating: find your dream partner



# Galina's profile:

My friends describe me as a real **extrovert**. I'm an **enthusiastic**, **talkative** sort of person, but at the same time I love to hear other people's opinions. I'm also quite **decisive** and feel able to **assert myself** in different social situations. I have a very positive **attitude to** life, and I'm **truly passionate** about health and fitness. My sister describes me as a **lively** and **dynamic** person.

GLOSSARY	
extrovert	a lively, confident person who enjoys being with other people OPP <b>introvert</b> ; <b>extrovert</b> <i>adj</i> , <b>introverted</b> , <b>introvert</b> <i>adj</i>
enthusiastic	feeling or showing a lot of excitement or interest about sth/sb <b>enthusiasm</b> n
talkative	A talkative person likes to talk a lot.
decisive	able to make decisions quickly and with confidence
assert yourself	behave in a confident way and say clearly what you think or want <b>assertive</b> adj
attitude (to/towar about/on sth/sb	ds/ the way you think or feel about sth/sb
truly	used to emphasize sth; very
passionate (about sth)	very enthusiastic or interested <b>passion (for sth)</b> n
lively	full of life and energy
dynamic	having a lot of energy and a strong personality

# Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the real to help you. dynamic truly talkative introvert

3 p		a <u>ss</u> ert enthusi <u>a</u> stic dynamic			ass <u>er</u> tive enthu <u>s</u> iasn	extrov <u>er</u> t		
	vely			7	onthusiasn	n docisivo		
4 l <u>i</u> v		dynamic			Chunglash	I DECIZIVE		
				8	<u>a</u> ssertive	<u>a</u> ttitude		
Corr	ect the n	nistake in ea	ch sentence.					
1 M	ly sister is	absolutely pas	sionate for skil	ng.				
		nake up her mi		-	not very de	ciding about	things.	
		ally needs to as						
		sor talked with					chemistry.	
		a live persona	-					
		ues appreciate			nism manne	er.		
	-	has a passion o					n.	
		ssionate about				3		
Com	plete the	e dialogues.						
		love climbing	and they go	all the time ~	I know - th	nev're	ab	out it.
		concentrates						- out nu
		fideas and has						
		y confident an			and the second se			
		y interested an						
		to chat - she i						
		s choices quic						
		n are running						
		nfident, open a						
ABO	UT YOU	Write your a	answers, or t	alk to anoth	er student			
_		our friends and						
	trovert?	an introv		y talkative?	dynam	ic?		
truly	passionat	e about some	thing? (What?)	assertiv	ve? er	nthusiastic ab	out cars?	
		is an extrover	-		e and is ver	y confident.		
-								
	TEST YOU	RSELF						

# **B** Ideal match

#### Galina describes her ideal match:

I'm attracted to men who are **considerate** and **sensible**, and they should be happy to show **affection** too. I'm not looking for a **saint** – just a normal guy who is **sincere** and is looking for a **genuine** relationship. I don't like people who **show off** or **boast** about things. I'm interested in someone with **integrity** who is **decent** and has **ethical** values. And if they like the outdoor life, so much the better!

#### SPOTLIGHT saint and holy

- 1 A saint (abbreviations S, St) is a person that the Christian Church recognizes as being very holy (= good in a religious or moral way) because of the way they have lived or died.
- 2 In the text, a saint (inf) is a very good, kind person.

# 5 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- That woman is a real saint.
- The decision is completely ethical.
- 3 He's a decent guy.
- 4 She shows off a lot.
- 5 He's very genuine.

## GLOSSARY

considerate	thinking about other people's wishes and feelings SYN thoughtful OPP inconsiderate; consideration n
sensible	make good judgements based on reason and experience rather than emotion
affection	the feeling of liking or caring about sth/sb affectionate adj syn loving
sincere	(of feelings or beliefs) showing what you really think SYN genuine OPP insincere
show off inf, disapproving	behave in a way that is intended to attract people's attention and make them admire you. A person who does this is a <b>show-off</b> .
boast	talk with too much pride about sth you have or can do
integrity	the quality of being honest and having strong moral principles
decent	honest, good and fair
ethical	connected with beliefs and principles about what is good and right <b>ethic</b> <i>n</i> : They're looking for people with <b>a</b> strong <b>work ethic</b> .

- 6 I find him quite insincere.
- 7 She shows a lot of affection.

.....

- 8 He's always boasting.
- 9 I think she's inconsiderate.
- 10 He has integrity.

# 6 Circle the correct word.

- 1 Angela arrived in an expensive outfit, covered in jewellery. I think she was showing off / boasting.
- 2 Mario adores his wife and is very holy / affectionate towards her.
- 3 I think you can trust Jamelia's judgement; she's very affectionate / sensible.
- 4 Do you think Mr Erickson is ethical / sincere about wanting to help us?
- 5 Decent / Thoughtful people don't go stealing from shopping malls.
- 6 We need people in this company who have a strong work integrity / ethic.
- 7 You have to be a show-off / saint to live with Duncan: he's a very difficult person.

.....

#### Complete the sentences.

- 1 It's \_\_\_\_\_\_ to give your seat to an elderly person on a bus or train.
- 2 Where I live, you should never show any \_\_\_\_\_\_ to your husband or wife in the street.
- 3 A lot of people who \_\_\_\_\_\_ off are unsure of themselves and are seeking attention.
- 4 Some people \_\_\_\_\_\_ about their expensive holidays. It gets on my nerves.
- 5 people are kind and friendly towards strangers or foreigners.
- 6 People who keep you waiting for over fifteen minutes are really .....
- 7 In my country, shop assistants smile a lot and seem friendly, but I don't think that it's
- 8 In my country, most politicians have \_\_\_\_\_\_ and can be trusted.

# ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true about your country? If not, what is the truth? Write your answers, or tell another student.

8

Interviews were conducted on July 30<sup>th</sup> for the flight attendant training programme. We require a calm, confident and hard-working person.

NAME	Interviewer's comments	?
Joel Robbins	Joel seemed rather arrogant and immature. He started badly by saying some idiotic things about the company, showing that he wasn't at all knowledgeable about it. He struggled to answer the most basic questions.	no
Makiko Yaguchi	I didn't know what to <b>make of</b> her at first, but as the interview progressed, I felt she was a very <b>capable</b> person, <b>mature</b> and <b>motivated</b> .	yes?
Marek Novak	At first he came across as timid and lacking in confidence. However, as he relaxed, I could see he was actually quite charming. He seemed conscientious and efficient, and I think he would take the job seriously.	yes?
Jacinta Ribeiro	I really took to Jacinta immediately. She <b>struck me as</b> a <b>confident, straightforward</b> candidate, and I feel she has great <b>potential</b> .	yes

# GLOSSARY

arrogant	behaving in a proud, unpleasant way arrogance n	confidence	a belief in yourself and your abilities confident adj
immature idiotic	behaving in a way that is typical of much younger people OPP <b>mature</b> very stupid SYN <b>ridiculous</b> ; <b>idiot</b> n	charming conscientious	very pleasant <b>charm</b> <i>n</i> taking care to do things carefully and correctly
knowledgeable struggle	knowing a lot SYN well informed try very hard to do sth when it is difficult or	efficient	doing sth well without making mistakes or wasting time <b>efficiency</b> <i>n</i>
(to do sth) capable	there are a lot of problems <b>struggle</b> <i>n</i> able to do things well	take sth/sb seriously	think that sth/sb is important and is worth your attention
motivated	wanting to do sth, especially sth involving hard work <b>motivation</b> <i>n</i>	take to sb/sth straightforward	
timid be lacking in sth	shy and nervous having none or not enough of sth ALSO <b>lack sth</b>	potential	and opinions qualities in a person that exist and can be developed <b>potential</b> <i>adj</i>

# SPOTLIGHT creating and forming an impression

make sth of sb understand the character of sb:

I didn't know what to make of him. What do you make of the new receptionist?

come across (as sth) make a particular impression SYN come over (as sth):

He came over/across very well in the discussion.

- He comes over/across as an efficient person.
- strike sb as sth give somebody a particular impression:
- She struck me as someone with potential. He struck me as odd.

#### Complete the table.

2

3

Use the end to help you.       5 ridiculous seriously         1 mature charm       5 ridiculous seriously         2 confidence idiot       6 capable arrogant         3 straightforward well-informed       7 ridiculous struggle	NOUN	ADJECTIVE
efficient         charming         motivation         potential         knowledge         idiot         Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.         Use the Image: to help you.         1       mature charm         2       confidence idigt         3       straightforward well-informed		arrogant
motivation       charming         potential		confident
motivation       potential         potential       knowledge         idiot       idiot         Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.         Use the Image: to help you.         1       mature charm         2       confidence idigt         3       straightforward well-informed		efficient
potential         knowledge         idiot         Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.         Use the Image: to help you.         1 mature charm         2 confidence idiot         3 straightforward well-informed		charming
knowledge         idiot         is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.         Use the reading to help you.         1 mature charm       5 ridiculous seriously         2 confidence idiot       6 capable arrogant         3 straightforward well-informed       7 ridiculous struggle	motivation	
idiot Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the ready to help you. 1 mature charm 2 confidence idiot 3 straightforward well-informed 7 ridiculous struggle	potential	
Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.         Use the arrow to help you.         1 mature charm       5 ridiculous seriously         2 confidence idiot       6 capable arrogant         3 straightforward well-informed       7 ridiculous struggle	knowledge	
Use the end to help you.       5 ridiculous seriously         1 mature charm       5 ridiculous seriously         2 confidence idiot       6 capable arrogant         3 straightforward well-informed       7 ridiculous struggle	idiot	
v potential competent	Use the e to help you. 1 mature charm 2 confidence idiot	<ul> <li>5 ridiculous seriously</li> <li>6 capable arrogant</li> <li>7 ridiculous struggle</li> <li>8 conscientious efficient</li> </ul>
Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.	1 Is Mr Morris knowledgeable about	the business? ~ Yes, he's very

~ Yes, she's very \_\_\_\_\_. 2 Does she say exactly what she wants? ~ I agree. She's too \_\_\_\_\_\_ for our 3 She seems like she's just out of school. company. ~ I think so. His old boss said he was 4 Would he be organized and work quickly? 5 Was it easy to fill in that long form? understand it. ~ Yes, they were \_\_\_\_\_. He'd be hopeless. 6 That candidate's answers were idiotic! 7 I liked him, but I'm worried that he's quite shy. ~ Yes, he's rather , isn't he? 8 Would she have the right qualities for ~Yes, she seemed to me. managing the office? 4 Rewrite the sentences using the word or a form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning. 1 What did you think of Aaron's character? MAKE ? STRUGGLE . 2 Josie found it hard to explain what she meant. 3 Lawrence didn't seem that charming to me. LACKING 4 I didn't like Rollo at first. TAKE 5 Parminder made a very good impression in the interview. COME Rupert gave me the impression of being capable. STRIKE . 7 I think Ariana has qualities that can be developed. POTENTIAL MOTIVATED 8 Vicky didn't seem to have much motivation. 

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the answers in a way that is true for you. If possible, talk to another student.

1 I am well informed about 2 I think people who are conscientious 3 If people are charming towards me, I 4 I feel confident when 5 It's sometimes a struggle for me to .... 6 If I meet someone who is arrogant, I If someone doesn't take me seriously, I 7 I don't take to people who 8 In an interview situation, I think I probably come across as 9 10 If someone says something ridiculous in an interview, I think it could be because \_\_\_\_\_\_

# 18 Feelings

# A Strong feelings

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
ecstatic	I was <b>ecstatic</b> about getting the new job.	very happy, excited and enthusiastic SYN delighted, over the moon inf
thrilled Lou was thrilled to win the competition.		very excited and pleased
joy	It's always a joy to see the children.	sb/sth that gives you great pleasure joyful adj
astonished I was astonished when they gave me the prize.		very surprised about sth you did not expect SYN <b>astounded</b>
shocked	I was shocked to hear she was so ill.	surprised and upset shock n, v
in tears	She was <b>in tears</b> by the time we got to the hospital.	crying; <b>tear</b> a drop of water coming from your eye
devastated	I was devastated when she left me.	very upset SYN heartbroken
desperate	Alone, without food or money, Janie was desperate.	having little hope and ready to do anything to change a terrible situation <b>desperation</b> <i>n</i>
ashamed	He stole the money, but felt very <b>ashamed</b> of himself afterwards.	guilty or embarrassed that you have done sth wrong <b>shame</b> <i>n</i>
disgusted	We were <b>disgusted</b> by the way the children were treated. It was awful.	very angry and upset about sth you do not like or agree with <b>disgust</b> <i>n</i>

Are these positive or negative? Write P, N or P/N.

1	ecstatic	*******	5	shame		9	astonished	
2	disgust		6	delighted		10	in tears	
3	shock		7	desperation	********	11	thrilled	
4	over the moon		8	joy		12	heartbroken	

2 Circle the correct word(s) in italics. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- 1 I was ashamed / astounded when I heard that I'd come top in the exam.
- 2 Our daughter passed her driving test and we were over the moon / devastated.
- 3 My cat was killed in front of me by a driver; I was heartbroken / joyful.
- 4 There were cats on the table in the hotel kitchen. I was thrilled / disgusted.
- 5 Our team won the championship and we were all desperate / ecstatic.
- 6 The news about the flood was terribly sad: my sister was in tears / delighted.
- 7 My son was born on New Year's Day, and my family were delighted / shocked.
- 8 My brother has been missing for a week now and my dad and I are ashamed / desperate.

# 3 Complete the dialogues using vocabulary from the table.

- 1 I think she was very surprised at the news. ~ She was absolutely \_\_\_\_\_\_ ~ Yes, I was \_\_\_\_\_\_ when I saw him. Mac's lost 20 kg because of his illness. 3 Did he think he wouldn't be rescued? ~ Yes. He was Was he terribly upset about the results? ~ Yes, he was absolutely 4 of himself. 5 That boy cheated in his exams. ~ He should be very ..... ~ Yes, they were absolutely \_\_\_\_\_. I bet they were over the moon. 6 She was really emotional about losing her job. ~ Yes, she was in \_\_\_\_\_. 7 ~ Yes, I was \_\_\_\_\_ when I saw it. The hotel bedroom was really dirty. 8
- TEST YOURSELF

# **B** Expressing your emotions

RE YOU the kind of person who bottles up your emotions? Do you find it difficult to handle intense feelings, or do you just suppress them? Do you feel that if you reveal too much about yourself, you could make yourself rather vulnerable. Psychologists say that suppressing your emotions over a long period of time is often ineffective and can worsen the situation. It can even lead to severe anxiety and depression at a later stage.

#### GLOSSARY

bo

ha

int

su

rev

WO

sev

an

de

and the second se	
ottle sth up	stop yourself showing negative emotions or feelings especially over a long time: <b>bottle up your emotions/feelings</b>
ndle	deal with sth/sb: handle stress / your emotions
tense	very strong, very great
ppress	stop yourself from having or expressing a feeling/emotion
veal	make sth known to sb SYN disclose formal
Inerable	weak and easily hurt, physically or emotionally
orsen	become or make sth worse than before
vere	extremely bad or serious
xiety	the state of feeling nervous or worried that sth bad is going to happen <b>anxious</b> <i>adj</i>
pression	a medical condition in which sb feels very sad and anxious for a long time <b>depressed</b> <i>adj</i>

#### SPOTLIGHT psychology and related words

**Psychology** is the study of the mind and how it affects people's behaviour. A person who is trained in psychology is a **psychologist**. **Psychological** problems relate to the way somebody's mind works, e.g. some pain can be psychological rather than physical.

#### 4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the option to help you.

vulnerable	anxiety
disclose	psychological
psychology	psychologist

worsen intense suppress

#### Replace the underlined word(s) with a word that has the same meaning.

	I did a course in the study of the mind and behaviour at university.	**********
2	He wouldn't disclose information if he thought it was secret.	
3	It's a difficult time for him and he's weak and easily hurt.	
4	Things have got a lot worse since the elections.	
5	Donna has been suffering from a very serious depression.	•
5	I don't think Steven is dealing with the stress of school very well.	
7	She has very strong feelings about Alastair; it's a love/hate relationship.	
8	Last year I suffered from a period of worry and nervousness.	

#### Complete the questions.

reveal

severe anxious

- 1 Do top sports people tend to \_\_\_\_\_\_ stress well or badly?
- 2 Is it good for powerful people to show they are \_\_\_\_\_\_ and have weaknesses?
- 3 Can you think of any problems that \_\_\_\_\_\_are currently studying?
- 4 Are there times when it's good to \_\_\_\_\_\_ your emotions and stay silent?
- 5 How can people deal with \_\_\_\_\_\_ feelings of loneliness?
- 6 Are there any professions where you think people suffer a lot from
- 7 What's the best thing to do if you're feeling very \_\_\_\_\_\_ about something?
- 8 If you \_\_\_\_\_\_ your emotions, do you think it affects your physical health?
- 9 Do you \_\_\_\_\_\_ your anxieties or deeper emotions to a friend or a family member?
- 10 Have you ever studied \_\_\_\_\_\_at school or university? Would you like to?

#### ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

# 19 Relationships

# A Difficult relationships

When I married Vince, he already had two children from his first marriage, and they **took an instant dislike to** me. They **blamed** me for all their problems. I tried hard to get their **respect**, but they wouldn't **forgive** me for taking the place of their

mother. They either stared at me without saying a thing, or were openly aggressive. It was a tough time, and it was inevitable that it finally put a strain on my relationship with Vince. I began to regret my decision to marry him. Fortunately, he stuck up for me when the kids were difficult, and over time, things settled down a bit.



SPOTLIGHT meanings of tough

Tough can mean:

- 1 difficult: He had a **tough** childhood. (as in the text)
- 2 strong and able to deal with difficult situations: She'll be OK - she's tough.
- 3 strict: There are some **tough** new driving laws.

y to attack sb t avoid or prevent

are criticized , more relaxed and

and anxiety for sb/sth

t sth you have done fend sb/yourself

## GLOSSARY

tal

bla

re

for

sta

ake an instant/immediate dislike to sb lame sb (for sth)	dislike sb as soon as you meet them think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad	aggressive inevitable put a strain on sb/sth	angry and ready that you cannot inevitably adv create pressure a
espect orgive sb (for sth/for	polite behaviour towards sb/sth that you think is important stop feeling angry towards	regret (sth / doing sth) stick up for sb/yourself	feel sorry about support and def when they/you
doing sth) tare (at sb/sth)	sb for sth that they have done wrong look at sb/sth for a long time	settle down	become calmer, less excited

# Positive or negative? Write P or N.

5 She blames me for what happened.

- The protests are putting a strain on the country.
   I think he's forgiven me.
   He's very aggressive.
   Things are tough at work now.
   Being poor has made him tough.
   I really regret contacting him.
  - 9 Things have settled down since the strike.
    - 10 The war was inevitable.

# Complete the sentences.

4 She can stick up for herself.

- 1 I don't \_\_\_\_\_ leaving the job: it was the right decision.
- 2 As soon as I met him, I took an immediate \_\_\_\_\_\_ to him.
- 3 The food was my responsibility, so I don't \_\_\_\_\_\_ anyone else for the mistake in the order.
- 4 The lack of money put a terrible \_\_\_\_\_\_ on our relationship.
- 5 Some children do what they like and have no \_\_\_\_\_\_ for authority.
- 6 Please don't \_\_\_\_\_\_ at those people; it's rude.
- 7 My brother accepted that he caused the accident, but I \_\_\_\_\_ him; he's my brother.
- 8 Mum accused me of lying, but my sister \_\_\_\_\_ up for me and said I was telling the truth.

# One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end of the line.

I've been having a time at work recently. A young man joined the	1
department and for some reason an instant dislike to me. His desk was close to mine,	2
and he just sat and at me without speaking, which made me feel uncomfortable.	3
Over time, he started to shout at me and became more and more until I felt	4
quite nervous being near him. It put a big on me and my work began to suffer.	5
One day, I decided it was time to stick for myself, so I told him his behaviour was	6
terrible. I was shocked when he suddenly started crying and, of course, I what I	7
had said to him. He thought that I him for the poor results in the department, when	8
in fact, that wasn't the case. Eventually, things down, and we got on much better.	9



People

# **B** Successful relationships



Now two years on, things are **looking up**. **Initially** the kids were really **nasty** to me and **reluctant** to **accept** me, but I gave up work to spend more time with them, and that helped to create a closer **bond**. I realized that I had been too **strict** with them and not **caring** enough; I just wasn't **sensitive to** their needs. To be honest, it was my own **fault** – I'm the adult and should have known better. It takes a lot of **patience**, but I'm feeling optimistic and I really enjoy being with them now.

#### GLOSSARY look up inf (of sb's situation or business) start to become better after a difficult period initially in the beginning initial adj nasty unkind; unpleasant SYN mean reluctant not wanting to do sth (to do sth) SYN unwilling; reluctance n a connection between people based on bond shared feelings or experiences strict If you are strict, you make people do what you want and do not allow them to behave badly. caring kind and showing that you care about people sensitive understanding other people's feelings and being careful about them (to sth) fault If sth bad is your fault, you made it happen. the ability to stay calm and not get angry patience when waiting for sth patient adj

# SPOTLIGHT accept

Accept means 'say yes to an offer', but has some other meanings, too.

- 1 allow sb to be part of a group: They accepted me as one of the family. (as in the text)
- 2 agree to sth:
- The council has accepted the latest proposal.
- 3 admit you did sth wrong:
- I accept responsibility for the mistakes.

	s the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.
ι	Jse the 🐵 to help you.

- initially reluctant
- 2 patience initial
- 3 strict accept

4

#### Circle the correct word.

- She showed a *reluctance / unwilling* to speak about the event.
- 2 The *initial / initially* problem was money.
- 3 He's sensible / sensitive to the feelings of others.

- fault bond
- 5 look caring
- 6 sensitive reluctance
  - 4 She's a caring / patience nurse.
  - 5 The mistake wasn't my bond / fault.
  - 6 It can be a good thing if parents are nasty / strict.
  - 7 My business is finally accepting / looking up.

#### 6 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

It's not my responsibility if we're late.
They were very unwilling to leave.
She expects people to obey her all the time.
In the beginning it was a difficult relationship.
He admits responsibility for what happened.
I have no ability to wait for things for a long time.
I have no ability to wait for things for a long time.
I had a tough time last year but things are improving now.
The children said some very unpleasant things about me.
There is a special connection between parents and their children.



# 20 Heroes and villains

# A Personal heroes

My heroine is my aunt Georgia, who worked with homeless teenagers. She was deeply spiritual, and I admire her courage and dignity. More than anyone, she has inspired me to dedicate my life to looking after people.

I really **looked up to** my grandfather. He was a lifeboat **captain** for 20 years, and showed remarkable **bravery** on many occasions – at times he was truly **heroic**.

GL	os	SA	RY

heroine	a woman who you admire for doing sth brave or good. A man is a <b>hero</b> . <b>heroic</b> adj showing extreme courage <b>heroism</b> n
spiritual	connected with your spirit, rather than the physical world
courage	the ability to do sth, even though it is dangerous, frightening or very difficult SYN <b>bravery</b> ; <b>courageous</b> , <b>brave</b> adj
dignity	the ability to behave in a calm and serious manner in a difficult situation <b>dignified</b> adj
inspire	give sb the enthusiasm and desire to do sth inspiration n; inspirational adj
dedicate yourself/sth to (doing) sth	give a lot of time and effort to a particular activity or purpose because you think it is important
look up to sb	admire and respect sb, often sb older or in a higher position
captain	the person in charge of a ship or plane

# Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the @ to help you.

- 1 hero heroism
- 2 courage courageous
- 3 inspire inspiration
- 4 inspiration dedicate

- 5 captain spiritual
- 6 dignity courage
- 7 dignified bravery
- 8 heroine heroic

# Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in capitals.

1	He was so	COURAGE	5	I admired her	DIGNIFIED
2	She's a personal of mine.	HERO	6	His behaviour was	HERO
3	She showed great	BRAVE	7	She was an leader.	INSPIRE
4	He me in my work.	INSPIRATION	8	He is a very person	. SPIRIT

# 3 Complete the texts.

- 1 The person who has always been my \_\_\_\_\_\_ is my mother. She looked after us all throughout the war. I was born during the war, and when the government tried to take us children away to another part of the country, she was very \_\_\_\_\_\_ and fought to keep us with her.
- 2 I always \_\_\_\_\_\_ up to my uncle. He was a \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the navy and he \_\_\_\_\_\_ me to join the navy myself when I grew up. On several occasions he rescued migrants who were lost at sea. To me he was a \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Rosa Parks is a personal \_\_\_\_\_\_ of mine. She refused to give up her seat on the bus in Alabama, a protest which eventually led to the end of 'white only' buses. She acted with great \_\_\_\_\_\_. She said of herself, 'I was a person with \_\_\_\_\_\_ and self-respect, and I should not set my sights\* lower than anybody else just because I was black'.
  - \* = decide that you want sth and try very hard to get it

# ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you have a personal hero or heroine? Who?

Who do you look up to? Why?

Do you know anyone who you would describe as courageous? Who?



#### **B** Personal villains I don't approve of drivers who lose their temper with other road users. Pop stars often start off as rebels with strong moral principles. But when they achieve fame and become rich, SPOTLIGHT principles and values their values can change completely. I loathe that. Principles are strong beliefs that influence how you behave. Values (pl) are beliefs about what is right, wrong and important in life. A few boys bullied me at I can't bear all the rich, The words are very similar in meaning but are used in different expressions. school, and since then I've greedy people who seem Eating meat is against my principles. always despised bullies. to run the country. They are I won't go there on principle. responsible for such misery. She has a different set of values. GLOSSARY villain a person who is morally bad or responsible bully use your power to hurt or frighten a weaker person, for causing trouble or harm or make them do sth. The person who does the bullying is a bully. rebel sb who opposes people in authority rebel v; rebellious adj despise hate and have no respect for sb/sth despicable adj fame the state of being famous can't bear (usually in negatives and questions) If you can't bear sth, you cannot accept or deal with sth because it is loathe dislike sb/sth very much SYN detest unpleasant. SYN can't stand approve have a positive feeling towards sth/sb greedy wanting more food, power, etc. than you need (of sb/sth) OPP disapprove (of sb/sth); greed n approval n OPP disapproval great suffering of the mind or body SYN distress misery lose your temper become very angry Circle the words which are verbs. rebelapprovaldetestfameprincipledespiseloseyourtemperdisapproveloathegreedbully 6 Complete the sentences. 1 The opposite of *approval* is \_\_\_\_\_. 6 The related adjective for greed is \_\_\_\_\_. 2 Detest means the same as \_\_\_\_\_. 7 Can't stand means the same as \_\_\_\_\_. 3 The related adjective for *despise* is \_\_\_\_\_. 8 Approve is followed by the preposition 4 The related adjective for *rebel* is \_\_\_\_\_. 9 The noun related to *famous* is \_\_\_\_\_. 5 Distress is another word for \_\_\_\_\_\_. 10 Values and \_\_\_\_\_\_ have a similar meaning. Complete the questions with words from the box in the correct form. against disapprove rebellious temper villain bear values greedy rebel bully principle despise 1 Do brothers sometimes \_\_\_\_\_\_ their sisters, or can the opposite be true? 2 Is there anything you won't eat on \_\_\_\_\_? 3 Do you often lose your ? 4 Are there any types of car drivers that you can't \_\_\_\_\_? 5 As a teenager, were you a \_\_\_\_\_? If so, what were you \_\_\_\_\_ about? 6 Is it \_\_\_\_\_\_ your principles to borrow money from friends? 7 Do you of any of your friends' partners? Why? 8 In your country, do young people and older people have different sets of ? 9 Do you think rich people are \_\_\_\_\_ and just want more and more? 10 Is there anyone you \_\_\_\_\_\_ and would consider a \_\_\_\_\_? 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.

TEST YOURSELF

People 49

# 21 Behaviour

# A Influences on behaviour

Why do we behave the way we do? Is it a case of <b>nature</b> or <b>nurture</b> ? According to behavioural psychologist Michael Woods, various factors have an <b>impact on</b> our lives.	ABOUT YOU
Parents play a crucial part; other role models are less influential.	
Peer pressure is a significant factor.	
People respond positively to incentives, but not the threat of punishments.	
A broken home or deprived childhood needn't have a damaging effect.	

#### GLOSSARY

GLOSSANI		A DESCRIPTION OF THE OWNER OF THE	
nature	the basic character of a person: Violence isn't <b>in his nature</b> .	peer pressure	the influence on your behaviour of people around you of the same age
nurture	the care and attention given to help sb develop <b>nurture</b> v	incentive (to do sth)	sth that encourages you to do sth, work harder, etc.
impact (on sth) play a part (in sth) crucial	an effect or influence (on sth) be involved and influential in developing sth extremely important because it will affect	broken home deprived	a family in which the parents are divorced or separated without sufficient food, education or money <b>deprive</b> v; <b>deprivation</b> n
role model influential	other things a person you admire and learn from able to influence the way other people think or behave	damaging	having a bad effect on sb/sth: <i>a damaging</i> effect OPP beneficial

# Find six compounds or phrases in the box.

|--|

.....

# 2 Are these positive or negative statements? Write P or N.

- 1 She felt nurtured in the children's home.
- 2 She's an influential role model.
- 3 There is a lot of deprivation in this town.
- 4 The amount of work had a damaging effect on me.
- 5 More money proved to be a real incentive.

.........

- 6 A month's break was highly beneficial.
- 7 He smoked because of peer pressure.
- 8 Their broken home had an impact on the boys.

# 3 Complete the text.

Danny's story is interesting. He came from a broken (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_, had a fairly (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_, he also got into fights, although it wasn't in his (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to be violent. Then he started going to a local boxing club, which had a real (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on his life. The man who ran it was Danny's first positive role (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, and he played a (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ part in changing Danny's attitude to life. His behaviour changed completely: he gave up crime and became dedicated to his sport. He might even win a place in England's amateur boxing team at the next Olympics, and that is a real (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for him to train hard.

# 4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the statements at the top of the page? Write your answers, or ask another student.

# **B** Teenage behaviour

# COPING WITH ADOLESCENCE

When adolescents are making the transition to adulthood, their conduct can change a lot and can be difficult for parents. Teenagers need you to be supportive and sympathetic as they try to find their way towards independence. Encourage them to talk about their problems, but only in their own time and at their own pace. If you are wise, you will try to be consistent in the way you deal with them, and help them cope with the changes in their needs and emotions. And remember that it's just a phase they're going through.

## SPOTLIGHT stages of life

Adolescence is the time in someone's life when they develop from a child to an adult. An adolescent between the ages of 13 and 19 is called a teenager. adolescent, teenage adj Adulthood is the time in your life when you are no longer a child or

teenager and become an adult. SYN grown-up; adult, grown-up adj

# Circle the correct word.

- 1 When you work with teenagers, you need to be sympathetic / grown-up.
- 2 My son has just become a teenage / teenager.
- 3 I think it's just a difficult phase she's going through / to.
- 4 What are the main problems for teenagers during adolescents / adolescence?
- 5 Just make your choices at your own pace / time.
- 6 Ariel's attitude changes all the time: she's not very wise / consistent.
- 7 Ollie's successfully made the transition from adolescence to adult / adulthood.
- 8 Cora is 17 now, so she isn't a teenager / grown-up yet.

6 Complete the sentences using suitable words from the top of the page.

- 1 It's always \_\_\_\_\_\_ to think carefully before you speak.
- 2 The best way to \_\_\_\_\_\_ with difficult situations is to laugh about them.
- 3 The most difficult \_\_\_\_\_ of your life is in your twenties.
- 4 If you have problems, it helps to have a \_\_\_\_\_\_ friend or partner.
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_\_ from childhood to adolescence is an easy one.
- 6 You need to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ when creating rules for your children to live by.
- 7 You can only gain \_\_\_\_\_ through years of life experience.
- 8 In order to get through your teenage years, you have to make decisions in your own and
- 9 When your mother starts asking you for advice, you know you're an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 I have great \_\_\_\_\_\_ for families who are struggling with problem teenagers.
- 11 People accept bad \_\_\_\_\_\_ from teenagers but not so easily from adults.

7 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 6? Why? / Why not? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



GLOSSARY	
cope (with sth) transition (from sth to sth) conduct	deal successfully with sth difficult a change from one state or form to another a person's behaviour in a particular
supportive	place or situation giving help or support to sb in a difficult situation
sympathetic (to/towards sb)	showing that you understand other people's feelings, especially their problems <b>sympathy</b> n
in your own time	when you are ready
pace	the speed at which sth happens: <i>at your own pace</i> (= as fast or as slowly as you like)
wise	able to make sensible decisions or give good advice because of your experience or knowledge wisdom n; gain wisdom become wiser
consistent	always having the same opinions, standards, etc. and not changing them
phase	a stage in the development of sth:

go through a phase

# 22 Families

There is a **tendency** among some women to believe that however hard you try, you end up like your mother. Well, it's hard to say if that's the case with me because my mother passed away when I was only nine, and my father was left a widower. He did remarry several years later, and I was brought up by my father and stepmother. I know the presence of a new woman in the family can be difficult, but we have always had a really positive relationship. We are not alike in looks or character, but I think I've picked up one or two of her good habits. For example, I always remember to write personally to thank people for birthday or Christmas presents.

By my teens, my father told me that I was starting to resemble my mother a bit more, and it seems I have got one or two of her characteristics. (Like me, she didn't take criticism very well!) But I think it's now increasingly apparent that I take after my father more in character and behaviour. That's fine by me, although it seems to be the opposite with my two siblings, both sisters. My dad says that they remind him much more of my mother.



me now at the age of 21

me with my mother when I was nine

#### GLOSSARY

GLOSSANT			
tendency	If sb has a particular <b>tendency</b> , they are likely to behave or act in a particular way.	alike pick sth up	very similar get a skill, habit, etc. by chance, without
however	used with an adjective or adverb to mean 'to whatever degree': however hard, however much	newconally	making an effort to get it by a particular person and not someone else
		personally	
it's hard to say the case	= it's difficult to give an opinion the true situation	teens	the period between 13 and 19: They're in their teens.
pass away	die. We sometimes use <b>pass away</b> to avoid saying <i>die</i> . SYN <b>pass on</b>	characteristic	a typical feature or quality that sb has characteristic (of sb/sth) adj
widower	a man whose wife/husband has died. A <b>widow</b> is a woman whose husband/wife has died. We can use <b>late</b> in formal English to talk about sb's	criticism	the act of expressing unhappiness and disapproval with sb/sth: <i>He can't <b>take</b> any</i> criticism; criticize v
States and	dead wife/husband: the property of his late wife	apparent	easy to see or understand SYN obvious
bring sb up	care for a child, teaching them how to behave,	sibling formal	a brother or a sister
(often passive)	etc. SYN raise	remind sb of	If sb/sth reminds you of sb/sth else, they
stepmother	the woman who is married to your father but is not your real mother ALSO <b>stepfather/</b> <b>daughter/son</b> , etc.	sb/sth	make you remember or think about the other person, place, thing, etc. because they are similar in some way.
presence	(of a person) the fact of being in a particular place		

#### SPOTLIGHT expressing family similarities

If you **resemble someone/something**, you look like or are similar to another person/ thing. The emphasis is more on looks than character. **resemblance** n

If you **take after someone**, you look or behave like an older member of your family. If you **follow in someone's footsteps**, you do the same job or have the same lifestyle as someone else, usually a member of your family.

52

Us	se the 🌚 to help you.
	remind sibling 3 presence remind 5 apparent alike
2	sibling widower 4 tendency obvious 6 criticize alike
Re	epace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.
1	She is between 13 and 19.
2	They aren't very similar.
3	She looks like her mother.
4	He has three brothers and sisters.
5	It's <u>difficult to give an opinion</u> whether it will work.
6	I'm not sure if that's the true situation with him.
7	Her mother <u>died</u> last year.
8	Constant optimism is just one of his typical features.
-	Constant optimistris just one of the <u>transmiss</u>
Co	omplete the sentences
1	Her husband died in the war so she's been a for many years.
2	If I speak to him, then I'm sure he'll understand.
3	There's a strong between the two sisters. People often say they are
4	hard I work, I still can't seem to understand this subject.
5	If you see them together, it's that they are twins.
6	Lea was upset because her mum her for wearing too much make-up.
7	I'm like Mum, but Marthaafter Dad much more in the way she behaves.
8	My mum wants to be there. She thinks the of a parent will make a difference.
9	My brother up playing guitar just from watching and listening to other guitarists.
10	I have a to talk too much when I'm nervous.
0	omplete the dialogues with a word or phrase.
	Does Lucy you anyone? ~ Yes. She's just like Rachel, isn't she?
2	I had to tell Ben his work wasn't good enough. ~ I know, and he doesn't take very well, does he?
2	Will Joasia be a doctor like her dad? ~ Yes, I believe she's following
4	Have you always lived in London? ~ No, I was in the country, and moved here when I was 18.
5	Do you think your family will like your new girlfriend? ~ I don't know. It's
6	Is Don your real father? ~ No, he's my
7	Have you read the document? ~ Not yet, but I've heard what it contains.
8	Did his father run the company? ~ No, his mother did until her death.
AB	BOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.
1	Do you resemble either your mother or father?
2	Do you think you take after one of your parents more than the other?
3	If you have siblings, do you think you are alike in either looks and/or character?
4	Do you think there are any characteristics that are common to different members of your family?
	Do you agree that daughters usually end up like their mothers? Do you think it might also be true that sons
5	end up like their fathers?

# 23 Manners

# A Table manners



In Japan, it is **considered** rude to cross your chopsticks, **lick** them, or **stick** them vertically into a bowl of rice and leave them pointing **upwards**.

In <u>France</u>, don't offer to **split** the bill: it is not **regarded as** very **sophisticated**. You either pay the bill, or someone else does.

In <u>the Philippines</u>, it is considered **good manners** to eat all the food on your plate.

In <u>Afghanistan</u>, wasting food is **unacceptable**. Eating or talking with your mouth full is **viewed as** being **discourteous**.

In <u>China</u>, it is **customary** to pass food to the elderly first. It can be **offensive** to remove rice from a bowl with a spoon.

# GLOSSARY

lick	move your tongue over the surface of sth in order to eat it, make it wet or clean it
stick	push sth, usually sth quite sharp, into sth else
upwards	moving or pointing towards a higher position OPP <b>downwards</b>
split	divide sth into two or more parts, and share it between different people
sophisticated	having experience of the world and knowing about fashion, culture, etc. OPP <b>unsophisticated</b> ; <b>sophistication</b> n
manners pl	behaviour that is considered polite in a particular society or culture: <i>It's good/bad manners to</i>
unacceptable	not agreed or approved of by most people in society OPP <b>acceptable</b>
discourteous	having bad manners and not showing respect for other people OPP <b>courteous</b> ; <b>courtesy</b> n
customary	usually done in a particular place or situation
offensive	rude in a way that makes sb upset or annoyed OPP <b>inoffensive</b> ; <b>offend</b> v

## SPOTLIGHT consider, regard, view

These verbs all mean to think about something in a particular way. They are commonly used in passive constructions like this:

- Apologizing is considered (to be) the correct thing to do.
- Apologizing is regarded/viewed as the correct thing to do.

## Write the opposites.

1	sophisticated	 3	upwards	 5	acceptable	
2	offensive	 4	courteous	 6	good manners	

## 2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals.

1	Their behaviour doesn't	show much	SOPHISTICATED
2	I'm sure it wasn't his inte	ntion to you.	OFFENSIVE
3	ls it to	arrive ten minutes late for a dinner?	CUSTOM
4	His behaviour is occasio	hally rude and	ACCEPT
5	The waiters are always v	and polite.	COURTESY
6	It was an	remark, but for some reason it upset her.	OFFENSIVE

## 3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- 1 It is quite c\_\_\_\_\_\_ to eat chicken legs or wings with your fingers.
- 2 Parents think it's important for children to have good table m\_\_\_\_
- 3 It is c\_\_\_\_\_ bad manners to eat everything you are given.
- 4 It is v\_\_\_\_\_\_ as polite to offer food to the elderly first.
- 5 It's d\_\_\_\_\_\_ to start eating your food before others have been served.
- 6 It's r\_\_\_\_\_ to criticize the host's food.
- 7 Talking with your mouth full might not be considered very s
- 8 It is customary among young people to s \_\_\_\_\_ the bill in restaurants.
- 9 It is viewed as rude to I\_\_\_\_\_\_ your knife, fork or spoon when you have finished eating, or s\_\_\_\_\_\_ your own knife, fork or spoon into dishes of food for the whole table.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true or false, or does it depend on different factors? Write your answers, or ask another student.

# **B** Polite or impolite?

	GLOSSANT
Ella's behaviour is <b>exceptional</b> for a child of six.	exceptional cheeky inf
Yes, but that brother of hers is a bit cheeky.	take offence (at sth)
I don't think Giulio will <b>take offence</b> if you leave the party early.	put your foot in it (with sb) inf
I just don't want to put my foot in it.	impress
I want to <b>impress</b> his family, and that wouldn't help.	be on your best behaviour
Well, you'd better <b>be on your best</b> <b>behaviour</b> , then!	take exception (to sth) remark
I really took exception to Adam's remarks.	humorous
actually, they were <b>deeply</b> offensive.	deeply
Yes, I couldn't agree more. They showed a real lack of judgement. He has no notion	judgement
of how to behave.	notion (of sth)
	of six. Yes, but that brother of hers is a bit cheeky. I don't think Giulio will take offence if you leave the party early. I just don't want to put my foot in it. I want to impress his family, and that wouldn't help. Well, you'd better be on your best behaviour, then! I really took exception to Adam's remarks. He thought they were humorous, but actually, they were deeply offensive. Yes, I couldn't agree more. They showed a real lack of judgement. He has no notion

# 5 Is the speaker happy or unhappy? Write H or U.

- 1 My wife has outstanding judgement.
- I put my foot in it with Carla.
- 3 She took offence at my remark.
- 4 My boss has no sense of humour.
- 5 I made a really humorous comment.

unusually good SYN outstanding

often in an amusing way cheek n

or done

impressed adj

SYN comment

upsetting/hurtful

of humour

(often used by adults about children) rude,

be upset or offended by sth that sb has said

accidentally say sth that offends or upsets sb

If sth/sb impresses you, you admire it/them.

object strongly to sth and be angry about it

a few words that give your opinion about sth

the ability to form opinions or make sensible decisions: **show good/poor judgement** an idea or an understanding of sth

......

funny and entertaining; showing a sense

very; very much: deeply offensive/

behave in the most polite way you can

- 6 I took exception to the criticism.
- 7 The hosts impressed me.
- 8 My little girl was on her best behaviour.

# 6 Circle the words in italics which are possible. All three may be.

- He was outstanding / put his foot in it / on his best behaviour.
- 2 She made a humorous / an upsetting / a cheeky remark.
- 3 What she said showed poor / impressed / good judgement.
- 4 Unfortunately, she took exception to / offence at / her foot in what I said.
- 5 That little boy's behaviour is exceptional / cheek / outstanding.
- 6 I thought the comment deeply offensive / poor / upsetting.
- 7 He has a sense of humour / no notion of politeness / poor judgement.
- 8 He's not always well behaved but today he impressed me / had no sense of humour / was exceptional.

# Complete the texts.

I have a very unusual friend called Erwin who likes to try and (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ people – he loves being admired. He's incredibly polite and has (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ table manners. | always feel rather uncomfortable with him, because I feel I have to be on my best (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ all the time. I'm very nervous about putting my (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in it, especially if I go to his place for dinner. If I get there even five minutes late, he seems to take (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_.

GLOSSARY

I've taken a strong dislike to one of the guys who works for me. He's very rude; in fact, I'd say he's (6) offensive. The other day he made a rude (7) about my appearance, which frankly is none of his business, and I really took (8) to it. Calling me 'carrot top' because of my red hair showed very poor (9) , I felt. He thought it was a (10) comment, but I didn't find it funny at all.





# **B** Kitchen equipment

Equipment	used to	what?	Equipment	used to	what?
deep-fat fryer	deep-fry	eep-fry fish, potatoes, etc.		grate	cheese, e.g. parmesan
asserole	braise/stew	meat, vegetables	peeler	peel	vegetables, fruit
<b>T</b>	(cook meat slowly in liquid in a closed container)		lemon-squeezer	squeeze	lemons, oranges limes
food processor	chop, slice, mix beat SYN whisk	meat, vegetables, etc. eggs, cream	corkscrew	open	wine bottles
-			kitchen scales	weigh	all types of food
vhisk					
			carving knife	carve	usually meat
colander	drain vegetables, pasta, etc. that have been washed or cooked in water	vegetables, pasta,		i	
V		frying pan	fry	meat, fish, vegetables	

# 6 Find six compound words in the box.

	frying processor	lemon- fryer	kitchen pan	food knife		arving queezer	deep-fat scales	
7	Write down		t you would					
	-	tables cooked in	water			5 beat e		
	2 braise/stev	v meat				6 weigh	food	
	3 open a bo	ttle of wine				7 cut me	eat into slices	
	4 chop and	slice vegetables				8 fry me	at or vegetables	i
8	Write down	a food or type	of food you	often				
-	1 squeeze				5	slice		
	2 grate				6	braise		
	3 deep-fry				7	carve		
	4 weigh				8	peel		
9		How much o y items of equ						ave in your kitchen?

# 25 Opinions about food

# **A** Taste

## $\dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha} \star \dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha} \star \star \dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha}\dot{\alpha} \star \star \star \star \dot{\alpha} \star \star \star \star \dot{\alpha}$

# 公公公公公

I thought the food looked quite **appetizing**, but I soon changed my mind. First of all, the bread was **stale**. I then started with very **salty** ham with melon, which wasn't **ripe**. My main course was a type of curry, which I thought would be really **spicy**, but was actually quite **bland**. My husband ordered a **rare** steak (hoping it would be **lean** and **juicy**), but instead got a piece of grey meat that was **well done** and **tough**. And the cooked vegetables were almost **raw**. The chocolate tart for dessert was far too **rich** – and very **fattening**. That was probably my mistake. Anyway, we finished with coffee that was very **bitter**. We won't be going back!

#### SPOTLIGHT adjectives ending in -

Adjectives ending in -y are often used to describe flavours and smells, e.g. **salty**, **spicy**, **creamy**, **fruity**, **juicy**, **greasy** (= full of oil from cooking), etc. They can mean 'full of something'.

This soup's very salty.

Or they can mean 'having a similar flavour/smell'.

- chicken with a spicy sauce
- a wine with a fruity smell

## wendy waytogo

#### GLOSSARY

GLUSSAR	and the second		
appetizing stale ripe bland rare	(of food) that looks or smells attractive, making you feel hungry. An <b>appetite</b> is a strong desire for sth, especially food. (of food, especially bread; also of air) old and not fresh (of fruit) ready to be picked and eaten (of food) lacking in taste and flavour SYN <b>tasteless</b> (of meat) only cooked a short time (still red inside). Other ways of cooking meat are <b>medium</b> or <b>well done</b> .	lean tough raw rich fattening bitter	(of meat) having little or no fat (of meat) difficult to cut and eat OPP <b>tender</b> not cooked (of food) containing a lot of fat, butter, eggs, sugar, cream, etc, which makes you feel full very quickly (of food) that makes people fat having a sharp unpleasant taste; not sweet. We use <b>sour</b> to describe the taste of a lemon.

# Underline the possible answers. One, two or three may be possible.

- 1 The meat was very lean / bitter / tender.
- 2 The chocolate was greasy / sweet / rich.
- 3 The vegetables were tasteless / bland / stale.
- 4 The bread was fresh / raw / stale.



# 2 Complete the phrases in a suitable way.

- 1 You don't want bread that is
- 2 You don't want fruit that isn't
- 3 You don't want meat that is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 You don't want coffee that is too
- 5 If you're on a diet, you don't want food that is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 And you always want food to look \_\_\_\_\_.

# 3 Complete the words in the text.

We found a table by the window. I had quite an (1) a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_after our long walk, and I started with the Thai soup which should be hot and (2) s \_\_\_\_\_\_. It was, and the flavours were really good. Unfortunately, it was also a bit too (3) s \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, so I needed to drink quite a lot of water with it. My steak was nice and (4) I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and cooked just as I like it, i.e. not completely (5) r \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ but very (6) r \_\_\_\_\_\_\_. Unfortunately, the pepper sauce was quite (7) b \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (I like it hot and very peppery), and the chips with it were a bit (8) g \_\_\_\_\_\_\_. I finished with a chocolate pudding. It was quite (9) r \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ but still very nice.



- 5 The soup was salty / tender / ripe.
- 6 My steak was rare / well done / tough.
- 7 The chips were ripe/greasy/sour.
- 8 The peaches were tasteless / sweet / ripe.

# B Live to eat or eat to live

While some people live to eat, I couldn't care less about food. In the morning I have a mug' of instant coffee and cereal if I'm lucky. I then take a packed lunch (a sandwich and a banana) or pop in to the self-service canteen for something around 12.30. In the evening, I generally heat something up that I've bought in the supermarket, then eat it on a tray<sup>2</sup> on my lap<sup>3</sup> while watching TV. At the weekend, I treat myself to a takeaway. I think my most important piece of kitchen equipment is probably my tin opener.

# CLOSSADY

GLOSSART			
I couldn't care less (about sth/sb) inf	= it does not matter to me at all (This can sound a bit rude.)	self-service	(of a restaurant, shop, etc.) where you serve yourself and then pay.
instant	(of food) that can be prepared quickly and easily, usually by adding hot water:	canteen	the place in a school, office, factory, etc. where the people who work there can get meals
	instant coffee	heat (sth) (up)	become or make sth hot or warm
cereal	a food that is made of grain, often eaten for breakfast with milk	treat sb/yourself (to sth)	give sb/yourself sth special; pay for sth for sb else
packed lunch	food that you prepare at home and take with you to eat at work or school	takeaway	food that you buy in a restaurant but eat somewhere else
pop in (to somewhere)	make a quick visit somewhere, e.g. a shop or a person's home	tin opener	a tool that you use for opening a tin of food SYN <b>can opener</b>

#### 4 Finish the words or phrases.

- 1
   Where's the tin \_\_\_\_\_?
   4
   Have a chocolate. Go on, treat \_\_\_\_\_!

   2
   This restaurant is self-\_\_\_\_\_.
   5
   You decide. I couldn't care \_\_\_\_\_.

   3
   You just have to heat the meal \_\_\_\_\_.
   6
   Mum made me a packed \_\_\_\_\_.

## Complete the dialogues.

- 1 Are you going out tonight? ~ Yes, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ Jess to an expensive meal.
- 2 I haven't got real coffee. ~ That's OK. \_\_\_\_\_\_ is fine.
- 3 Could I have tea rather than coffee? ~ Sure. Cup or \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Where shall I put the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of drinks? ~ Oh, on the dining-room table, please.
- 5 Do you want to stay in or go out? ~ I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ less. You decide.
- 6 Shall we go out to eat? ~ No, let's get a \_\_\_\_\_ and come back here.
- 7 Why were you late? ~ Oh, I just \_\_\_\_\_ in to see Carmen on my way home.
- 8 Do they have waiters in the new café? ~ No, it's all \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Complete the questions.

- 1 Do you drink real coffee or \_\_\_\_\_ coffee?
- 2 Do you drink coffee out of a cup or a \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Do you have \_\_\_\_\_\_ with milk for breakfast, or do you prefer something hot?
- 4 Would you be happy with a \_\_\_\_\_ lunch instead of a cooked meal?
- 5 Do you eat in a school or office ?
- 6 Do you always cook fresh food or are you happy to \_\_\_\_\_\_ prepared or frozen food?
- 7 Do you often get a \_\_\_\_\_\_ rather than cook at home?
- 8 How do you \_\_\_\_\_\_ yourself if you want to eat something special?
- 9 Do you ever eat food on your \_\_\_\_\_ while watching TV?
- ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



# **B** Driving a car

- The first thing you have to do is start the car and pull away from the kerb.
- You steer the car to control its direction.
- If you want to go faster, you accelerate.
- · If you want to slow down, you put on the brakes.
- If you want to go back, you reverse.
- If you change direction suddenly, e.g. to avoid hitting something, you swerve.
- If you drive fast on a wet road and brake too quickly, you may skid.
- If you pass another car going in the same direction, you overtake.
- With a manual car, you need to change gear all the time (from 1 to 5/6 and reverse).
- You need to be alert at all times and on the lookout for any potential hazards.

1 pull away = start

5

- 2 manual = operated by \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 be on the lookout = pay
- 4 swerve = change direction

5 steer = control the \_\_\_\_\_ of the vehicle

pull away (from sth) (of a vehicle) start moving

(of a vehicle or person) start

OPP **slow down**; accelerator *n* the pedal in a car, etc. that you

to go faster SYN speed up;

press to control the speed

an uncontrolled way

**OPP** automatic

find or avoid sth

SYN possible

(for sth/sb)

With a manual car, you

slide sideways or forwards in

operate the gears by hand.

watching or listening with all

pay attention in order to see,

a danger or risk hazardous adj

that may possibly happen

your attention: be on the alert

6 skid = slide because you have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ control of the vehicle

GLOSSARY

accelerate

skid

manual

alert

be on the lookout

(for sth/sb)

potential

hazard

- 6 Replace the underlined words with words that keep the same meaning. 1 You need to speed up. 2 I can't go back any further. 3 Ice can be a real danger. 4 Birds are a possible problem. 5 You can't pass another car here. 6 You have to be on the <u>alert</u>. 7 I changed direction suddenly to avoid the child crossing the road. ...... 8 OK, you can move forward now. 7 Complete the sentences in a suitable way. 1 You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ on a bridge. 2 You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the car with one hand. 3 When you slow \_\_\_\_\_, you should \_\_\_\_\_ gradually, not suddenly. 4 You should always be \_\_\_\_\_\_ when you drive. If you feel tired, take a break. 5 People shouldn't drink and drive: otherwise, they are a \_\_\_\_\_\_ danger to themselves and others.
  - 6 If you skid, take your foot off the brake and change to a higher
  - 7 I don't know why people drive manual cars. It's much better to drive an \_\_\_\_\_.

8 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 7, and do you always follow the advice? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

TEST YOURSELF

61



We reported earlier this morning on a major incident on the M5 just before the Gloucester Service Station. Eyewitness reports say a large lorry pulled out from the inside lane and collided with a BMW that was overtaking. The lorry then spilled part of its load of wood, causing a massive pile-up as vehicles crashed into falling logs. The driver of the BMW was reported to be in a critical condition and has been taken by helicopter to Bristol Southmeads Hospital, while ambulances have taken a further six or seven casualties to a nearby Gloucester hospital. We understand a passenger in the BMW died at the scene of the accident.

Two lanes of the motorway are now completely blocked and will be for some time, according to accident investigators. 'Vehicles are scattered all over the motorway and the damage is extensive,' said one. 'It's just chaos at the moment.' The police are advising motorists to exit via Junction 12, or avoid the area completely, if at all possible.

#### GLOSSARY

00.00

incident	sth that happens, especially sth unusual or unpleasant	log	a thick piece of wood that has fallen or been cut from a tree
service station	a place at the side of a motorway where there is a restaurant, toilets, petrol, etc.	critical	dangerous or serious: a patient in a critical condition
eyewitness	a person who has seen a crime, accident, etc. and can describe it afterwards SYN witness	casualty	a person who is killed or injured in an accident or a war
pull out lane	(of a car, etc.) move away from the side of a road a section of a road that is marked by white	scene	the place where sth happens: at the scene of the crash/crime
	lines to keep traffic separate: inside lane; overtaking lane	block scatter	make it difficult or impossible for sth/sb to pass spread over a large area
collide (with sth/sb)	crash into sth; hit sth very hard while moving collision n	extensive chaos	large in area or amount: <b>extensive damage</b> a state of great confusion and a lack of order
spill	go over the edge of a container by accident; make sth do this		chaotic adj
load	sth that is being carried (usually in large amounts) by a person, vehicle, etc. <b>load</b> v put a	exit	a place where traffic can leave a road or motorway <b>exit</b> v
-	large amount of sth into sth else	via junction	through a place a place where roads meet; here, the place
massive pile-up	very big SYN huge a crash that involves several cars	Junction	where a road goes off a motorway

-	cident service witness collide spill critical collision pile-up massive extensive via ex
	ow many syllables are there in each of these words? Use the end to help you. ocked casualty via exit scattered chaos ambulance helicopter
Di	vide these words into the four groups below. A word may go in more than one group.
lan	ne eyewitness collide ambulance exit junction pile-up helicopter casualties
T	TRANSPORT PEOPLE ROADS ACCIDENT
******	
******	
14/	hat any use water from the tout? Write T (True) or F (False) Correct any contenant that
	hat can you remember from the text? Write T (True) or F (False). Correct any sentences that
1	e wrong. The incident happened in the morning. <b>7</b> There were two or three other casualties.
2	Nobody saw what actually happened. 8 Two lanes of the motorway are now open.
_	
3	
4	The lorry spilled a load of bricks. <b>10</b> Police are now advising motorists to enter
5	One person died on the way to hospital. via junction 12 of the motorway.
6	An ambulance took the driver of the BMW
	to hospital.
Rid	ght or wrong? Write R or W, and correct any definitions that are wrong.
1	If you <i>pull out</i> in a car, you get out while <b>6</b> Scattered means in lots of different places.
	it is moving. <b>7</b> If you <i>collide with</i> something, you almost
2	A junction is a place where you turn left or right.
3	Massive means very big. 8 Chaos is complete confusion.
4	A lang is the side of a read
5	Casualties are people walking by when to hospital.
-	an accident happens. <b>10</b> If you <i>block</i> somebody, you hit them.
6	omplete the sentences.
1	We stopped at a on the M4 for petrol and to get something to eat.
2	If the road is clear, you should stay in the inside of a motorway.
3	We passed one lorry carrying a of material to one of the building sites.
4	Lorry drivers, protesting against the rising cost of fuel,two lanes of the M32
-	The protest ended after an hour, and police described it as only a minor
5	I was going to go on the motorway, but then decided to go the smaller
	villages, which was a nicer route. Unfortunately, there was an accident, with vehicles everywhere. It was
6	Keep going until you get to a large with the A420. Turn right there.
7	It was a bad accident and several cars suffered damage.
8	The car crashed into a pile of at the side of the road. The wood went everyw
9	There was a huge on the M3 this morning involving half a dozen vehicles. O
,	person died and several are in a condition.
	If you're going to Bristol, take the M4 and at Junction 19 or 20.

# 28 Weather

# **A** Conditions

English weather is unreliable, to say the least. We can have winters that are bitterly cold or extremely mild, and summers with long spells of hot weather when it can get very humid, or ones that stay generally cloudy and dull. Almost any day outside of summer can be mild or chilly. Equally possible are torrential rain, thick fog, flashes of lightning, scattered showers and the odd rainbow.

#### GLOSSARY

to say the least bitterly cold mild	used to say that sth is much worse or more serious than you are saying extremely cold during cold weather, warmer than you expect	chilly torrential rain thick fog	(of the weather) too cold to feel comfortable heavy rain SYN <b>a downpour</b> = fog that is difficult to see through SYN <b>dense fog</b>
spell	a short period of time: a spell of hot/ cold weather	flash	a sudden bright light that comes and goes quickly: <i>a flash of lightning</i>
humid	(of climate) warm and feeling slightly wet humidity n	scattered showers	rain spread over a large area or happening several times during a period of time
dull	(of the weather) not bright, with a lot of clouds	odd	not regular or fixed; happening occasionally

rainbow

# Which is worse, or are they the same? 1 cold OR bitterly cold 2 thick fog OR dense fog 3 hot OR hot and humid 4 a chilly day OR a mild day 5 torrential rain OR a downpour 6 a dull day OR a bright day 7 the odd shower OR scattered showers 8 quite wet OR quite wet, to say the least

# 2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 We've had a number of showers today.
- 2 We had a short period of cold weather last week.
- 3 It's been really cold this winter.
- 4 We had very heavy rain this morning.
- 5 I drove through some very bad fog.
- 6 It was too cold to feel comfortable today.
- 7 I thought it would be cold, but actually it was warmer than I expected.
- 8 We get the occasional spell of hot weather.

# Complete the texts.

While we were out, we had a sudden (1)	of rain followed by sever	al (2) of
lightning. It was a bit frightening and we also got v	very wet, to say the (3)	. But then the rain
stopped, the sun came out and there was a beaut		end of the day I was sweating:
it was hot and the (5) was unbea	rable.	

It was (6) cold for May, and even by midday it still felt quite (7) . Yesterday had been quite hot, but today was cloudy and (8) with (9) expected later, though not heavy or lasting for any period of time.

# **B** Effects of weather

Many people in this country listen to the weather forecast very closely, as it can have a significant impact on people's lives. Farmers are obviously dependent on weather conditions for the success of their crops, but the weather affects everyone:

- A heatwave can eventually lead to water shortages and drought.
- \* When there is heavy snow and blizzards, traffic comes to a standstill, and this causes widespread disruption on the roads.
- Gales cause damage to people's property, and this may be widespread.

#### GLOSSARY

weather forecast	a description of the weather that is expected in the coming days
closely	carefully and with interest
significant	important enough to be noticed and have an effect
dependent (on sth/sb)	needing sth/sb to support you
heatwave	a period of unusually hot weather
shortage	a situation where there is not enough of sth OPP surplus
drought	a long period without rain
blizzard	a bad storm with strong winds and a lot of snow
come to a standstill	reach a situation in which all activity or movement has stopped ALSO bring sth to a standstill
widespread	found or happening over a large area: widespread damage
disruption	a situation in which it is difficult for sth to continue in the normal way
gale	a very strong wind. A <b>breeze</b> is a light, usually pleasant, wind.

# Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the e to help you.

- 1 widespread heatwave
  - \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*
- shortage damage
   surplus blizzard
- 4 gale damage
- 5 surplus disruption
- 6 drought thought
- 5 Circle the correct answer.
  - 1 A surplus is too much / not enough of something.
  - 2 A breeze is a strong / light wind.
  - 3 Disruption causes / doesn't cause problems.
  - 4 If you are dependent on something, you need / would like it.
  - 5 A blizzard usually has strong winds / very low temperatures.
  - 6 A significant effect is quite small / large.
  - 7 A forecast talks about the future / past.
  - 8 A heatwave is a day / period of hot weather.

#### 6 Complete the texts.

Farmers in this country are (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ on rain for their crops to grow and flourish, and if the current (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ continues with no further rain, it will be a second year of (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_, and that means serious water (8)

We had 65 mph (9) today, and this has caused (10) damage to a number of houses. If these conditions get worse, the damage will become more (11)

## ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 Which of the weather conditions on pages 64 and 65 are common in your country?
- 2 What effect do they have on people's lives?
- 3 Which of the weather conditions are rare in your country?

# 29 Clothes

# **A** Different styles



6 V-neck jumpers

......

.....

......

Who wears the following most often? Is it men, women, or both equally?

- 1 caps

- 1 caps
   6 V-neck jumpers

   2 suede shoes
   7 high-heeled shoes

   3 silk shirts
   8 sandals

   4 short-sleeved shirts
   9 waistcoats

   4 short-sleeved shirts
- 5 bracelets

# 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 I really like men in three-piece suits, with trousers, jacket and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I've got one really tight-fitting dress, but usually I prefer \_\_\_\_\_\_ clothes.
- 3 My sister wears flat shoes most of the time but \_\_\_\_\_\_ shoes for special occasions.
- 4 I don't like bright patterns, so I usually wear \_\_\_\_\_\_ shirts.
- 5 My sister has a very glamorous, tight-fitting black and white \_\_\_\_\_\_ skirt.
- 6 I wear \_\_\_\_\_\_a lot in the summer because my feet get so hot.
- 7 Most men only wear short-\_\_\_\_\_ shirts in the summer.
- 8 Since my dad went bald, he has started wearing a \_\_\_\_\_\_ to keep his head warm.
- 9 I've got a grey backpack with adjustable shoulder
- 10 Some men like wearing \_\_\_\_\_\_-fitting T-shirts to show off their muscular bodies.

# ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Do you have any clothes in suede or silk? If so, what?
- 2 Do you often wear sandals in the summer? If not, what do you prefer?
- 3 Do you wear a lot of short-sleeved tops or shirts? If so, when?
- 4 Do any members of your family wear a cap? If so, why? ...
- 5 Do you tend to prefer plain tops and shirts, or something with a pattern?
- 6 Do you ever wear waistcoats or V-neck jumpers?

# **B** Special occasions

For my brother's **stag party**, we all had to march round town wearing **kilts**<sup>1</sup>, with large **badges**<sup>2</sup> on our chests saying: *If lost, return to Scotland*.

At a recent **fancy-dress** party, my husband went as a woman cleaner wearing a **wig** and **apron**<sup>3</sup>, and carrying a **bucket**<sup>4</sup> of water and a **mop**<sup>5</sup>. He looked silly.

I like to **dress up** for weddings and wear something **elegant**. The only problem in Britain is the weather. You can be standing around in a **glamorous outfit**, **shivering** at the same time.

In my house, barbecues are very casual affairs: T-shirt, shorts and flip-flops<sup>6</sup>.

GLOSSARY			
stag party	(ALSO <b>stag night</b> ) a party for men only given for a man shortly before his wedding. A <b>hen party</b> is the same for women.	glamorous	looking more exciting or attractive than ordinary people a set of clothes that are worn together for a
fancy dress wig	special clothes you wear to a party where people dress up to look like a different person a covering made of real or false hair that you wear	shiver	particular occasion shake slightly, especially because you are cold or frightened
dress up	on your head put on more formal clothes, usually for a special	barbecue	(abbreviation <b>BBQ</b> ) an outdoor meal or party when food is cooked on a metal frame on an open fire
elegant	attractive and showing a good sense of style	casual affair	very relaxed and informal an event or situation

# Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the e to help you.

1	fancy dress	3	wig stag	5	glamorous elegant	 7	glamor <u>ou</u> s b <u>u</u> cket	*******
2	stag casual	4	shiver casual	6	affair apron	 8	b <u>u</u> cket dress <u>u</u> p	

# 5 What's the answer?

1	You might wear one if you haven't got any hair.	
2	You might wear one to do the cooking.	
3	You go to one of these pretending to be someone else.	
4	You might need this to wash the kitchen floor.	
5	People from Scotland sometimes wear these.	
6	You might do this if you are very cold.	
7	Men and women sometimes wear these on their feet on a beach.	
8	People may wear one of these to show they belong to an	
•	organization or support something.	
9	People often like to do this to look elegant for special occasions.	
10	You have these outdoors and cook food on an open fire.	
11	People like to look this to appear more attractive and exciting	
	than ordinary people.	
12	You might buy this to look elegant at a special occasion.	
A	BOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.	
1	Have you ever been to a stag or hen party? If so, what was it like?	
2	Have you been to any fancy-dress parties? If so, who did you prete	
3	Do you like dressing up? If so, what occasions do you dress up for?	
4	When you buy clothes, do you often buy complete outfits? If so, w	
5	Do you prefer to wear casual clothes most of the time? If so, what o	
6	Do you often go to barbecues? If so, are they fairly casual affairs, an	

TEST YOURSELF

6

3

1

# 30 At home A Furniture and household objects 1 socket 2 plug 3 stool 4 (door)mat 7 (dust)bin 8 smoke alarm 5 hoover / vacuum cleaner n 6 ironing board hoover/vacuum v 10 broom 9 radiator (part of a 11 chest of drawers 12 drawers central heating system) 13 doorbell 14 bunk beds 16 letter box 15 bookcase Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the 🗠 to help you. 1 vacuum plug 3 broom book 5 hoover broom 7 bookcase broom 2 plug dustbin \_\_\_\_\_ 4 drawer door \_\_\_\_\_ 6 bunk dustbin \_\_\_\_\_ 8 vacuum radiator \_\_\_\_\_ 2 Combine words in the box to form compounds for ten household objects. bunk cleaner book heating central door dust alarm ironing chest bell of drawers smoke board beds box bin letter case vacuum 3 Do you need one hand or two hands to use these objects? Could you use any without hands? doorbell broom doormat plug radiator dustbin hoover socket Complete the sentences. 1 Have you got a \_\_\_\_\_? I need to sweep the kitchen floor. 2 It's cold in here. The central heating is working, but one \_\_\_\_\_\_ isn't enough for a big room. 3 I haven't got any chairs in the kitchen, but you can sit on this 4 I can only use three-pin plugs in this \_\_\_\_\_. 5 Could you wipe your feet on the \_\_\_\_\_ when you come in? 6 Would you take that rubbish out and put it in the \_\_\_\_\_? 7 I need to buy a new chest of 8 Could you \_\_\_\_\_\_ the living room? There's some stuff on the carpet. 9 My sister and I slept in \_\_\_\_\_\_ beds when we were little. I always wanted the top one. 10 I had to fit a new letter because ours was too small. 5 ABOUT YOU Which of the items at the top of the page do you have in your home, and where are they? Write your answers, or tell another student. TEST YOURSELF

# **B** Household chores



- get hold of a plumber's number to fix the dripping' tap in the loo
- · get new blinds<sup>2</sup> for the spare bedroom
- · paint step3 in front of the porch4
- · get rough estimate for painting the outside of the house

6 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the e to help you.

- 1 estimate n estimate v
- 2 estimate blind
- 3 dozen rough 4 half spare
- 5 rough plumber

with water, pipes, radiators, etc.

future use: a spare room/tyre

a clear idea of the cost, size, etc.

of sth: *a rough estimate* (= an approximate idea) estimate v

the outer side or surface of sth

not used now but kept for possible

a toilet

SYN exterior

loo inf

spare

estimate

outside

6 plumber blinds

Replace the underlined words with words that have a similar meaning.

- 1 Could you get me six eggs?
- 2 Is anyone in the toilet?
- 3 Is the room at the end a free room?
- 4 I need to contact a builder.
- 5 Do you have the number of a person who can fix leaking pipes?
- 6 I need to get an idea of the cost?
- 7 The inside of the oven gets covered in fat and oil.

## 8 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I want to get \_\_\_\_\_\_ of some wood to make a small gate for the front garden.
- 2 The \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the house needs painting. We'll do it when the weather improves.
- 3 Be careful walking down the .....: they're a bit dangerous when it's been raining.
- 4 You always get some \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the wall around the cooker it's from all the fat.
- 5 We decided to build a \_\_\_\_\_\_ to give the front door more protection from the rain.
- 6 The tap in the sink keeps \_\_\_\_\_. I must ring the plumber.
- 7 Six won't be enough. Could you get me a \_\_\_\_\_ bottles of fizzy water?
- 8 We used to have curtains in the bedroom, but now we've got \_\_\_\_\_.

# 31 ) Sleep

# A Before, during and after sleep

BEFORE: You might be exhausted





3

after a busy day, perhaps feel sleepy, start yawning<sup>1</sup> and decide it's time for bed. You might wear pyjamas<sup>2</sup> or, if you're a woman, possibly a nightdress/nightie<sup>3</sup> (inf). When you get into bed, you might set the alarm<sup>4</sup>. Soon, if you're lucky, you will fall asleep.

DURING: When you're asleep, you have dreams and possibly **nightmares**. Some people **snore**. At this point they're **fast asleep**.

AFTER: 7.00am.The alarm goes off. It might wake you up, or you might be wide awake already. People without an alarm might oversleep, others might decide to have a lie-in.

# GLOSSARY

exhausted	very tired, either physically or mentally SYN worn out
sleepy	tired and ready to go to sleep
fall asleep	start sleeping SYN go to sleep/get to sleep; get back to sleep sleep again after you have woken up
nightmare	a bad or frightening dream
snore	breathe noisily while you are asleep
fast asleep	sleeping deeply SYN in a deep sleep OPP wide awake
go off	(of an alarm) ring or make a noise
oversleep	sleep longer than you should or want
have a lie-in	stay in bed later than usual

# SPOTLIGHT sleep

There are a number of words and phrases derived from *sleep*: A **heavy sleeper** sleeps well. A **light sleeper** wakes easily. A **sleeper** can also be a night train with beds for passengers. A **sleeping bag** is a large bag you sleep in when you are camping. A **sleeping pill/tablet** is a medicine you take to help you sleep.

Cover the glossary and spotlight. What words or phrases are being defined?

- 1 very tired, physically or mentally \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 clothes some women wear in bed
- 3 medicine to help you sleep
- 4 sleep longer than you want to
- 5 a bad dream 1
- stay in bed later than usual
  a night train with beds for passengers
  open your mouth wide because you are tired
  You sleep in this in a tent.

ABOUT YOU

10 breathe noisily while asleep

# 2 Replace the underlined word(s) with words or phrases that keep the same meaning.

I was <u>really tired</u>, so I went to bed quite early last night. I <u>got to sleep</u> without a problem and very soon I was <u>in a deep sleep</u>. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a <u>bad dream</u>, which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't <u>fall asleep again</u> until about half past four, so when the alarm <u>rang</u> just after seven, I didn't hear it and I <u>carried on sleeping</u>. When I finally woke up, I still felt a bit <u>tired</u>. 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_ 8

# 3 Complete the questions?

- 1 Are you a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ sleeper or a \_\_\_\_\_\_ sleeper?
- 2 Do you normally wear \_\_\_\_\_ in bed?
- 3 Do you normally set an \_\_\_\_\_ when you go to bed?
- 4 Do you usually feel \_\_\_\_\_\_ awake as soon as you wake up?
- 5 Do you often have a \_\_\_\_\_\_at the weekend?
- 6 Do other people ever tell you that you \_\_\_\_\_\_ when you're asleep?
- 7 Have you ever taken sleeping \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 Do you own or ever use a sleeping \_\_\_\_\_?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or talk to another student.


# 32 Personal finance

A	Spend	ling	and	saving	
---	-------	------	-----	--------	--

## Are you good at looking after your money? For example, do you:

- keep a clear record of outgoings, e.g. debit card payments, or do you find you are largely unaware of how much you are spending?
- keep your account in credit all the time, or are you sometimes overdrawn?
- pay your credit card bills promptly, or do you allow debts to mount up?
- check all the transactions in your bank statements, or do you just ignore them?
- think you're cautious with money, or do you waste large sums of money?

### GLOSSARY

GLOSSARY	
outgoings (pl)	the amount of money a person or business has to spend regularly, SYN <b>expenditure</b> OPP <b>income</b> the money you earn from work or savings
debit card	a plastic card used for taking money directly from your bank account
unaware (of sth)	not knowing or realizing that sth is happening OPP <b>aware</b> ; <b>awareness</b> n
be in credit	If you <b>are in credit</b> , there is money in your bank account. OPP <b>be overdrawn</b>
promptly	without delay prompt adj
debt	the amount of money you owe sb
mount up	increase gradually in size SYN <b>build up</b> , accumulate
transaction	a piece of business between people. In banking, you <b>put</b> money <b>into</b> an acount, or <b>take</b> it <b>out / withdraw</b> it.
bank statement	a printed record of activities in an account over a particular period
ignore	pay no attention to sth
cautious	careful about what you say or do, to avoid mistakes; not taking risks
sum (of sth)	an amount of money

		it de <u>b</u> it are overdr <u>aw</u> n		aware cautious
C	omplete the sentences.			
1	I'm completely of how oft them down. I have to go online to look at r I've made.	en I make ny bank	card pa	ayments because I never writ to see all the
2	I keep a reasonable of mo	ney in my bank acco	ount – enough	to keep it in
	And I like to pay all my bills	; that way I don't f	orget.	
3	I didn't keep a record of my	this month. Now	l'm	and I've got various
		ier account.		
Cc 1	Did you take some money out?	<b>rd.</b> ~ Yes, I	£100.	
Co 1 2	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account?	<b>rd.</b> ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm		
1	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account? Do you know what you spend?	<b>rd.</b> ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm ~ Yes, I keep a recc	ord of all my	
1 2 3 4	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account? Do you know what you spend? Do you always pay credit card bills?	rd. ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm ~ Yes, I keep a reco ~ Yes, otherwise d	ord of all my ebts can	
1	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account? Do you know what you spend? Do you always pay credit card bills? Is he careful with money?	rd. ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm ~ Yes, I keep a recc ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, he's very	ord of all my ebts can	
1 2 3 4 5 6	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account? Do you know what you spend? Do you always pay credit card bills? Is he careful with money? Does the company want the money now?	rd. ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm ~ Yes, I keep a reco ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, he's very ~ Yes, they have as	ord of all my ebts can	up. payment.
1 2 3 4	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account? Do you know what you spend? Do you always pay credit card bills? Is he careful with money? Does the company want the money now? She doesn't earn much, does she?	rd. ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm ~ Yes, I keep a reco ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, he's very ~ Yes, they have as ~ No, she's on quit	ord of all my ebts can ked for e a low	up. payment.
1 2 3 4 5 6	Did you take some money out? Is there money in your account? Do you know what you spend? Do you always pay credit card bills? Is he careful with money? Does the company want the money now?	rd. ~ Yes, I ~ No, I'm afraid I'm ~ Yes, I keep a reco ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, otherwise d ~ Yes, he's very ~ Yes, they have as ~ No, she's on quit	ord of all my ebts can ked for e a low	up. payment.



## **B** Looking after your money

## Creating a personal budget

Few people bother to **budget**, which is why so many are in debt. You must **calculate** the total income coming in each month, and the total going out, both regular outgoings and all other expenses. Then, **subtract** the expenses from the income. If there's a **surplus**, don't spend it: **pay off** any money you **owe** (in other words, your debts), and keep the rest for emergencies. If there is a **shortfall**, then you must take action. Consider where you can **economize** and **make cutbacks**. And don't expect anyone else to **subsidize** you and pay your debts.

budget	plan how much to spend and what to spend it on. A <b>budget</b> is the amount of money available to spend with a plan for spending i
calculate	use numbers to find a total number, amount or distance SYN work (sth) out; calculation
subtract sth (from sth)	take one number from another to calculate the difference SYN take sth away (from sth)
pay sth off	finish paying money that you owe for sth
owe	have to pay sb for sth that you have received or borrowed
economize	reduce the amount of money, time, goods, etc. that you use SYN make cutbacks
subsidize	give money to sb to help them pay for sth subsidy n
SPOTLIGHT	surplus, deficit, shortage, shortfall
money, the op opposite is a s	ore of something than is necessary. If it is posite is a <b>deficit</b> ; if it is food, petrol, etc, the <b>hortage</b> . the difference between what you have and

-	the pronunciat	tion of the und	erlined lett	ers the	same or	different?	Write S or D. U	lse the 🐵 to
1	subtract subsid	dize		4	cutback	calculate		
2	subsidize ecor			5		cutback		
3	deficit subsidy	-		6		onomize		
Ci	rcle the odd or	ne out, then wr	ite what the	other	two wor	ds have in	common.	
1	a) shortfall	b) surplus	c) defic					
2	a) shortage	b) calculation	c) shor	tfall				
3	a) economize	b) take away	c) subt	ract				
4	a) economize	b) make cutbac	cks c) subs	idize				
5	a) deficit	b) shortage	c) bude	get		-		
6	a) work out	b) calculate	c) pay	off				
C	omplete the te	xts.						
	e floods in the s		using severe	food (1)			throughou	t the country, an
th	is will leave many	farmers with a s	significant (2)			in	their income, and	d perhaps hopin
fo	r a government (	3)	to	help th	iem.			
	n not careful with					ided to kee	n a record of my	regular outgoin
At	first, it was diffic	ult to (4)	n onen buug	all	my exper	ses but In	anaged after a v	while. One mont
Ire	ealised I had a (5)	)	, ar	nd that I	would ha	ve to (6)	in angeo arter a i	
h	n ashamed to say prrowed money a	and ended up (9)	nt to universit	y i was :	lots	of money t	o different neon	le Eventually my
	nowed money a	and ended up (o)			1013	or money i	the three years of	ic. Eventourly m

# 33 Crime

## A Types of crime

Some of these crimes involve threatening people (= saying you will cause trouble for them, and possibly hurt them if they do not do what you want). Most of these crimes are also **deliberate** (= you intend to do them; SYN **intentional**), but not always.

### GLOSSARY

manslaughter arson	(slaughter pronounced like daughter) killing sb illegally but not deliberately deliberately setting fire to sth, especially	blackmail	demanding money from a person by threatening to tell sb else a secret about them <b>blackmail</b> v. The person is a <b>blackmailer</b> .
	a building. The person is an arsonist.	kidnapping	taking sb away illegally and keeping them
rape	forcing sb to have sex, especially using violence rape v. The person is a rapist.		prisoner, especially in order to get money kidnap v. The person is a kidnapper.
fraud	cheating sb in order to get money or goods illegally	shoplifting	stealing goods from a shop by leaving without paying for them. The person is a <b>shoplifter</b> .
bribery	giving money to sb to persuade them to help you, especially by doing sth dishonest <b>bribe</b> v	mugging	attacking sb, or threatening to attack sb in order to steal their money, especially in a public place <b>mug</b> v. The person is a <b>mugger</b> .

### Put the crimes in the three columns below.

involves violence       may involve violence       doesn't involve violence         Circle the crimes which usually involve money.       arson       fraud       mugging         manslaughter       bribery       blackmail       blackmail         shoplifting       rape       kidnapping         Write down the person who commits these crimes.       4       kidnapping/	shoplift arson	-	mugging kidnapping	manslaughter rape		ibery aud	
Circle the crimes which usually involve money.         arson       fraud       mugging         manslaughter       bribery       blackmail         shoplifting       rape       kidnapping         Write down the person who commits these crimes.       4       kidnapping/	nvolves v	iolence		may involve violen	ce	doesn'	t involve violence
Circle the crimes which usually involve money.         arson       fraud       mugging         manslaughter       bribery       blackmail         shoplifting       rape       kidnapping         Write down the person who commits these crimes.       4       kidnapping/							
Circle the crimes which usually involve money. arson fraud mugging manslaughter bribery blackmail shoplifting rape kidnapping Write down the person who commits these crimes. 1 shoplifting/4 kidnapping/ 2 blackmail/5 rape/ 3 arson/6 mugging/ Complete the sentences. 1 I wasoutside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone 2 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of 3 The boy wasoutside his home and held prisoner for weeks. 4 There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'. 5 He stopped the woman in the street,her with a knife, and took her 6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with 7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.							
arson       fraud       mugging         manslaughter       bribery       blackmail         shoplifting       rape       kidnapping         Write down the person who commits these crimes.       4       kidnapping/		*****					
manslaughter       bribery       blackmail         shoplifting       rape       kidnapping         Write down the person who commits these crimes.       4       kidnapping/	Circle the	crimes w	which usua	ally involve money	1.		
shoplifting       rape       kidnapping         Write down the person who commits these crimes.       1         1       shoplifting/	arson		fraud	mugging			
Write down the person who commits these crimes.         1 shoplifting/         2 blackmail/         3 arson/         6 mugging/         6 mugging/         1 l was	manslaugh	ter	bribery	blackmail			
Write down the person who commits these crimes.         1 shoplifting/       4 kidnapping/         2 blackmail/       5 rape/         3 arson/       6 mugging/         3 arson/       6 mugging/         6 mugging/       7         7 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of       9         9 The boy was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone       9         9 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of       1         1 I was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone       1         2 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of       1         3 The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.       1         4 There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'.       1         5 He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her       1         6 The man accused of	hoplifting		rape	kidnapping			
<ul> <li>shoplifting/</li></ul>				Contraction in the			
<ul> <li>2 blackmail/</li></ul>					imes.		10.32
<ul> <li>3 arson/6 mugging/</li> <li>Complete the sentences.</li> <li>1 I was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone</li> <li>2 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of</li> <li>3 The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.</li> <li>4 There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'.</li> <li>5 He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>		-			4		
<ul> <li>Complete the sentences.</li> <li>1 I was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone</li> <li>2 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of</li> <li>3 The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.</li> <li>4 There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'.</li> <li>5 He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>					5		
<ul> <li>I was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone</li> <li>He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of</li> <li>The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.</li> <li>There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'.</li> <li>He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>	arson/		******		6	muggi	ng/
<ul> <li>1 I was outside my office by a man with a knife who demanded mone</li> <li>2 He wasn't guilty of murder, but was found guilty of</li> <li>3 The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.</li> <li>4 There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'.</li> <li>5 He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>	Complete	the sent	ences.				
<ul> <li>3 The boy was outside his home and held prisoner for weeks.</li> <li>4 There is often a notice in stores saying that ' will be prosecuted'.</li> <li>5 He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>				de my office by a ma	n with a k	nife who	o demanded money from
<ul> <li>4 There is often a notice in stores saying that 'will be prosecuted'.</li> <li>5 He stopped the woman in the street,her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>6 The man accused ofthe girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 Hethe policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>	He was	n't guilty d	of murder, l	out was found guilty	of		
<ul> <li>5 He stopped the woman in the street, her with a knife, and took her</li> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>	The bo	y was		outside his home	and held	prisoner	for weeks.
<ul> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>							
<ul> <li>6 The man accused of the girl insists that she agreed to have sex with</li> <li>7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.</li> </ul>	5 He stop	ped the v	woman in t	he street,	her	with a l	knife, and took her money.
7 He the policeman with both money and expensive holidays.	5 The ma	in accused	d of	the girl ins	ists that s	he agree	ed to have sex with him.
9 She him by threatening to tell the police about the money he stole.						about th	ne money he stole.
IO He went to prison for credit card							

## **B** Causes of crime

### What do you think?

- Some people think that it is the people closest to us when we are growing up who have the greatest responsibility for shaping our moral standards.
- Crime rates tend to be higher in slum areas, and for children from these areas, crime can become an attraction because it offers a way of becoming richer. They join gangs and drift into crime.
- Another cause is the abuse of alcohol and drugs which can force people into crime.
- Some argue it is personal weakness or parental neglect, made worse by a lack of discipline at home or in school, that leads people into crime.
- Some believe that if penalties for offenders were harsher, crime would go down.

#### GLOSSARY moral concerned with principles of right and wrong behaviour morals n pl slum an area of a city that is very poor and where the houses are in bad condition attraction a feature or quality that makes sth seem interesting and enjoyable a group of young people who often cause trouble gang drift into sth start doing sth without a particular plan or purpose abuse the use of sth in a way that is wrong or harmful: suffer abuse abuse v connected with parents parental neglect the fact of not giving enough care or attention to sb/sth neglect v discipline the practice of training people to obey rules and punishing them if they do not a punishment for breaking a law, a rule or a contract penalty offender a person who commits a crime harsh severe, strict or cruel

### 5 Circle the words which have a negative meaning.

		-	-	
slum	attraction	gang	abuse	discipline
neglect	penalty	parental	moral	harsh

### 6 Replace the underlined words with a single word that keeps the same meaning. It's basically a very poor area of the city with houses in bad condition. 2 The parents have not given enough care and attention to these children. 3 Some of the children need better training to obey rules. 4 There's a very unpleasant group of youths waiting at the end of the street. 5 The children have suffered from wrong and harmful treatment. 6 Many people who commit crimes go on to commit further crimes. 7 It's all about knowing the difference between right and wrong. 8 If you see no future for yourself, crime is an exciting idea with possibilities of money. Complete the sentences on the right. Keep the same meaning as the sentences on the left. It's the responsibility of the parents. lt's a They have abused the children. The children have The teenagers lack 3 The teenagers do what they like. 4 The issue is all about right and wrong. It's a \_\_\_\_\_. We need 5 The law is too soft.

- 6 I committed crimes with no real plan or purpose. I just .....
- 7 There hasn't been enough care and attention.
- 8 Young people like money.

For young people, money is a big \_\_\_\_\_.

There has been a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.

### 8 ABOUT YOU Look at the opinions about the causes of crime at the top of page. Do you agree? What about crimes committed by people who <u>aren't</u> poor?



Everyday life 75

# 34 Urban living

## A The inner city

... the inner city streets became very narrow, so I parked the car and went the rest of the way on foot. I soon regretted that decision. The pavements were filthy with litter, and there was a gang of youths hanging around on one of the street corners. I started to feel concerned for my safety, so I turned into a long passage at the back of a factory. It was covered in graffiti, and two homeless young men were sleeping on the cold damp ground. It was a depressing place altogether.

GLOSSARY	
inner	close to the centre of a place. The <b>inner city</b> is often associated with social and economic problems.
regret	(with an <i>-ing</i> form or noun) feel sorry that you did sth or that you did not do sth <b>regret</b> n
filthy	very dirty
litter	the paper that people don't want and leave on the ground
youth	a young man, usually one you do not have a good opinion of
hang around/ about inf	stay in or around a place not doing very much
concerned (about/for sth)	worried concern n, v
passage	a long narrow area with walls on either side that connects one room or place with another
graffiti pl	pictures or writing on a wall in a public place
homeless	having no home
damp	a little wet
depressing	making you feel very sad and without enthusiasm <b>depressed</b> very sad and without enthusiasm

### Circle the words which usually suggest a negative idea.

			-	
regret	filthy	litter	abandon	damp
homeless	hang around	graffiti	depressing	concerned

### 2 Complete the definitions with a single word.

- filthy = very
   the inner city = \_\_\_\_\_ parts of a city close to the centre
- 3 regret = feel \_\_\_\_\_ you did or did not do something.
- 4 litter = paper left on the \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 damp = a little
- 6 concerned =
- 7 depressing = making you feel
- 8 graffiti = \_\_\_\_\_ on a wall in a public place

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- You sometimes see quite a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_ people in big cities; it's very sad.
   We walked along a narrow \_\_\_\_\_\_ from the park to the road.
- 3 There was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the family when the children didn't arrive.
- 4 It's not a nice area: you get a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ hanging around.
- 5 Two workmen were cleaning the \_\_\_\_\_\_ off the side of a bridge.
- 6 The street was filthy, and it was pouring with rain. It was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 You often see teenagers \_\_\_\_\_\_ around in the centre of town with nothing to do.
- 8 It started to rain so I \_\_\_\_\_ not taking an umbrella.

### ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Do you often see these things in your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

litter on the ground

- filthy pavements gangs of youths
- graffitti homeless people sleeping in the street

## **B** In the suburbs



I live in a block of flats that is surrounded by trees, which is rather nice. On the whole, it's considered a desirable district because it's a nice quiet suburb, near local shops and good schools, but also handy for town. The main drawback is that, although there is a pub nearby, it's not a particularly lively area - there's not much going on in the evenings, so you have to go into town for a decent nightlife. The other thing is that as time goes on, the area is getting more built-up, and that's a shame.

### SPOTLIGHT go on

- This phrasal verb has several meanings:
- 1 be going on be happening or taking place (as in the text)
- 2 (of time) pass SYN go by: As time went on/by, things improved.
- 3 (of a situation) continue: It could go on like this for a long time.

surround	be or go all around sth: <b>be surrounded</b> <b>by sth</b> ; <b>surrounding</b> adj	drawback	sth that is not good or causes problems SYN <b>disadvantage</b>
on the whole	generally, but not true in every case SYN <b>in general</b> , generally	nearby adv, adj	not far away in distance: We went to a <b>nearby</b> restaurant. (NOT We went to a <del>near</del> restaurant.)
desirable	wanted, often by many people	lively	full of interest, with things to do
district	an area of a town or country that has particular features	decent	of a high enough standard: They have <b>decen</b> t food there.
suburb	an area where a lot of people live, outside the centre of a town	built-up shame	(of an area of land) with a lot of buildings a fact or situation that makes you feel
handy (for sth) inf	located near to things you need SYN <b>convenient (for sth)</b>	Sildine	disappointed SYN pity: That's a shame/pity. What a shame/pity.

### 5 Do the words and phrases in italics have the same meaning? Write S or D.

	1	In general / On the whole it's a nice place.	********	5	A handy / lively area.	
	2	They live nearby / next door.	********	6	What's going on / happening here?	
	3	It's convenient / decent.		7	The school is very handy / built-up.	
	4	What a pity / shame.		8	It's quite a poor suburb / district.	
6	C	omplete the sentences with a word or p	hrase.			

- 1 There used to be lots of open spaces, but now it's a really \_\_\_\_\_\_ area.
- 2 I live in a pleasant \_\_\_\_\_\_, about two kilometres from the centre.
- 3 Unfortunately, the whole area is \_\_\_\_\_\_ by factories, which is a big \_\_\_\_\_ 4 It's very \_\_\_\_\_\_ because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work. The
- area is also nice, with a park, children's playground and open spaces. 5 It's close to the centre and quite a poor \_\_\_\_\_\_. There are good shops \_\_\_\_\_\_. but in the evening it can be dangerous. The council say the area will improve, but I expect it to \_\_\_\_\_\_ like this for ages.

- 6 For young people it's not that \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the evenings, which is a \_\_\_\_\_\_. However, it does have a few \_\_\_\_\_\_ restaurants, which is good.
- 7 There are one or two drawbacks, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ it's a nice place to be.
- 8 For many families, the most \_\_\_\_\_\_ aspect of the area is that it has good schools.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is the area where you live built-up, or is there a feeling of space?
- 2 What is your home surrounded by?
- What shops do you have nearby?... 3
- Is your home handy for most things?
- What are the drawbacks?
- As time goes on, do you think the area will improve or get worse? Why?



## **Rural life** 35

## A Living in the country

I live on the outskirts of a village. There's a shallow stream that runs along the bottom of my garden, and beyond that, a lovely meadow. So, it's a very quiet spot. Of course, not everything is perfect. Public transport in the country is very infrequent, and in the winter you can occasionally feel a bit isolated. Nevertheless, I wouldn't swap rural life for life in a town or city.

### GLOSSARY

outskirts	the part of a town furthest from the centre: on the outskirts of a town/city/village
shallow	not having much distance between the top and the bottom OPP <b>deep</b>
stream	a very small river
beyond	on or to the further side of sth
meadow	a field covered in grass, often used for hay
spot	a particular area or place: a quiet spot
infrequent	not happening often OPP frequent; frequency n
occasionally	sometimes but not often
isolated	without much contact with other people isolation n
nevertheless	despite sth you have just mentioned
swap	exchange one thing for another
rural	connected with the country and country life

### Correct the spelling mistakes.

- 1 medow
- 2 freqwent .....
- 3 outskirt .....
- shalow 4
- 5 ocassionally .....
  - nevertheles .....

.....

- 7 swop
- 8 streem

### 2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- I wouldn't <u>exchange</u> my old cottage for a modern house.
- 2 There's a very small river running through the village.
- 3 The bottom of the garden is a very quiet area.
- 4 We feel we lack contact with other people.
- 5 We do get snow in winter but it's not often.
- 6 I walked through a lovely field covered in grass.
- 7 On the further side of the river there is a church.
- 8 We go there sometimes but not often.
- 9 It's very quiet in the evenings. Despite that, I still like it.
- 10 I used to live on the edge of the village.

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- You can walk across if you take your shoes off the stream is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 There isn't much contact with the neighbours, so they do suffer from \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Rain isn't \_\_\_\_\_ in the east of the country. The climate is surprisingly dry.
- 4 There isn't much to do in the evening in a village. , I still love it.
- 5 A feeling of peace and calm is one of the joys of \_\_\_\_\_\_ life.
- 6 My cousin lives on the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the town, quite close to the countryside.
- 7 What about the \_\_\_\_\_ of the bus service? How often do buses run?
- Just \_\_\_\_\_\_ the post office, you can see the bridge on your right. 8
- We walked across the meadow and found a quiet for our picnic.
- here, so don't let the children go in. 10 The river is very

## **B** Farming

Martin Dobbs runs a mixed animal and arable farm. He keeps a herd of 75 dairy cows, which supplies milk and cream to local suppliers in the area, but that is in combination with a range of crops, including both cereals and fruit.



Although farming is becoming an increasingly difficult way to earn a living, Martin has never considered doing anything other than working in agriculture, which both his father and grandfather did before him. His son and one full-time labourer help him. When he dies, he will pass on the farm to his son.

### SPOTLIGHT mixed

Mixed can refer to:

- 1 different types of thing: mixed farming (as above)
- 2 good and bad qualities: I have mixed feelings about the farm.
- 3 consisting of different kinds of people: People of mixed race.

### 4 Combine words in the box to form six phrases.

arable	cereal	mixed	physical	earn	herd
labour	crop	a living	feelings	of cows	farm

### Complete the sentences on the right. Keep the same meaning.

1	W	le	are	an	ara	ble	farm.
		<b>~</b>			aru		i ai i i i i

2

## We mostly \_\_\_\_\_.

	and and another rolling	
We	have over 100 cc	WS.

- 3 We grow cereals and keep animals.
- We grow cereals and vegetables. 4
- 5 We only have milking cows.
- How does he earn a living? 6
- My son will get the farm after I die. 7
- We grow many types of grass for food. We grow various 8

We are an	*
We are a	
What	?
l will	
We grow various	

We have a

We are a \_\_\_\_\_.

### 6 Complete the questions.

- 1 Do most farms in the area grow a \_\_\_\_\_ of cereals and fruit/vegetables?
- 2 Do they now rely \_\_\_\_\_ on machines to do the work?
- 3 What kinds of animals do farmers ?
- What kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ do farmers grow? 4
- Do many people \_\_\_\_\_\_ a living from farming? 5
- Is it common for farmers to \_\_\_\_\_\_ on a farm to their children?"
- Is there a shortage of \_\_\_\_\_, or is it easy to employ farm \_\_\_\_\_? 7
- Do people have \_\_\_\_\_\_ feelings about machines replacing human labour? 8

### ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



GLOSSARY a

GLOSSANT	and the second
arable keep	connected with growing crops own and care for animals: <i>keep cows, sheep</i> , etc.
herd	a group of cows, elephants and deer
dairy	(of a cow) that is kept for the production of milk
combination	the act of joining or mixing together two or more things; two or more things joined/mixed to form a single unit
crop	a plant that is grown in large quantities, especially as food: <i>cereal crop</i>
cereal	one of various types of grass that are produced for food, e.g. wheat
increasingly	more and more
living	money to buy the things you need in life: <i>earn/make a living</i> <i>What do you do for a living</i> ?
labourer	a person whose job involves hard physical work <b>labour</b> n
pass sth on (to sb)	give sth to sb else, especially after using it yourself

# 36 Holidays



## CITY BREAKS IN PRAGUE

Prague is a **stunning** city, and this **thriving** capital of the Czech Republic makes a romantic and **vibrant** citybreak destination. A stroll through Prague's streets is a **delight**: its architecture is **remarkably diverse**. Charles Bridge and the Astronomical Clock have both **undergone restoration**, but the city was amazingly untouched by the Second World War.

# **UNWIND** ON THE ALGARVE

The **resorts** on the Algarve, with their golden sandy beaches, are a great place to relax. **Laze around** on the golden sandy beaches, enjoy the atmosphere of traditional fishing villages like Alvor, or just **wander round** Albufeira's old town, which still **retains** its wonderful **charm**.



## OFF THE BEATEN TRACK ON THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA



Our China **trek** offers a **unique** experience for the **adventurous** traveller who wants to **get away from it all**. Apart from the spectacular scenery, you will have the rare opportunity to camp in a **remote** part of rural China and experience local life in its most **unspoilt** state.

### GLOSSARY

stunning thriving	extremely attractive or impressive growing and developing, and very successful SYN <b>flourishing</b>	laze around/a wander around round
vibrant	full of life and energy; exciting	retain formal
delight	sth that gives sb great pleasure delightful adj	charm
remarkably diverse	in an unusual or surprising way <b>remarkable</b> adj very different from each other, and of various kinds	off the beater
undergo	experience a process of change	trek
restoration	the work of repairing old buildings, paintings, etc. <b>restore</b> v	unique adventurous
unwind inf	relax, especially after working hard SYN <b>take it easy</b>	get away from
resort	a place which is known as a holiday destination: a beach/ski resort	unspoiled (ALSO unsp

nd/about	relax and do very little
round/	walk slowly without a real purpose or direction
mal	keep sth
	a pleasant or attractive quality or feature charming adj
aten track	far away from other people and houses SYN <b>remote</b>
	a long hard walk, often in the mountains
	being the only one of its kind
ous	liking to try new things adventure n
from it all	go somewhere different to have a rest or holiday
i nspoilt)	(of a place) beautiful because it has not been changed or built on

### Complete the dialogues.

- 1 Is the town centre quite different now?
- 2 Is it still a thriving place?
- 3 Is the restaurant quite cheap?
- 4 There's nowhere like Cuenca.
- 5 The village hasn't changed at all.
- 6 I've heard the villa is miles from anywhere.

~ Yes, it's

- 7 Have you been there before?
- 8 Is it a really enjoyable place?
- ~ Yes, it's a very popular beach .......

~ That's true. It's

~ Yes, an absolute \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, it has \_\_\_\_\_ major changes.

~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ good value.

### 2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- He's running a <u>flourishing</u> clothes business.
- Just look at that <u>beautiful</u> view of the mountains.
- 3 My son's interests are very <u>varied</u>.
- 4 That particular building is <u>the only one in existence</u>.
- 5 The villa was really off the beaten track.
- 6 The old town is a surprising and unusual place.
- 7 We just want to relax and do very little.
- 8 The old buildings in the centre need to be <u>repaired</u>.

### Complete the text.

3

### Great Expectations ...

After a hard time at work, I was looking forward to ta	king it (1) for a couple of
weeks on a Greek island. The villa was by the sea and	off the (2)
what I had understood from the holiday brochure, but	the reality was somewhat different. The villa was
undergoing (3) , so I had to a	
where most people were trying to do the same as me:	(5) around on the
beach during the day, and then (6)	round the streets in the evening. Sadly,
the place turned out to be (7)	
(8) all just didn't happen.	

### 4 Replace words in the text with words from the box so that the meaning stays the same.

unwind thriving diverse vibrant stunning restore remarkable wander retain

Lisbon is surrounded by seven hills, and from most of them you have beautiful views of this unusual and surprising city, which has managed to keep so much of its varied architecture and cultural heritage. But it is also a modern, flourishing European capital, and in recent years the city has managed to repair many of the old buildings. For tourists, one of the most popular parts is the *Alfama* where you can casually walk around and enjoy the charms of the old town. The *Chiado* district is famous for shops and restaurants, but for really exciting nightlife, head for the *Bairro Alto*. Then, after all that, you can relax on the nearby beaches of *Cascais* and *Estorii*: wonderful places to visit.

### ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

What do you want from a holiday?

Do you want to go somewhere vibrant and exciting?

- Do you want to laze around on a beach and unwind?.....
- Do you want to go somewhere off the beaten track and get away from it all?
- Do you want a holiday with adventure? ...

Do you like to wander around interesting towns and villages?



# 37 Holiday accommodation

## A Luxury accommodation

82

When we go away, the last thing we want is to find that everywhere is **fully-booked**, no **vacancies** anywhere, ending up in a **miserable B and B** (or **Airbnb**), possibly **in the middle of nowhere**. Therefore, we always **book well in advance** and go for something fairly **exclusive**, **preferably** in a town. It doesn't have to be a **grand** or **impressive** building, but we do expect **luxury** and first-class service in order to **justify** the high prices these places charge. **Having said that**, high prices are no **guarantee** of high quality.



### SPOTLIGHT accommodation

A **B** and **B** (ALSO **B** & **B** – abbreviations of **bed** and **breakfast**; ALSO **guest house**) is like a fairly cheap hotel but it does not serve evening meals.

**Airbnb** is a private company in which members offer accommodation in a room, flat or house they own. This is all arranged online.

illy-booked acancy iiserable the middle of nowhere advance xclusive	(of a hotel, restaurant, theatr no places available a room in a hotel that is avail <b>no vacancies</b> unpleasant, making you feel far away from other people a before a particular time or ev <b>advance</b> (= book a long time expensive and reserved for s	able: unhappy and houses vent: <b>book well in</b> e before you go)	preferably luxury impressiv justify having sa that guarantee	better o beautifu e causing quality, give or l id used to you hav e a promi	show which perso r preferred al and expensive to a feeling of admir importance, etc. s be a good reason to introduce an opin e just said seem le se that sth will be guarantee v	hings <b>lux</b> ation bed YN <b>grand</b> for sth ion that r ess strong	urious <i>adj</i> ause of its size, ; <b>impress</b> v nakes what
justify	ne the main stress on the vacancy luxury in advance	ce miserable	guarantee		exclusive pre	eferably	fully-booked
1 The 2 The 3 They	ews, bad news, or could meal was impressive. notel was fully booked. gave us a guarantee a taxi w e were still vacancies at the	vould be there.	5 6 7 8	The B&B w The weath This area is	as in the middl er was miserab rather exclusiv wasn't luxuriou	le. e.	vhere
1 Was 2 Whic 3 Have 4 Will t	the breakfast good? the breakfast good? th floor do you want? you reserved a room? they refund your money? ery expensive.	~ Yes, very go ~ I don't mino ~ Yes, we boo ~ Yes, they	bod. d, but bked well they		, there w overloo that when I ran that by	oking the	e garden. ancelled.
<ul><li>6 Are t</li><li>7 Was</li><li>8 It's a</li></ul>	here still rooms available? the building very grand? very expensive place, isn't it	~ No, we got ~ Yes, we we ? ~ Yes, but I lik	the last re se a bit of	now.	, so t 	hey're my holio	days.
ABOUT 1 Doy 2 Doy 3 Doy 4 Doy 5 Doy	YOU Write your answer ou book your holidays well ou often stay in fairly luxurid ou ever stay in a B&B or use ou like being in the middle ou think high prices usually t do you look for most in ho	rs, or talk to an in advance? ous hotels? Airbnb? of nowhere for guarantee high	your holiday	dent. /? our country	?		

## **B** Budget accommodation

We're not mean, but we've generally opted for holidays which only require a fairly limited budget: occasionally in a caravan<sup>1</sup>, but more often we go camping or stay in a youth hostel. The thing that appeals to me about camping is not just expense - it's cheap - but it also enables us to move around more freely, and we like that flexibility. And given that we generally live in comfort, I think it's good for the children to experience a type of holiday which is a bit different. When we go away we are quite strict about them not using their phones.



GLOSSARY		and the second second	
mean	wanting to keep money and not spend it on others OPP <b>generous</b>	enable sb/sth to do sth	make it possible for sb/sth to do sth
opt for sth	choose sth	flexibility	the ability to be changed easily flexible adj
budget	an amount of money you are able to spend		OPP inflexible
	on sth	given (that)	when you consider sth
youth hostel	a cheap and simple place to stay, especially for young people	comfort	the state of having a life with everything you need, or being physically relaxed: <i>live in comfort</i>
appeal (to sb)	be attractive or interesting to sb appealing adj	go away	leave home for a period of time, especially for
expense	the money that you spend on sth:		a holiday
	an extra expense	strict	not allowing people to break rules or behave badly

### 5 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.

- 1 Can you choose when you travel? ~ Yes, there's lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_ with dates and times.
- 2 It's a very expensive holiday. ~ Yes, especially \_\_\_\_\_\_ that he doesn't earn much.
- 3 My uncle is paying for my holiday. ~ Wow, that's very \_\_\_\_\_\_ of him.
  4 Are you here this weekend? ~ No, we're \_\_\_\_\_\_ for a few days.
- 5 Are you hiring a car as well? ~ No, that's an extra \_\_\_\_\_. We'll take buses.
- We need to stay somewhere really cheap. ~ OK, how about a \_\_\_\_\_ or a 6
- 7 Some people love camping but it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ to me personally.
- 8 Do you always eat together, even on holiday? ~ Yes, my parents are very \_\_\_\_\_\_ about that.

### 6 Rewrite the sentences using words from the box. Keep the meaning the same.

	flexible	budget	opt for	mean	enable	appealing	expense	comfort
1	He never	wants to sp	bend mone	y.				
2	If it's a ch	eap place, v	we can stay	a bit long	er.			
3	We have	a limited an	nount of m	oney to sp	bend.			
4	The date	can be cha	nged easily					
5	We chose	something	quite sim	ole.				
6		have a plea			ng I need.			
7	A room v	with a balco	ny costs mo	ore money	1.			
8	A caravar	doesn't int	terest me.					

### 2 Do budget holidays appeal to you, or do you prefer to stay somewhere in comfort? 3 Do you have a limited budget when you go on holiday?

Do you restrict using your phone (for work) when you're on holiday? 4

Do you like staying in one place or the flexibility of being able to move around? 5

Do you remember your parents being strict with you about anything on holiday? 6

### **Buying and renting** 38 /

## A Buying



### Hi Matt

Just wanted to let you know we've sold our terraced' house, and moved in to a larger semi-detached<sup>2</sup> property further out of town. It doesn't look that big from the outside, but the interior is really spacious: large entrance hall, with a wide staircase, and open-plan kitchen, dining room and living room. The bedrooms are also a good size, which is great. We need to do some decorating and probably put in a new kitchen, but basically the overall condition is guite good. The other bonus is that it was actually cheaper than our other house, largely because of the location, so we don't need such a big mortgage. ...

LOSSARY	
iterior	the inside part of sth OPP exterior
pacious	having a lot of space; large in size
ntrance hall	the area directly inside the front door of a building
aircase	a set of stairs
pen-plan	(of the inside of a building) not divided into separate rooms
ecorating	the act of putting paint, etc. on a wall or ceiling of a room or house: <b>do (some /</b> <b>a bit of) decorating</b>
ut sth in	fix equipment or furniture into position so it can be used SYN <b>install</b>
asically	used to say what the most important or most basic aspect of sth is SYN essentially
verall	generally; when you consider most things
onus	sth good that you get in addition to what you expect
rgely	mostly
ortgage	money you borrow in order to buy a house or flat: <b>take out a mortgage</b> (= organize a mortgage)

Find an underlined letter in the right-hand box with the same pronunciation as the underlined letter(s) in the left-hand box. Use the 🔤 to help you.

Send

G in sp er

st

0

de

p

bi

01

b

la

m

sp <u>a</u> cious	st <u>air</u> case	mort <u>ga</u> ge	camer <u>a</u>	l <u>a</u> te	s <u>a</u> w	
det <u>a</u> ched	entr <u>a</u> nce	over <u>a</u> ll	fl <u>a</u> t	c <u>a</u> re	dam <u>a</u> ge	

### Complete the sentences.

There are one or two small differences, but the flats are the same.

- 2 We've got a narrow \_\_\_\_\_ up to the second floor.
- 3 The \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the house needs money spent on it, but the \_\_\_\_\_\_ is fine.
- 4 The price is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to do with location.
- 5 We didn't need a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 There's also a garage at the back. That's a
- 7 There are a few things wrong with it, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ it's fine.
- 8 We are going to do some \_\_\_\_\_ in the bedrooms.
- 9 The living room is really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 We plan to \_\_\_\_\_\_ a new shower.

### 3 Complete the questions.

- 1 Are \_\_\_\_\_ and semi-\_\_\_\_\_ houses common?
- 2 Is it common in flats to have a large entrance ?
- 3 Do people often prefer an open-\_\_\_\_\_ design?
- 4 Do most people \_\_\_\_\_\_ a mortgage to buy a flat or house?
  5 Do people usually do the \_\_\_\_\_\_ themselves, or employ someone to do it for them?
- 6 When people buy a new home, do they often \_\_\_\_\_\_ new bathrooms or kitchens?

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.

## **B** Renting



I've finally found somewhere to rent. It's been difficult as there aren't many rental properties on the market at the moment. It's on the top floor of a three-storey house – I guess it was originally the attic – and I've taken out a one-year lease, but the landlord is happy for me to extend that if I want to. It's unfurnished, so I will have to buy a lot of new stuff, but it has recently been redecorated, and there's quite a lot of storage space. It's a two-bedroom flat, and I've already got a flatmate to share the rent with me, so it's not too expensive. I've just got to sign the contract now and pay the deposit along with one month's rent. I move in next week.

#### GLOSSARY rental A rental property is a property that you rent extend make sth longer or larger, in space or time: extend a building; extend a lease; extension n rather than buy. on the market available for sb to buy or rent unfurnished without furniture OPP furnished storey one floor or level of a building: a multi-storey the process of keeping sth in a particular storage place until it is needed; space where things car park can be kept the space or room under the roof of a house attic ALSO loft flatmate a person who shares a flat with one or more people lease a legal agreement that lets you use a building a written legal agreement: sign a contract for a fixed period of time in return for rent contract landlord a person who rents out a house/flat or room to money that you pay when you rent sth deposit and that you get back when you return it people for money. A landlord can be a man or a woman; a landlady is a woman only. without damage

re	ntal a	ittic	landlord	extend	unfurnished	f	flatmate	contra	act	deposi	t
U	nderline	the co	orrect answ	er. Both ans	wers may be p	os	sible.				
1	Is the fla	t a ren	t/rental pro	perty?	5	٦	There's lots	of store	y/ste	orage spa	ce.
2	Who is t	he lan	dlord / landl	ady?	6	h	t's a six-mo	onth rent	/lea	se.	
3	I'm stori	ng stu	ff in the attic	/loft.	7	ľ	'll move in	after I w	rite /	sign the c	ontract.
4	I need to	o find a	a flatguy / fla	tmate.	8	۱	hope I car	intend	/exte	end the lea	ase.
C	omplete	the di	alogues in	a suitable w	ay.						
1	Are you	movin	g in soon?		~ Yes, I just ha	ave	e to sign th	e			tomorrov
2	Are you	living	there on you	r own?	~ No, I've got	a	couple of				
3	Is there	plenty	of space to p	out things?		~ Yes, there's loads of					
4	Do you move in		o pay anythir	ng before	~ Yeah. You p	~ Yeah. You pay a a month's rent.					
5	What if	you wa	ant to stay m	ore than a yea	n? ~ I've already lease.	as	ked about	an			to the
6	Do you	need t	o buy much	furniture?	~ No, the flat	is f	fully		********	•	
7	Have yo	u boug	ght the flat?		~ No, it's a						
8	You're o	n the f	irst floor?		~ Yes, that's ri building.						
A	BOUTY	DURCO	DUNTRY W	rite your ans	swers, or talk to	oa	nother st	udent.			
1											
2					J?						
					a contract?						

4 Are landlords/landladies usually happy to extend a rental contract?



## Gardens and gardening 39

## A A natural garden

I've always wanted a garden that copies the best of nature. So, having acquired a country cottage with land around it, I'm now creating my own wildlife garden. I will need to remove a few old tree roots1 that make planting difficult, but generally the project is going well. A gentle slope drops down from the cottage to a pond<sup>2</sup>, where I've discovered quite a rare species of frog3, which I obviously want to protect.

Near the pond is a greenhouse<sup>4</sup>. I will grow tomatoes, but it's largely intended for more tropical fruits that you can't normally grow in England, such as melon and guava. There's already a variety of mature plants in the garden, and a shed where I can keep all my tools. Finally, I'm hoping to attract birds to build their nests in an old hollow tree in the small wood I have along one side of the garden.



SPOTLIGHT nature

### GLOSSARY

acquire formal wildlife slope species intended (for sth) tropical mature shed nest	get sth by buying it or being given it animals, birds, and insects that live in a natural state a piece of land that is higher at one end than the other <b>slope</b> v a group of plants or animals that are all similar and can breed together planned or designed for sth coming from or found in very hot parts of the world fully grown or fully developed a small simple building, usually built of wood, and often found in gardens a place where birds lay their eggs and live with their young <b>nest</b> v
	a place where birds lay their eggs and live with their young <b>nest</b> v
hollow	with a hole or empty space inside
wood (ALSO woods)	an area of trees, smaller than a forest

#### in it). We don't talk about being in the nature. We can say:

Ilike being in the countryside OR looking at beautiful scenery.

We can say someone is interested in nature ([U] = the physical world and everything that lives

### Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- 1 The *lake / pond* is about 30 cm deep.
- 2 The trees are fully grown / mature.
- a There's a great view of the scenery / nature.
  b We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
  c We have a lot of tropic / tropic / tropical fruit.
- 4 We have a lot of tropic / tropical fruit.
- 5 How did you get / acquire the land?
- 6 I'm very interested in nature / the nature.
- 8 I like being in the scenery / countryside.

### 2 Find five pairs of words in the box. Write a sentence to explain the connection each pair has.

	frog	tools	birds	wildlife	trees	nature	nest	pond	shed	roots
--	------	-------	-------	----------	-------	--------	------	------	------	-------

### Complete the sentences.

- The \_\_\_\_\_\_ is spectacular: beautiful lakes surrounded by mountains.
- 2 For the plants to grow, water has to get down to the
- 4 The garden isn't big, but there may be a chance to \_\_\_\_\_\_ more land next to it.
- The lights are \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the garden when we sit out on warm summer evenings. 5
- 6 I read that there are 369,000 of flowering plants in the world.
- 7 From one end of the garden, there is a gentle \_\_\_\_\_\_ which goes down to the river.
- 8 I love pineapple, but growing fruit in this country is not easy.
- 9 It gets very hot in the \_\_\_\_\_, so it's great for growing tomatoes and cucumber.
- 10 The tree was \_\_\_\_\_, so birds could go in and out very easily.

TEST YOURSELF

Leisure and lifestyle 86

## **B** Gardening through the seasons



Leisure and lifestyle 87

### Personal technology 40

## A Downloading an app on your phone

- Launch the chosen app store on your device.
- Scroll down to browse the available apps.
- Tap the app you want.
- Tap 'get' if it is free, or the price if it is to be paid.
- Select install if it is free, or 'buy' when the icon switches.
- Key in your password or use touch ID when prompted.

If you have a problem downloading an app, you may not have enough available storage on your device. You can manage your storage in Settings.

### SPOTLIGHT launch

In computing, launch means 'start a program'. Launch is also used with the meaning 'start an activity' with a range of nouns in other contexts.

Iaunch a campaign / an investigation / an appeal / an enquiry /an attack

GLOSSARY	
scroll up/down	move text up or down on the screen so that you can read the different parts
browse	look through different websites without reading everything <b>browsing</b> <i>n</i> A <b>browser</b> is a program that lets you see documents on the internet.
tap (on) sth	hit sth/sb quickly and lightly: tap the icon to open the app
install	put a new program onto a computer or device <b>installation</b> <i>n</i>
icon	a small symbol on a computer or smartphone screen that represents a program or a file
switch	change or make sth change from one thing to another
key sth (in)	put information into a computer using a keyboard
prompt	encourage or tell sb to do sth on a computer
storage	the process of keeping information on a computer and the way that it is kept
settings pl	the place on a computer or device where you can choose the way it looks or works

### Correct the errors.

#### 1 stroll up a document 5 instal the program ...... 2 tap the ikon 6 The computer will promt you to act. 3 lanch the programme 7 Go to setting to change sounds. 4 brouse the website for help 8 How much data storige have you got?

### 2 Cover the glossary. Which words are being defined?

- put information into a device using a keyboard
- 2 touch something, e.g. an icon, quickly
- 3 change from one thing to another
- 4 start a program, an app, etc.
- 5 a program that lets you read documents on the internet
- 6 the process of keeping information and the way it is kept
- 7 move text on a screen up so that you can read it

### 3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 Did you manage to put the program on your computer? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it successfully.
- 2 Where did you find out about that new restaurant app? ~ I was just \_\_\_\_\_ on a food website.
- 3 How will I know what to do next?
- 4 How do I open the app?
- Where are the answers to the quiz questions?
- 6 How do I check the battery on my phone?
- What are the police doing about computer crime? 7
- How do I send a message?

TEST YOURSELF

- ~ The program will \_\_\_\_\_ you to
- continue or cancel.

- ~ You just \_\_\_\_\_ the icon on the screen.
- ~ They're at the bottom of the document. Just down a bit.
- ~ Go into and click on 'battery'.
- various investigations. ~ They've
- ~ Tap on this \*

Leisure and lifestyle

## **B** Routine maintenance

- Don't leave your device charging all the time. When fully charged, unplug the power cable.
- Use an antivirus program, and keep it updated.
- Remember to do regular backups of your data. If you use your computer a lot, back your work up every day.
- Don't turn the computer off every time it freezes. Wait a while before you decide whether or not to reboot.
- Clean your computer screen by wiping downwards with a damp cloth. Don't let any water drops get into the computer: they could ruin the internal components.

#### GLOSSARY remove the plug of a piece of electrical equipment from unplug the power supply OPP plug (sth) in cable a set of wires covered in plastic or rubber that carries electricity, etc. antivirus designed to find and destroy computer viruses update make sth more modern by adding new parts or information update n backup a copy of the information on your computer that you keep in case you lose the information back sth up freeze When your computer freezes, you cannot move any images because of a system problem. reboot switch off a computer then start it again immediately remove dirt, liquid, etc. from sth using a cloth or your hand wipe towards the ground or towards a lower level OPP upwards downwards damp a little bit wet ruin damage sth so badly that it loses its value, pleasure, etc. internal connected with the inside of sth OPP external one of several parts of which sth is made component



# 41 Competitive football

## A The championship

## THE PREMIER LEAGUE

As the championship reaches its climax, Manchester City and Liverpool are still challenging for the title. Man City's next opponents are Fulham, at home, which looks to be a relatively easy game. Liverpool, however, face much tougher opposition, away at Arsenal. The manager is not underestimating the difficulty of the task. 'Arsenal are a quality side and still contenders for a place in the top four, so our priority is just that one game, and not to think about the championship title.'

GLOSSARY	
league	a group of sports clubs that compete with each other for a prize
climax	the most important and exciting part of a book, film, game, etc.: reach a climax
title	the position of being the winner in a competition, especially in sport: She has three world <b>titles</b> in cycling.
opponent	(in sports or competitions) a person/ team who plays against sb
at home	If a team plays <b>at home</b> , they play in their own stadium. OPP <b>away</b> ( <b>at</b> Arsenal, etc.); <b>home</b> <i>adj</i> , <b>away</b> <i>adj</i> : <b>an</b> <b>away/home game</b>
relatively	to quite a large degree, especially when compared with others
tough	difficult
(the) opposition	the person or team you compete against in sport
underestimate	think that sb/sth is not as strong, good, etc. as they really are OPP <b>overestimate</b>
contender	a person or team with a chance of winning a competition
priority	sth that is more important or you must do before anything else: a top priority

### Underline the main stress on these words. Use the 🐵 to help you.

climax	underestimate	opponent	contender	
relatively	priority	opposition	overestimate	

### 2 Answer the questions.

- 1 If something is relatively easy, is it quite easy or extremely easy?
- 2 If it's a tough game, is it a very physical game, or a difficult game?
- 3 Is the opposition, a team you are playing against or a team you don't like?
- 4 In a competition, is a contender the team who is going to win it?
- 5 If something is a *priority*, is it quite important or very important?
- 6 If you've observed the opposition carefully, are you likely to underestimate them, overestimate them, or judge them well?
- 7 Does a climax come at the beginning or the end?
- 8 Does a *league* involve one team or many teams?

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Our \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the next game are a team that have won two championships, so it will be a very \_\_\_\_\_\_ match.
- After his injury, Brown's top \_\_\_\_\_\_ now is to get back to full fitness.
- 3 There are no weak teams in the League, so you should never \_\_\_\_\_\_ the opposition.
- 4 There are 20 teams in the Premier
- 5 Last week's game was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ easy, but the next match will be much tougher.
- 6 Inter Milan are playing well, so they will be \_\_\_\_\_\_ again for the championship.
- 7 We are at \_\_\_\_\_\_ this week to Spurs, and \_\_\_\_\_\_ at Liverpool the following week.
- 8 With just one round of games to go, the championship is now \_\_\_\_\_\_a climax.
- 9 Chelsea have now won three premiership \_\_\_\_\_\_ in recent years.

TEST YOURSELF

Leisure and lifestyle

## **B** What do football supporters think?

### CHELSEA

We lack a bit of **consistency** and the manager is **under pressure**. However, I still think we have **a real chance** of being in the top four and **qualifying** for The Champions League.

### SPURS

We have a habit of **dominating** the opposition, then we **throw** it **away** at the end. Last week's **defeat** was a bad one, but I still think we **stand a chance of getting** into the top four.

### MANCHESTER UNITED

The new manager has transformed our season, and getting players back from injury has been a real **boost**. We had **no chance** of qualifying for Europe at Christmas, but now it's a possibility.

SPOTLIGHT chance

### ARSENAL

We've **sorted out** one or two problems off the **pitch**, but after three defeats **in a row**, there may only be **an outside chance** of making the top four.

### GLOSSARY

consistency under pressure	the quality of always behaving in the same way or having the same standard, etc. <b>consistent</b> <i>adj</i> OPP <b>inconsistent</b> in an anxious situation, often because sb is forcing you to do sth in a certain way	dominate throw sth away defeat	be more powerful, important or noticeable than others <b>domination</b> <i>n</i> ; <b>dominant</b> <i>adj</i> waste or not use an opportunity an occasion when sb fails to win or be successful against sb	<ul> <li>Chance is used in many phrases.</li> <li>There's no chance that we will reach Sydney before night.</li> <li>We've only got an outside chance of promotion to the Premier League. (= a very small chance) OPP a real/ good chance</li> </ul>
qualify (for sth)	win the right to enter a competition or continue to the next stage of it <b>qualification</b> n	sort sth out pitch	else OPP <b>victory</b> find a solution to a problem an area of ground where	<ul> <li>Do you think we stand a chance of winning? (= have a possibility of winning)</li> </ul>
transform boost	change sth completely, usually in a positive way transformation n sth that helps or encourages sb/sth	in a row	you play certain sports: <b>a football/rugby pitch</b> one after another, without a break	<ul> <li>This season could be my big chance.</li> <li>(= opportunity for success) He's retiring soon, so this is his last chance to lead the team.</li> <li>(= final opportunity)</li> </ul>

### 4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 The noun from qualify is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The opposite of defeat is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The opposite of consistent is \_\_\_\_\_.

### 5 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

- It's been a real boost.
- We've sorted it out.
- 3 Another defeat.

5 We're inconsistent.

4 He transformed the team.

- 4 The noun from dominate is \_\_\_\_\_.5 The noun from transform is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The noun from consistent is

......

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

- Three victories in a row.
- 7 I threw it away.
- 8 I've been under pressure.
- We've got a real chance.
- We were dominant.

- 6 Complete the sentences.
  - Next season could be my last \_\_\_\_\_ of winning the championship.
  - 2 The \_\_\_\_\_\_ is in bad condition because of the heavy rain.

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

- 3 If we win the next two games, it will be a \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the players and supporters.
- 4 One more victory and it will be three wins in a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We just \_\_\_\_\_\_ away games that we really should win easily.
- 6 One week we play well, the next we're rubbish; we lack \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 If we win on Saturday, we will \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the next round in the competition.
- 8 I know the team is under \_\_\_\_\_, but they have to \_\_\_\_\_ out their problems.
- 9 Unfortunately, in our last four games, we've had one victory and three \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 I don't think we \_\_\_\_\_\_a \_\_\_\_\_ of winning the title.

## 7 ABOUT YOU Do you support a team? If so, how have they been playing recently? Write sentences using vocabulary from above, or tell a partner.

# 42 Music

## Will a song stand the test of time?

What is it about a pop song that makes it compelling not only as a hit single when it's released, but for future generations as well? Take, for example, Bohemian Rhapsody by Queen. Is it the interesting lyrics, the melodies or the fascinating changes of rhythm that make it so popular? Much less complicated, on the surface at least, but no less successful is: All You Need is Love by the Beatles. The sentiment in its catchy chorus couldn't be simpler, and it is such an easy song to sing along to. Or is it the personality and quality of the singer or the band that determine whether the song will engage the listener or not? David Bowie's music is certainly memorable for those reasons; the colourful characters he created, such as Ziggy Stardust, only add to that.

Are great songs ones that you recognize as great the first time you **encounter** them, or are there some that you need to listen to several times before they have an effect? *Eleanor Rigby* by The Beatles is perhaps an example of one which you need to listen to carefully because of its complex lyrics (e.g. 'wearing the face that she keeps in a jar by the door'), but also because it was such an original and different type of pop song at the time.

But whatever **criteria** you use to measure the greatness of a pop song (or any **genre** of music), one thing seems true for all of them: they have the ability to stand the test of time because people can **relate to** them and still see them as **relevant** decades after they were first written.





#### GLOSSARY

stand the test of time	If sth <b>stands the test of time</b> , it is remembered positively for a long time, or functions successfully for a long time.	catchy	(of a tune or the words of a song) easy to remember
		chorus	the part of a song that is repeated
compelling	that makes you pay attention to it because it is so interesting and exciting	sing along (to sth)	
hit	a popular and successful song, often called	determine	discover the facts about sth or calculate sth exactly SYN establish; determination n
lyrics	a hit single the words of a song	engage formal	succeed in attracting and keeping sb's attention and interest
melody	a tune, especially the main tune in a piece of music written for several	memorable	worth remembering or easy to remember SYN <b>unforgettable</b>
	instruments or voices SYN tune	encounter formal	meet sb unexpectedly encounter n
rhythm	a regular repeated pattern of sounds or movements	criteria pl (sing criterion)	the standards that you use when you make a decision or form an opinion about sb/sth
complicated	difficult to understand SYN complex; complicate v	genre formal	a particular type or style of literature, art, film or music
surface	the outer appearance of a person, thing or situation; the qualities you see or notice that	relate to sth	feel able to understand sth
	are not hidden	relevant	important and useful OPP irrelevant;
sentiment	a feeling or an opinion, especially one based on emotions		relevance n
sentiment			relevance //

234	memor <u>a</u> ble rel <u>a</u> te surf	age e relevant ace		6 7 8 9	<u>rhy</u> thm ly <u>i</u> genre eng cr <u>i</u> teria sin <u>gen</u> re <u>eng</u>	age gle	****
5	compelling			10		memor <u>a</u> ble	
	rhythm	compelling	tune	sually associate encounter	catchy	sing along	£
	melody	chorus	criteria	hit single	lyrics	genre	
A	nswer the o	uestions.					
1		noun formed f	rom determine	?			
2	What's a sy	nonym for con	nplicated?				
3		opposite of rel	•				
4		singular form o					
5	What is the	related noun f	for the verb end	counter?			
6	What's a sy	nonym for mei	morable?				
R	eplace the u	underlined w	ords with a w	ord or phrase t	hat keens ti	e same mear	ing.
1		very easy to re	manahas				
2	-	a series of musi					
3				essful songs in th	e 2010s.		
4		the bit of the so					
5		of the song are					
6	This type o	f music is diffic	ult to understa	nd.			
7	The band t	hinks it's impor	tant that youn	g people <u>are able</u>	to feel and u	nderstand the	music.
8	l just love th	hat <u>regular repe</u>	eated pattern o	of sound.			
-							
0	omplete the	e sentences.					
0		e sentences.	e 'best' pop sor	nos, but what are	the	for sele	ction?
1	Websites of	ften choose the		ngs, but what are		for sele	ction?
1 2 3	Websites of I like the so	ften choose the ng because of	the lyrics and t	he catchy			ction?
1 2	Websites of I like the so Marie likes	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic	the lyrics and t al is still her fav	he catchy vourite music	•		ction?
1 2 3	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were	the lyrics and t al is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t	he catchy yourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war,	udapest five y	ears ago.	ction? toda
1 2 3 4	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I first Many prote and many y	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people of	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still	he catchy yourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, to them	udapest five y but they still s	ears ago. seem just as	
1 2 3 4	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I first Many prote and many y Great perfo	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people of prmers have a n	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to	he catchy yourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war,	udapest five y but they still s n. their audien	ears ago. seem just as	toda
1 2 3 4 5 6	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people o prmers have a n	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert I've ev	he catchy vourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, to them	udapest five y but they still s their audient but their audient	ears ago. seem just as ces. ast year. It was a	toda amazing!
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people co ormers have a n g people seem	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to	he catchy vourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, to them wer been to was in of r what makes	udapest five y but they still s their audient Edinburgh I nusic to their	ears ago. seem just as ces. ast year. It was a lives more than	toda amazing!
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people o ormers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a rai	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to nge of emotion a song may see	he catchy vourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, to them wer been to was in of r what makes	udapest five y but they still s their audient but dinburgh l nusic to their a great singe but when yo	ears ago. seem just as es. ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly	mazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the times, it car	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people of ormers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a rai	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to nge of emotion a song may see weal a deeper a	the catchy vourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, to them wer been to was in of r what makes ns? em quite positive, and more pessimi	udapest five y but they still s their audient but dinburgh l nusic to their a great singe but when yo stic meaning	ears ago. seem just as ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly	mazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the times, it car	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people co ormers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a rai , a n sometimes re Write answe	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to nge of emotion a song may see veal a deeper a	the catchy vourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, I to them wer been to was in of r what makes ns? em quite positive, and more pessimi stions, or talk to	udapest five y but they still s their audient but inburgh l nusic to their a great singe but when yo stic meaning	ears ago. seem just as ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly udent.	mazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or vrics a few more
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the times, it car BOUT YOU Do you agre	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people of ormers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a rai n sometimes re <b>Write answe</b> ee with the tex	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've ev to see the to nge of emotion a song may see veal a deeper a treat to the que	the catchy vourite music usic on a visit to But the Vietnam war, I to them wer been to was in of r of r of r of r of r what makes ns? em quite positive, and more pessimi stions, or talk to atures of a great so	udapest five y but they still s their audient but dinburgh l nusic to their a great singe but when yo stic meaning <b>but when yo</b>	ears ago. seem just as tes. ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly udent.	amazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or vrics a few more
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the times, it car BOUT YOU Do you agre Is there any	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur st songs were young people co mers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a ran a sometimes re Write answe ee with the tex thing else you	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to nge of emotion a song may see veal a deeper a treat to the que t about the fea think is import	the catchy	udapest five y but they still s their audient but when you stic meaning o another st ong?	ears ago. seem just as ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly udent.	mazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or vrics a few more
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Websites of I like the so Marie likes I I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the times, it car BOUT YOU Do you agre Is there any What attrac	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people co mers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a rai on sometimes re <b>Write answe</b> ee with the tex thing else you its you the mos	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to nge of emotion a song may see veal a deeper a t about the fea think is import st? Is it: the mel	the catchy	udapest five y but they still s their audient but in audient for Edinburgh I nusic to their a great singe but when yo stic meaning <b>but when yo</b> stic meaning <b>banother st</b> ong?	ears ago. seem just as ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly udent.	mazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or vrics a few more
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10	Websites of I like the so Marie likes p I first Many prote and many y Great perfo The most Many youn Music journ their ability On the times, it can BOUT YOU Do you agre Is there any What attract Do you offe	ften choose the ng because of pop, but classic Hur est songs were young people co ormers have a n g people seem halists often try to convey a ran a sometimes re <b>Write answe</b> ee with the tex thing else you ts you the most en sing along to	the lyrics and t cal is still her fav ngarian folk mu written about t can still atural ability to concert l've en to see the to nge of emotion a song may see veal a deeper a trs to the que t about the fea think is import st? Is it: the mel	the catchy	udapest five y but they still s their audient but dinburgh l nusic to their a great singe but when yo stic meaning <b>but</b> when yo stic meaning <b>but</b> when yo stic meaning <b>but</b> when yo stic meaning	ears ago. seem just as ast year. It was a lives more than r. Is it the qualit u listen to the ly udent.	mazing! art or literature. ies in their voice or vrics a few more

## Plays and films 43

## A A fabulous play

### \*\*\*\*\*

The Woman in Black is a fabulous ghost story. With just a minimal set and few sound effects, this drama will scare you to death!

#### \*\*\*\*\*

superb adaptation of Susan Hill's classic novel. The Itension is maintained throughout the production, and the cast of two are sensational! The applause went on and on.

words that show approval of or admiration

for sb/sth praise v

The play is an *adaption / adaptation* from a book.

from almost everyone.

Are you keen on ghost / spirit stories?

These scary stories can create a lot of

Did they applause / applaud at the end?

\*\*\*\*\* The critics have been unanimous in their praise. A must-see thriller!

#### GLOSSARY (of a book, play, etc.) one of the best and classic fabulous extremely good, excellent SYN sensational, most important, and having lasting value superb a feeling of anxiety or stress because you a story about the spirit of a dead person that sb tension ghost story are nervous tense adj hears or sees the scenery and furniture used in a play, film, etc. cast (+ sing OR pl verb) all the people who act in a play or film the sound of an audience showing sound effects sounds that are made artificially in a play, film, applause approval by hitting their hands together etc. to make it more realistic, e.g. wind, thunder applaud v SYN clapping; clap v make sb very frightened Scared stiff means scare sb agreed by everyone unanimous very scared'. to death

Put the words in the correct column below based on the pronunciation of the underlined letters. Use the and to help you.

praise

f <u>a</u> bulous c <u>a</u> st	sens <u>a</u> tional appl <u>au</u> se	sc <u>are</u> audience	<u>a</u> dapt un <u>a</u> nimous	cl <u>a</u> ssic pr <u>ai</u> se		
ACTOR	PLAY	FAR	1	HAIR	CAUGHT	THEATRE

set

adaptation

### Circle the correct word. Both answers may be possible. 5 The book is a classic / classical.

a book or play that has been made into a film, TV

- 1 I didn't like the acting, but I thought the set / cast was good.
- The play was frightening. It scared me to die/death.
- 3 There were great sound affects / effects.
- 4 I thought the play was absolutely superb/ sensational.

## Complete the dialogues.

programme, etc.

- 1 Were you frightened?
- 2 Is it based on an original story?
- 3 Was the acting good?
- Did everyone agree?
- Have people liked the play? 5
- The audience just kept clapping. 6
- Will we still be reading it in 50 years? 7
- 8

TEST YOURSELF

~ Yes, I was scared

6

7

8

9

- ~ No, it's an
- of a novel. was excellent. ~ Yes, the whole

praise / tension.

- ~ Yes, the decision was
- ~ Yes, it's had \_\_\_\_\_

- Were people nervous?
- ~ I know. The \_\_\_\_\_\_ was incredible. ~ Definitely. It's a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - ~ Yes, I felt a bit \_\_\_\_\_.

## **B** A disappointing film

- A I went to see the latest blockbuster at the local cinema last night. I wasn't convinced by it.
- Me neither. I had quite high expectations B because the critics seem to like it, but I thought the action sequences were somewhat predictable, and it just lacked any originality.
- Yes, they were poor. I think the worst aspect, A though, was the screenplay, which was not convincing at all. And I couldn't hear some of it either - subtitles might've helped.

### SPOTLIGHT subtitles and dubbing

Subtitles translate what is said in a film into a different language; they appear at the bottom of the screen. They are also used to help deaf people. If a film is dubbed, the spoken words of the film are replaced by words in another language.

GLOSSARY	
blockbuster inf convinced	a very popular and successful film or book completely sure about things <b>convincing</b>
	making sb believe that sth is true
expectation	a hope that sth good will happen: have high/low expectations (of sth); live up to expectations; exceed expectations
sequence	a set of events, actions, etc. which have a particular order and lead to a particular result
somewhat	to some degree SYN rather
predictable	If sth is <b>predictable</b> , we know in advance that it will happen or what it will be like. OPP <b>unpredictable</b>
originality	the quality of being new and interesting and not seen before
poor	not good; lower in quality than was expected
aspect	a particular part or feature of sth
screenplay	the words that are written for a film and how they are to be acted

4	Underline the stress	on these words. Use the 🍳	🖻 to help you.						
	aspect	expectation	somewhat						
	blockbuster	screenplay	subtitles						
	convinced	sequence	unpredictable						
5	Yes or No?								
-	1 If a film is predictabl	e, do you know what will hap	open?						
	2 If a film is somewhat	t long, is it very long?							
		ways involve more than one?							
		convincing, is that positive?							
		ls your expectations, is it wha	t vou expected?						
	6 Can you go to a scre								
-	, ,								
6	Complete the senten	ces.							
-	1 I knew what was go	I knew what was going to happen at the end. ~ Yes, it was very							
	4 There's a great action in the film involving a car chase.								
	5 The film was OK, but								
			at the cinema, largely for kids.						
7			st speaker but without repeating the						
	1 The screenplay wasr	n't good, was it?	~ No, it was						
		ou thought it would be?	~ Yes, it						
	3 I wasn't completely		~ No, I wasn't						
		cular feature of the film.	~ No, I didn't like that						
	5 Is the film in the orig		~ Yes, but it has						
		vas going to happen.	~ I agree, the ending was very						
		ne new and interesting ideas.	~ Yeah, there was no						
	8 I thought the plot w		~ I agree. I found it						

- 8 I thought the plot was <u>rather</u> confusing.
  - TEST YOURSELF

Leisure and lifestyle 95

# 44 Socializing

## A Organizing a party

- The host is expected to do most of the preparation, such as providing food and drink. This can be expensive and timeconsuming, so consider asking others to make a contribution and bring something.
- You don't want the prospect of too much to clear up, so consider disposable plates and cutlery, which can be recycled after use.
- Don't advertise it on the internet beforehand. You don't want gatecrashers.
- Parties take a while to get going. Music or party games will liven things up.
- Finally, don't get carried away. You're planning a party, not a theme park.

#### GLOSSARY a person who invites guests to a meal, a party, etc. host Hostess can be used for a woman. the act or process of getting ready for sth or making preparation sth ready time-consuming needing a lot of time: a time-consuming process sth that you give or do to help sth be successful: contribution make a contribution (to sth); contribute v the possibility that sth will happen prospect make sth clean and neat, often by putting things clear (sth) up back where they belong made to be thrown away after single use disposable before sth else happens or is done beforehand sb who tries to get into a party without an invitation gatecrasher (of a party or event) start to become enjoyable get going liven (sth) up become or make sth more exciting become too excited or lose control of your feelings get carried away

Underline the st	ress on these words. Use the	🗠 to help you.	
time-consuming	contribution	beforehand	get going
contribute	disposable	gatecrasher	liven up
2) Complete the di	alogues with a suitable word	l.	
-	it? ~ Paula and Stefano are the		
	these plates away? ~ Yes, they're		
	what we like on the party? ~ Yes		!
	ng? ~ Yes, it was very		
	tell me Will was going to be the		
	irn up the music? ~ To		
	p out at the party with the food		
	he of organizin		
to help.	or organizin	g a wedding ~ On, it s ok as i	ong as there are other people
3 Complete the w	ords in the text.		
and the party was	great! There was lots of food, bu so she still had time to enjoy her	t I think Lia did most of the (1	3)
(2)	bringing a bottle of something,	or some food She also put a	couple of big guys pear
the door to stop (4)	, which was sens	ible It was quiet to start with	but it soon got
(5)	and when the disco started, thin	gs really (6)	I imagine there was a lot
	the next day, but I hope Lia the		

Send

4 ABOUT YOU What do you think of the advice in the text? Is there anything that would be unusual or unacceptable in your country? Write your answers, or ask another student.



Leisure and lifestyle



- 8 Were the locals friendly when you moved in? ~ Oh yes, they welcomed us with
- 9 Do you want to \_\_\_\_\_\_ round tonight on your way home? ~ Yes, that would be great.
- 10 We must \_\_\_\_\_\_ now, but it was great seeing you. ~ You too. Have a good trip.

TEST YOURSELF

## 45) Describing change

## A Types of change

Example	Meaning
I find it difficult to <b>adapt to</b> so much new technology.	change your behaviour because the situation has changed SYN <b>adjust (to sth)</b>
We've <b>altered</b> our plans: we're now arriving at 6.00, not 7.00.	make sth different but without changing it completely alteration <i>n</i>
Civil servants are now <b>amending</b> the document.	change sth slightly, usually to correct a mistake in a statement, document, etc. <b>amendment</b> <i>n</i>
Democracy has evolved over hundreds of years.	change gradually, often from sth simple to sth more complicated <b>evolution</b> <i>n</i>
There are new proposals to <b>reform</b> the prison system.	change a law, system, organization, etc. to make it better <b>reform</b> <i>n</i>
Some people want to <b>restore</b> the monarchy in certain countries.	return sth to its former state or condition, e.g. a building, a painting restoration n
They were going to let him go, but they <b>reversed</b> their decision.	change sth so it is the opposite of what it was before: reverse a decision/policy; reversal n
Computers have transformed our lives.	completely change the appearance or character of sth, often to make it better <b>transformation</b> <i>n</i>
It's a big <b>transition</b> from school to full-time work.	a period of change from one state or condition to another: <i>in transition</i>

### Write the nouns related to these verbs.

1	restore	 3	transform	 5	evolve	
2	amend	 4	reverse			

### Organize these words into the categories below.

					-					
		evolve	restore	amend	adapt	alter	reform	reverse	transform	adjust
1	1	a verb th	hat describe	s complete	change:					
1	2	two veri	bs that desc	ribe changi	ng somet	hing bac	k:			
-	3	a verb th	hat describe	s gradual c	hange:					
	\$	two ver	bs that desc	ribe a chan	ge to imp	rove som	ething:			
1			bs that invo		-		,			*****************
			hat describe				ething:			**********
(	Col	mplete	the senter	nces with a	suitable	word.				
1	1	The new	v furniture h	as complet	ely		their livir	ng room.		
2	2	Part of t	he 18th cent	ury tower w	vas damag	ged, but t	hey are pla	anning to		it.
	3	As a con	npany we b	elieve in		, not	revolution	n.		
4	1	They've	changed th	eir minds c	ompletely	this is a		of the	previous poli	cy.
5	5	Solicitor	s want to		some	of our ou	itdated div	vorce laws.		
6	5	I've lost	so much we	eight that I'l	need to			me of my clo	othes.	
7	1	Now he	has children	n, he will ha	ve to		to a ve	ery different l	ifestyle.	
8				one o	f the docu	iments as	s there we	re several err	ors in it.	
		VAL-1 L	and the second second	and the second second second					f . t	

- 9 We've had to make one or two \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the timetable because of the extra course.
- 10 He will remain in charge during the period of

TEST YOURSELF

## **B** Change management

## Managing change

Most employees resist change that is enforced and imposed upon them. So, if a company wants to pursue a policy that aims to bring about sweeping, or even subtle changes, managers need to remember that their role is to facilitate change and not impose it. This requires an ongoing consultation process with the staff, so that any changes have their support before they are implemented.

resist	refuse to accept sth and try to stop it happening resistance n
enforce	make people obey sth; enforce the law; enforcement n
impose sth (on/upon sb)	make sb accept sth against their wishes
pursue	follow or try to achieve sth over a period of time: <i>pursue a policy/goal</i>
bring sth about	make sth happen
subtle	not easy to notice or understand: a subtle difference; OPP obvious
facilitate	make an act or process easier to achieve
ongoing	continuing to develop: an ongoing process/ investigation
consultation	the act of discussing sth with sb before maki a decision consult sb v; consultative adj: a consultative process/committee
implement	make sth that has been decided start to happen SYN <b>put sth into practice</b> ; <b>implementation</b> n

A number of adjectives are commonly used with the noun change.

- sweeping/radical/major/wholesale changes (= big changes)
- a refreshing/welcome change (= pleasantly new or different)

### 4 Good or bad management, according to the text? Write G or B.

1 They've enforced the change.

- 2 They've resisted any change.
- 3 There has been a consultative process.
- 4 They've imposed change.
- 5 They've introduced refreshing changes.
- They want to facilitate change.

### 5 Replace the underlined words with different words that keep the same meaning.

It's only a small difference but we believe it will have an effect.	
He wants to introduce radical changes.	
The new furniture is a <u>welcome</u> change.	
They have the power to make people obey the law.	
They plan to implement a number of changes.	
The new measures will create further changes.	
Staff have refused to accept any changes.	
Suggesting change is one thing but putting it into practice is more difficult.	
I believe there is a continuing investigation into the disappearance of the funds.	
She has tried to make discussions easier between staff and management.	
	He wants to introduce <u>radical</u> changes. The new furniture is a <u>welcome</u> change. They have the power to <u>make people obey</u> the law. They plan to <u>implement</u> a number of changes. The new measures will <u>create</u> further changes. Staff have <u>refused to accept</u> any changes. Suggesting change is one thing but <u>putting it into practice</u> is more difficult. I believe there is <u>a continuing</u> investigation into the disappearance of the funds.

6 Complete the text.

## 46 Energy conservation

## Easy ways to conserve energy in the home

- Switch to energy-saving eco light bulbs. They are better for the environment and they last much longer. They are more expensive to buy, but they greatly reduce your energy consumption and in the long run are a significant financial saving.
- Never leave electrical appliances on standby, or leave your mobile phone charging<sup>1</sup> unnecessarily. Get rid of your tumble dryer: it consumes masses of energy.
- Every year we throw away thousands of batteries. If these are not disposed of safely landfill sites will become even more toxic. Use rechargeable batteries<sup>2</sup> or, better still, solar chargers.
- With a 'smart' meter, you can monitor the amount of energy you use, and even control your consumption when you are away from home.
- If you are not planning to move in the near future, solar panels<sup>3</sup> are a good long-term investment. You will make a saving on your electricity bills as well as receiving money for the electicity you generate and sell back to National Grid\*.
- \* The National Grid is the network in the United Kingdom connecting power stations and ensuring that electricity generated anywhere can be used to satisfy demand anywhere.







### GLOSSARY

deossann			
conserve switch (to sth)	avoid wasting sth <b>conservation</b> <i>n</i> change or make sth change from using	charge sth (up)	pass electricity through sth to store it there <b>charger</b> <sup>2</sup> n
	one thing to using another	tumble dryer	a machine that uses hot air to dry clothes
-saving	not wasting anything: energy-saving, a labour-saving device	dispose of sth	get rid of sth that you do not want or cannot keep <b>disposal</b> <i>n</i>
eco-	(short for ecology/ecological) relating to the environment: an eco-disaster	landfill (site)	an area of land where large amounts of rubbish are buried
consumption	the act of using energy, food or	toxic	poisonous: toxic chemicals/gases/substances
	materials. A person is a <b>consumer</b> . <b>consume</b> v	better still	even better. <b>Still</b> is used here and with other comparative adjectives to make a comparison
saving	an amount of sth, such as money or time,		stronger: longer still
	that you do not need to spend or use	monitor	watch and check sth over a period of time to
appliance	a machine you use at home, e.g. a fridge,		see how it develops or changes
	a washing machine	investment	a thing that is worth buying because it will be
on standby	If a TV is on standby, it is connected to		useful and helpful
	the power supply but is not in use.	generate	produce or create sth: generate electricity

SPOTLIGHT in the short/medium/long term

These expressions are used to describe what will happen a short, medium or long time in the future.

- The reforms won't happen in the short term.
- We plan to move in the long term (SYN in the long run).

Short-/medium-/long-term can also be used as adjectives.

Hiring unqualified staff is only a short-term solution.

	lark the stress on these words and phrases. Use the 🌚 to help you.	
	opliance disposal on standby	
	etter still energy-saving tumble dryer	
CO	onserve in the long run conservation	
G	ood or bad, in terms of energy-saving? Write G or B.	
1	I left the TV on standby overnight.	
2	We don't use eco-light bulbs.	
3	I switched to rechargeable batteries.	
4	Our energy consumption didn't increase over the winter.	
5	The machine gives out toxic substances.	
6	The company has introduced energy conservation measures.	
7	He left the phone charger on all day.	
8	We've reduced what we send to the landfill.	
9	I've removed the water-saving device from our taps.	
10	We have fitted solar panels.	
C	omplete the phrases in these sentences.	
1	We spend too much time just looking at	
2	I think dishwashers are one of the best devices.	
3	We've just had 12 fitted on the roof.	
4	I'm afraid I often leave the TV	
5	I've got a washing machine, but there isn't room for a dryer.	
6	The oil spill off the coast was an	
7		
8		
9		
10	I have decided to to a different energy supplier.	
11		
12	Where can we of these batteries in the most ecological way?	
C	omplete the questions.	
1	Have you got a tumble ? If so, could you manage without it?	
2		
3	Do you the amount of electricity you use every day/week?	
4	Do you know how much electricity you in an average week?	
5		
6	Do you always turn off lights in rooms you aren't using to energy?	
7	The second se	
8	Contract in the second s	
9	Are you an above-average or below-average of electricity?	
10		
11		
12	Do you think you have made financial in recent years by using public transport more	?
_	ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.	

# 47 Wildlife under threat

## **A** Conservation

With the ongoing clearing of forests (also called deforestation), many animals are losing their natural habitat and starting to decline in numbers. In some regions, conservation groups point out that some animals are already dying out and are in danger of extinction. One instance of this is the African elephant, which is now considered to be an endangered species.

### SPOTLIGHT extinction n and extinct adj

If a plant or animal is extinct, it no longer exists.

- Some sharks are becoming extinct.
- Some sharks are in danger of extinction.
- This species is on the verge of extinction.
   (= very close to extinction)

#### GLOSSARY clear remove sth that may not be wanted habitat the place where a plant or animal is usually found: the elephant's natural habitat decline become smaller, weaker, or less good decline n: be in decline region a part of a country or the world regional adj conservation the protection of the natural world **conserve** v point sth out mention sth in order to give people information about it and make them notice it die out disappear instance (of sth) an example or case (of sth): for instance consider sb/sth think of sth/sb in a particular way to be sth ALSO consider sb/sth as sth endangered in danger of becoming extinct (see spotlight) species a group of plants or animals that are all similar and can breed together

.....

......

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

......

.....

### Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write 5 or D.

- The tiger population is in decline. / There are fewer tigers than there were.
   We are destroying their natural habitat. / We are destroying their natural habits.
   Tigers are on the verge of extinction. / Tigers are almost extinct.
- 4 There are laws to conserve their habitat. / There are laws to clear their habitat.
- 5 Flooding is a regional problem. / Flooding is a problem everywhere.
- This species of butterfly is endangered. / This species of butterfly has died out.
- 7 I've seen widespread deforestation. / I've seen many forests cleared.
- 8 Large numbers are declining. / Large numbers are dying out.

### Complete the phrases with suitable words.

- 1 in \_\_\_\_\_ of extinction
- 2 point something
- 3 habitat
- 4 decline
- 5 on the \_\_\_\_\_ of extinction
- 6 endangered

### 3 Complete the dialogues with a single word in each space.

- 1 Has the dodo died \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Are forests still being ?~ Yes, it's all part of the process of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 25% of birds are in danger of \_\_\_\_\_\_. ~ Yes, and many more are in \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Are there water shortages everywhere? ~ Yes, but they're a lot worse in some \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 You can see animals in a zoo. ~ Yes, but it's better to see them in their natural
- 6 Which animals in particular are \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Well, the snow leopard, for \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 What can people do to help with \_\_\_\_\_? ~ It's mostly about education and being aware of your surroundings.
- 8 Many birds are also \_\_\_\_\_\_ in numbers. ~ Yes, and if we're not careful some of our birds could \_\_\_\_\_\_ out altogether.
- 9 We can't go on consuming as much energy as we do. ~ I know. I keep \_\_\_\_\_\_ this out to my family.
- 10 Your aunt knows all about this. ~ Oh yes, she is \_\_\_\_\_\_ an expert on conservation.

## **B** The rhino

## Under threat: the rhino<sup>1</sup>

- Poaching poses the greatest threat to this species, despite the ban on trade in rhino horn, which is sought after for decorative purposes and used in some forms of medicine.
- Civil war: War diverts funds from conservation, and the high levels of poverty in affected areas increase the likelihood that people will end up poaching. In some African countries, civil war has led to a serious decline in rhino populations.



Habitat loss: Deforestation has wiped out a great deal of rhino territory, with a serious drop in the numbers of rhinos that are breeding.

#### GLOSSARY divert sth/sb change the direction of sth, especially threat (to sb/sth) the possibility of trouble or danger: (from sth, to sth) away from its original purpose be under threat SYN probability likelihood hunting animals, birds, etc. illegally. poaching The person is a poacher. find yourself in a place/situation that end up (doing sth) you did not plan/expect to be in create or give sb sth that they must deal pose with: pose a threat/risk/problem wipe sth out destroy sth completely wanted by many people because it is of sought after an area that an animal considers as territory high quality or rare its own territorial adj: Wolves are territorial animals. (of an object or a building) intended to decorative (of animals) have sex and produce look attractive or pretty breed young animals war between groups from the same country civil war

### 4 Cross out the error in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- Cash will need to be divested from one project to another.
- 2 They want to increase numbers but some animals won't feed in zoos.
- The factory puts a real danger to wildlife in the area. 3
- Opposing groups have been fighting a civic war for years. 4
- 5 This disease could kill out the whole breed.
- The horn of the animal is sought over by poachers. 6
- Rhino horn and elephant tusk have a decorational use. 7
- This poses a threaten to both humans and wildlife. 8

### Complete the sentences.

- war.
- 1 The disagreement could result in \_\_\_\_\_ 5 We could end \_\_\_\_\_ in a difficult situation. 6 Poaching \_\_\_\_\_\_a real danger to the species. 7 This breed of penguin could be wiped

.....

Can we \_\_\_\_\_\_ the money from there 3 to here? 4 Crocodile skin is highly sought

2 Poachers want rhino \_\_\_\_\_.

8 Poachers are a real to the rhinos' survival.

......

### Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- 1 There is little probability of things improving soon.
- You should avoid going into the lions' land.
- 3 He was sent to prison for illegal hunting.
- These animals are in real danger. 4
- The animal is extremely protective of its land. 5
- He is a person who kills tigers illegally. 6
- Some species find it difficult to produce young animals. 7
- We finally found ourselves in the middle of the forest.



# 48 Medical advances

## A revolutionary era in medical advances

In recent decades, we have seen radical changes in conventional medicine:

- 60 years ago, scanners did not exist. Diagnostic tools were restricted to basic X-ray machines.
- Children suffered from infectious diseases, for which there was no effective cure. Now vaccines have eradicated some of these illnesses and diseases.
- In the past, if you had a major operation, you would be confined to bed for weeks. Today, many operations use procedures requiring day surgery only.
- In the past, the mortality rate for patients with organ failure, such as heart, lung or kidney failure, could be 100%. Today, transplants enable many patients to resume a normal life.
- The survival rate for many cancers has improved considerably over the last forty years.
- Vitamins and minerals are necessary for good health. There are more supplements on the market now for people who do not get enough of certain vitamins or minerals from their normal diet.





### GLOSSAR

revolutionary	producing graat changes revelution	he confined to hed (	hours to other the book / our book labors
era	producing great changes <b>revolution</b> <i>n</i> a period of time that has a particular	be confined to bed / a wheelchair	have to stay in bed / a wheelchair
	quality or character	procedure	a medical operation that may or may not
advance (in sth)	progress made in science, medicine,		require your body to be cut open
	technology, etc.	rate	the number of times sth happens within a
radical	new, different and likely to have a great effect		particular period: survival rate, birth rate, mortality rate
conventional	usual or traditional; not new or different convention n	organ	a part of the body that has a particular function e.g. the heart, the brain
diagnostic	used for finding out what physical or mental problem sb has <b>diagnose</b> v; <b>diagnosis</b> n	transplant	an operation in which a damaged organ is replaced with one from a <b>donor</b> (= sb who gives part of their body, blood, etc.)
restrict	limit the size, number or amount of sth restriction n	enable sb/sth	transplant v make it possible for sb/sth to do sth
infectious	(of a disease / an illness) can easily be	to do sth	
	passed on to another person infection n; infect v	resume formal	begin sth again after an interruption
cure	a medical treatment that makes a sick	vitamin	one of several substances in certain foods that help us grow and be healthy, e.g. vitamin C, vitamin D
	person well again cure v	mineral	a natural substance, such as coal, salt, etc.
vaccine	a substance which is put into the blood and protects the body from disease. The process of giving <b>vaccine</b> is <b>vaccination</b> .	ninerai	Some <b>minerals</b> are present in food and drink and important for good health.
	vaccinate v	supplement	sth that is added to sth else. Vitamin
eradicate formal	destroy or get rid of sth completely SYN wipe (sth) out		supplements, usually taken in the form of tablets, add vitamins to your diet.

### SPOTLIGHT surgery

Surgery is medical treatment in which your body is cut open so that a part can be removed or repaired. SYN an operation, operate v. The place where this happens is an operating theatre, and the person who does it is a surgeon. surgical adj

Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the 🔤 to help you.

6 confined conventional

1 revolutionary era vitamin mineral

3 radical diagnose

4 vaccine vaccinate

......

.....

- 5 confined vaccine
- 7 era enable

.....

- 8 revolutionary advances
- 9 resume infectious

### Complete the table.

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE
revolution	-	
	restrict	-
surgery	-	
vaccine,		-
diagnosis		
	transplant	-
infection		

### 3) Yes or No?

- If a disease is eradicated, does it mean it has been restricted?
- 2 Does an organ donor receive an organ from someone else?
- 3 Does a radical change mean a very big change?
- 4 If you have a disease which is diagnosed, does it mean you are better?
  - 5 Does it matter if your diet doesn't contain any vitamins?
  - 6 Is conventional medicine new and different?
  - 7 If a disease is infectious, can you catch it?
  - 8 Does surgery involve an operation?

### Complete the sentences.

- Her injuries were serious, so they took her straight to the operating
- 2 There are prizes for the most important technological
- 3 Most people get the vitamins and minerals they need, but doctors recommend for some people if they lack certain things in their diet.
- Many changes have taken place since the Victorian
- I wanted to know the current survival for breast cancer. 5
- The \_\_\_\_\_ involves inserting a tube into the ear to reduce infection. 6
- His life was saved thanks to an organ 7
- Some foods contain a lot of vitamins and 8
- There are some treatments available, but sadly no effective
- 10 Alongside conventional \_\_\_\_\_\_, other forms of treatment have become popular in recent years.

### 5 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 Polio has been \_\_\_\_\_\_, I believe. ~ Yes, it's been almost completely \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 In some areas, lung cancer treatment is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to non-smoking patients only.
- ~ Yes, I think that may be true for patients needing an organ as well.
- 3 The government has a policy to a shortage of the appropriate
   the elderly against flu. ~ I know, but there's often when it's needed.
- 4 I don't like all these drugs some doctors give you. I don't trust medicine. ~ Really? But there have been some fantastic \_\_\_\_\_\_ in drugs in recent decades.
- 5 Are hospitals much cleaner places than they were many years ago? ~ Yes. Better hygiene has greatly reduced the spread of \_\_\_\_\_.
- on Jason; it was a difficult 6 The surgeons had to
- ~ Yes, he was to bed for ages. Fortunately he's now recovering.
- new procedure for her damaged hip. ~ I know. If it succeeds, My aunt is having a 7 she'll be able to walk again and a normal life.
- 8 Why did doctors fit the tube in Malcolm's throat? ~ I think it him to breath more easily.



## A People on the move

Word	Meaning	Example		
flee (from) sth/sb escape from a dangerous situation, place or pt/pp fled person very quickly		Thousands of people are <b>fleeing</b> the bombing in the city.		
refugee	sb who is forced to leave their country for political, religious or environmental reasons	Many <b>refugees</b> have crossed the border to escape the war.		
refuge	shelter or protection from trouble or danger The men had to take/see French embassy.			
asylum	the protection a country gives to a refugee	The numbers <b>seeking / applying for asylum</b> have increased recently.		
ethnic	connected with or belonging to a nation or race that shares a cultural tradition	an ethnic community		
minority	a small group within a community or country that is different because of race, religion, etc.	Ethnic minorities make up 10% of the town's population.		
racial discrimination	existing between people of different races the practice of treating sb or a group in society less fairly than others	racial tension/violence a victim of racial/sex discrimination		
prejudicea strong dislike of sb, especially based on race,(against sb/sth)religion or sex, and not on reason or experience		Their decision was based on <b>prejudice</b> and a complete lack of understanding.		

### SPOTLIGHT migration

**Migration** is the movement of people or animals from one place to another. People are **migrants**. **Immigration** is the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own. People are **immigrants**. **migrate** v **Emigration** is the process of going to live in another country that is not your own. **emigrate** v

Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the end to help you.

1 flee refuge3 prejudice refuge5 ethnic minority7 racial emigration2 refuge asylum4 migration minority6 prejudice refuge8 asylum migrant

### 2 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words are possible.

- 1 In 2017–2018, immigration / emigration from the UK to other parts of the world increased.
- 2 Most refugees who seek / apply asylum do so in a country neighbouring their own.
- 3 Representatives of the city's ethnic / racial communities are involved in the discussions.
- 4 The villagers took refugee / refuge in nearby towns.
- 5 In the past, there was more racial prejudice / discrimination.
- 6 People fled / flew in terror to escape the flood.
- 7 Ignorance is often behind the prejudice against migrants / immigrants.
- 8 Women and children were forced to seek / take refuge in the local church.

3 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

- There's no limit on the number of people given political in this country.
   Racial and sexual is against the law in matters of employment.
  - 3 Economic to richer countries has existed for centuries.
- 4 There are over 2,000 seeking political asylum in this country.
- 5 Nearly half a million people were forced to their homes during the civil war, and many of them refuge in the mountains, away from the fighting.
- 6 My neighbour has always had a against people whose skin is a different colour.
- 7 Asians only form a small within the population.
- 8 There has been a lot of tension between different ethnic groups.

TEST YOURSELF

106 A changing world

## **Migration: a personal experience**

Moving from my native country was a huge culture shock. There was a lot to get used to - not least of all the food! But I didn't suffer the prejudice or hostility that some migrants experience. For the most part, people have accepted me for what I am, including my religious faith. They've seen beyond the stereotype. And for my part, I recognize the need for integration in order to be able to live in peace with my neighbours. I still have feelings of nostalgia for my country of origin, and I suppose I will always be a foreigner in some respects; but this is home now, and I have no desire to go back.



native	connected with the place where you were born and lived for the first few years of your life: <b>your native</b>		
	country/land/city		
shock	the feeling you get when sth unpleasant happens. <b>Culture shock</b> is the confusion and anxiety that sb ma feel when they visit or first live in another country. very strong aggressive feelings against sb/sth <b>hostile</b> adj		
hostility (to/ towards sb)			
faith	a strong belief in sth, often a religious faith		
stereotype	a fixed idea of what a particular type of person or thin is like, but which is often not true <b>stereotypical</b> adj		
integration	the process of becoming a full member of a group or society integrate (into sth) v		
live in peace (with sb)	live without arguing with other people		
nostalgia	a feeling of sadness mixed with pleasure when you think of happy times in the past <b>nostalgic</b> adj		
origin	a person's social and family background: a person's country of origin (= where they were born)		
desire	a strong wish: have a desire / no desire to do sth		
SPOTLIGHT	dioms with part		
	art mostly; usually		
	eaking for myself ALSO for his/her, etc. part		
	aking for myself also for his/her. etc. bart		

We all have a part to play in the fight against racial discrimination.

Combine words/phrases in the box to form six phrases.						
culture	live	faith	have no	to play	country	
desire to do sth	have a part	of origin	in peace	shock	religious	

5	Cross out the word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.
---	---

- 1 Why is there so much hostility for politicians in this town?
- 2 The problems are due in partly to overcrowding.
- 3 Do you have feelings of nostalgic for your childhood?
- 4 He doesn't fit the stereoscope of a typical 30-year-old businessman.
- 5 The government policy is to aid newcomers' integrity into society.
- 6 I'm a natural New Yorker: in fact, I've never lived anywhere else.

### 6 Complete the dialogue.

Beth When you first emigrated, what things did you have to get used to?

Well, obviously the climate! But seriously, in my (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ country, many people no longer have a strong religious (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_, whereas here, religion is at the heart of people's Amy people had a (5) view of how western women behave, as they (4) seemed surprised when they got to know me. I dressed appropriately and behaved sensitively, as I had no (6) to upset people. Basically, (7) my part, I just wanted to (8) into society as best I could. Beth And do you feel that's happened?

To be honest, people have never been (9) towards me – quite the opposite. People Amy here just want to live in (10) with each other, as I do. Having said that, I will always be something of a foreigner here, and I still feel (11) \_\_\_\_\_\_ sometimes when I think of home.


# 50 Politics: ideology

Capitalism:	the economy is owned and run by companies and individuals, not the state. In Britain, capitalism is associated with the Conservative Party (called Conservatives or Tories), which tends to favour the status quo and is opposed to radical change.
Socialism:	the economy of a country is <b>partly</b> controlled by the state, and there is a belief that <b>wealth</b> should be <b>distributed</b> equally. In Britain, <b>socialists</b> are usually <b>left- wing</b> , but not <b>extremists</b> . Socialism is usually associated with the <b>Labour Party</b> , although the party has generally favoured a <b>moderate</b> form of socialism.
Liberalism:	this is a belief in personal and economic freedom, supporting gradual social and political change. In Britain, many <b>liberals</b> vote for <b>centre parties</b> , the most <b>prominent</b> being the <b>Liberal Democratic Party</b> .
Communism:	a communist system is based on common ownership of the means of production, and everyone is supposed to share the wealth it creates.

GLOSSARY			
ideology	a set of ideas that an economic or political system is based on <b>ideological</b> <i>adj</i>	distribute	share sth among a number of people <b>distribution</b> <i>n</i>
associated with sth/sb	connected with sth/sb associate v, association n	left-wing	strongly supporting the ideas of socialism OPP <b>right-wing</b> strongly supporting the ideas of capitalism ALSO <b>on the left</b> /
favour	support and agree with sth/sb favour n: be in favour (of sth/sb)		on the right
status quo	the existing situation: maintain the status quo	extremist	a person whose political views are generall not considered to be normal or reasonable
opposed to sth/sb	disagreeing strongly with sth/sb oppose v; opposition n. The Opposition is the main political party that is opposed	centre party	extreme adj OPP moderate n, adj a political party that is neither left-wing no right-wing: in the centre
	to the government.	prominent	important or famous
radical	in favour of complete political or social change	ownership	the state of owning something: public/private ownership
partly	in part but not completely SYN to some extent	means (of sth / doing sth)	
wealth	a large amount of money that a person or country owns <b>wealthy</b> adj		the means of production (= the materials and equipment needed to produce things); a means of transport; a means of identification / of contacting sb

#### SPOTLIGHT suffixes -ism and -ist The suffix -ism is often associated with beliefs and ideologies, and the suffix -ist is often used for both the person and adjective derived from these beliefs. capitalist capitalism socialist socialism communism communist extremist (BUT the adjective is extreme.) extremism conservatism conservative There are exceptions. liberalism liberal

## Mark the stress on these words. Use the 🐵 to help you.

ideology	ideological	capitalism	conservative	status quo	oppose
opposition	extremism	associate	association	distribute	distribution

#### Complete the table.

NOUN	PERSON	VERB	ADJECTIVE
deology		-	
conservativism		-	
socialism		-	
		-	liberal
	•	associate	
	extremist	-	
	-	distribute	-

#### 3 True or false? Write T or F, then change one word to make the false sentences true.

1	A capitalist economy is owned by the people and run by the state.	
2		 
3	Socialists believe that wealth should be shared equally.	 
4	A liberal believes in economic freedom and radical political change.	 
5	The Conservative Party in Britain believes in socialism.	 
6	Socialists believe that everyone should own the means of production.	 
7	Extremists tend to have moderate beliefs.	 
8	Capitalism and communism are ideologies with different beliefs	 

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the opposite meaning to the first half of the sentence.

- 1 He's left-wing, but she's
- 2 I'm poor, but he's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He's in favour of it, but she's
- 4 He wants change, but she prefers to maintain the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She has extreme views, but his are quite \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 They were in government, but now they're \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I believe in the equal \_\_\_\_\_\_ of wealth.
- 3 I'm in \_\_\_\_\_\_ of reducing the age at which young people can vote.
- 5 Do you believe that water should be in public or private \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 I don't \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Conservative Party with radical change.
- 5 Is it important to \_\_\_\_\_ the status quo?
- 6 The US is an extremely \_\_\_\_\_\_ country, and yet many people there are very poor.
- 8 Angela Merkel was the most \_\_\_\_\_\_ politician in Western Europe from 2000 to 2020.
- 9 It may not be completely the government's fault, but they are \_\_\_\_\_ responsible.
- 10 He may not be an actual member of the Labour Party, but does he have any \_\_\_\_\_\_ with it?

### 6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 What are the main political parties in your country? Are they right-wing, left-wing or centre parties?
- 2 Would you describe yourself as quite radical or fairly moderate in your views?
- 3 Do you generally favour the status quo?
- 5 Would you describe yourself as quite liberal in many of your views?
- 6 Do you usually carry any means of identification with you? .....

TEST YOURSELF

### Local government 51

## A Local election manifesto

Independent party manifesto for the local council elections. We will:

- stand up for the community and speak on behalf of residents on green issues.
- take complaints seriously and give neighbourhoods a say in local decisions.
- allocate better funding for youth projects and ensure they are properly managed.
- provide grants for voluntary organizations that help with the elderly and disabled.

manifesto	a written statement by a political party saying what they believe in and what	take sth/sb seriously	think that sth/sb is important and deserves respect
council	they intend to do the organization that provides local government in a city or area. A <b>councillor</b>	say	the right to give your opinion before a decision is made: give sb a say; have a say in sth
har and the second	is an elected member of the council.	allocate sth (to sb/sth)	give sth officially to sb/sth for a
stand up for sth/sb	support or defend sth/sb SYN <b>stick up for sb</b> inf	(for sth) ensure	particular purpose make sure that sth happens or
on behalf of sb / on sb's behalf	as the representative of sb; in order to help sb	grant	is definite a sum of money given, often by the
resident	a person who lives in a particular place. A <b>citizen</b> also means a person with the legal right to belong to a particular country.	voluntary	government, for a particular purpose (of work) done by people (called <b>volunteers</b> ) who choose to do it
green	connected with protecting the environment		without being paid. The voluntary sector refers to charity organizations

#### Complete the words.

1	rsdnt	4 co nc l	'				
	nsr	5ll c te	8	v		t	r
3	v l nt ry	6 m_n_ft_					
Or	ne word is incorrect in eac	h sentence. Cross it out and w	vrite the o	correc	t word	at the	e end.
1	I've read the manifest and d	idn't agree with any of it.					
2	They should have a say to w	hat happens in our city.					
3	Do you think the councillors	will make our ideas seriously?					
4	My sister's done a lot of wor						
5	She spoke on behalf for all o						
6	They should stand out for p	eople who don't have a say.					
7	We must assure that the cou						
8	omplete the sentences.	grand to help with the work.					
8	There are no local	in my town willing to spea	ak on my "				
8	There are no local	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar	ak on my "		·		
8 Co 1	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar a say in local politics.	ak on my nd the volu	untary			
8 Co 1 2	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We I don't really feel I	in my town willing to spea e rely solely ona a say in local politics. up for people and	ak on my nd the vol	untary	, their ide	eas serio	
8 Co 1 2	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We I don't really feel I Local politicians should Do you think you can get a	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar a say in local politics. up for people and from the council	ak on my nd the volu to make y	untary t	their ide	eas serio eener?	ously.
8 Co 1 2 3 4	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We I don't really feel I Local politicians should Do you think you can get a Christian has been a with a Danish passport.	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar a say in local politics. up for people and from the council in the UK for ten years, l	ak on my nd the volu to make y but he ren	untary 1 vour he nains a	their ide ome gre a Danish	eas serio eener?	ously.
8 Co 1 2 3 4	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We I don't really feel I Local politicians should Do you think you can get a Christian has been a with a Danish passport.	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar a say in local politics. up for people and from the council in the UK for ten years, l	ak on my nd the volu to make y but he ren	untary 1 vour he nains a	their ide ome gre a Danish	eas serio eener?	ously.
8 Co 1 2 3 4 5 6	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We I don't really feel I Local politicians should Do you think you can get a Christian has been a with a Danish passport. We need to take We can't touch the money:	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar a say in local politics. up for people and from the council in the UK for ten years, l issues more seriously if we it has already been	ak on my nd the volu to make y but he ren are really c 	untary vour he nains a concer al serv	their ide ome gre a Danish ned abo ices.	eas serio eener? n out the	ously.
8 Co 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	There are no local We don't have paid staff. We I don't really feel I Local politicians should Do you think you can get a Christian has been a with a Danish passport. We need to take We can't touch the money: Local government has to	in my town willing to spea e rely solely onar a say in local politics. up for people and from the council in the UK for ten years, l	ak on my nd the volu to make y but he ren are really c 	untary vour he nains a concer al serv	their ide ome gre a Danish ned abo ices.	eas serio eener? n out the	ously.

## **B** The role of the mayor

THE MAYOR OF LONDON is elected by any Londoners eligible to vote, and has quite a high profile. The mayor is the capital's spokesperson with a range of powers and duties. He or she sets the annual budget for the Greater London Authority, and plays a key role in the running and funding of various projects. The mayor heads the Mayor's Office for Policing and Crime who provide policing in the capital. The mayor also chairs Transport for London, and sits on various committees.



#### GLOSSARY

mayor eligible	the most important chosen or elected official in a town or city allowed by rules or laws to do or receive sth OPP <b>ineligible</b>
high profile	Sb/sth with a high profile gets attention and is easily noticed.
spokesperson	sb who speaks on behalf of a group or an organization
budget	the amount of money a person or an organization has to spend on sth: <b>set the budget</b> (= decide what the budget should be)
authority	the people or an organization who have the power to make decision or who have a particular area of responsibility
funding	money for a particular purpose
head	lead or be in charge of sth, e.g. a department or and organization <b>head</b> n
policing	the activity of keeping order in a place with police police v
chair	be in charge of a meeting: chair a meeting (see spotlight)
committee	a group of people who are chosen to make decisions or deal with a particular subject: a committee meeting: sit on a committee

#### SPOTLIGHT gender and people nouns

These titles can be used about a man or a woman.

- chair/chairperson/chairman
- spokesperson/spokesman
- mayor

The titles of **chairwoman**, **spokeswoman** and **mayoress** are also used but only refer to a woman.

#### 4 Circle the words which are possible. One, two or three words may be possible.

- The budget / mayor / funding is not sufficient.
- 2 The committee / authorities / policing have the power to change the rules.
- 3 My uncle is the spokesperson / mayoress / chairman.
- 4 The town has a high profit / policing / profile.
- 5 David Tomkins is the chairman / chairperson / chair of the transport committee.
- 6 We heard the spokesperson / spokesman / mayoress making a statement to the press.
- 7 He's the new mayor / budget / head.
- 8 She chairs / sits on / sets the committee.

#### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 We need a large force to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the city.
- 2 People under 21 are \_\_\_\_\_\_ to vote.
- 3 Mrs Bryant will \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting.
- 4 He was reported to the immigration
- 6 I sit on a number of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 He was elected last year.
- 8 She \_\_\_\_\_ the department.
- 9 It's a very high-\_\_\_\_\_ job.
- 10 We need more \_\_\_\_\_\_ for medical research.
- 5 She sets the annual

#### ABOUT YOUR TOWN/CITY Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you know what their duties are?



Institutions

## 52 Health care services

## A What is available?

#### HEALTH CARE: FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

- Do I need to register with a GP?
- How do I get referred to a specialist?
- Can I get free prescriptions?
- What if I suspect a doctor has made a mistake?
- How do I become a participant in a clinical trial?
- Can I get cosmetic surgery free of charge?
- Are all medical records confidential?

#### GLOSSARY

			have an idea that sb is guilty of sth, but
health care	the service of providing medical care	suspect	
register	put your name on an official list. You can also		without definite proof
(with/for sth)	enrol on a course or enrol at a school.	participant (in sth)	sb who is taking part in an activity or event
refer sb (to sth)	send sb to sb/sth for help, advice, etc.	clinical	related to the examination and treatment of
specialist	a person who is an expert in a particular area		patients and their illnesses: a clinical trial; clinical research
prescription	of work or study <b>specialist</b> <i>adj</i> an official piece of paper given to you by a doctor that enables you to get a particular	cosmetic surgery	medical treatment intended to improve sb's appearance
	medicine from a pharmacy prescribe v	free of charge	If sth is free of charge, it costs you nothing.
What if?	What would happen if?	confidential	meant to be kept secret: strictly confidential

#### Form five phrases from words in the box.

of charge free care clinical strictly surgery trial cosmetic confidential health

#### Complete the sentences.

- The patient has a rare illness, so she will need \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ treatment.
   All medical treatment has to be strictly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ between the doctor and patient.
- 3 Some cosmetic \_\_\_\_\_\_ is available on the National Health Service.
- 4 Go and see if the doctor will \_\_\_\_\_\_ something for that terrible cough.
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_ I need urgent health \_\_\_\_\_? Where should I go?
- 6 When I moved to Brighton, I had to \_\_\_\_\_\_ with a doctor near my home, and at the same time, I \_\_\_\_\_ on a free first-aid course.
- 7 I asked the doctor to \_\_\_\_\_ me to a \_\_\_\_\_ because of my long-term problem with my skin.
- 8 How many \_\_\_\_\_\_ are taking part in the clinical \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the new cancer drug?

#### 3 Complete the text.

When you move to a new area, in order to get free health (1) , you need to (2) with a doctor. For many common illnesses, the doctor will give you a (3) , which you collect from a pharmacy. They are free (4) if you are under 16, over 60, or pregnant. If you have a serious problem which involves seeing a (5) , you can get (6) to one by your doctor. Your medical 

 records are (7)
 , but you can see your own records by asking at your surgery. If you

 (8)
 that somebody has made a mistake with your treatment, you should speak to the

 medical staff first about your case before taking any further action.

#### 4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Can you answer the questions at the top of the page about your health service? Write your answers, or ask another learner.

TEST YOURSELF

	ere rushed off their took any notice of SPOTLIGHT staying in hospital
I felt miserable when I was admitted, but I had absolute confidence in the nursing staff and soon felt my old self again.	I felt the whole time that my well-being was the staff's prime concern. You can be admitted to hospital (= taken there and treated). After treatment, you are discharged (= given permission to leave). Then you go home to convalesce (= spend time recovering). SYN recuperate; convalescence n SYN recuperation
ILOSSARY	
edicatedworking hard at sth because it is important to youformtell sb about sth: keep sb informed (about sth)	absolutetotal and completeselfthe type of person you are: my old self; my real selfwarda room or an area in a hospital for patients with the same type of condition
e rushed off your feet be extremely busy with too many things to do	junior having a low rank in an organization or profession OPP senior
ake (no) notice of sb/sth pay (no) attention to sb/sth	well-being general health and happiness
very unhappy or uncomfortable	prime main; most important: a prime concern
Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers ma	av be possible.
1 I was rushed off my foot / feet.	6 They kept / made me informed.
2 She took <i>no/any</i> notice of me.	7 They were junior / senior doctors.
3 I was <i>admitted / discharged</i> to the cancer ward	
4 He's back to his old self / self.	9 Patients need rest and recuperation / well-being.
<ul> <li>5 I need to convalesce / recuperate.</li> </ul>	10 The staff are <i>admitted / dedicated</i> to patient care.
s meet to conversely recuperate.	
Replace the underlined words with a word of	r phrase that keeps the same meaning.
<ol> <li>They didn't pay any attention to me.</li> </ol>	They took
2 They told me what was happening.	They kept
3 I was incredibly busy.	I was rushed
4 That's part of his true character.	That's part of his
5 She needs to spend time getting better.	She needs to
6 I felt really unhappy and uncomfortable.	I felt
7 I'm worried about his general health and happi	
8 The staff work hard and care a lot.	The staff are
Complete the sentences with a suitable word	
1 When you are to hospital, you	
2 In hospital, patients are always	
3 Staff in hospitals are off their fe	
	is their concern.
5 There are more senior doctors than	
<ul><li>5 There are more senior doctors than</li><li>6 Most patients have confidence</li></ul>	in the second beaution
<ul> <li>5 There are more senior doctors than</li> <li>6 Most patients have confidence</li> <li>7 Recuperation (or) usually take</li> </ul>	es place at home.
<ul> <li>5 There are more senior doctors than</li> <li>6 Most patients have confidence</li> <li>7 Recuperation (or) usually take</li> </ul>	es place at home. be from hospital with all the medicines you

TEST YOURSELF

Institutions 113

## 53 The police

## Police procedures

An arrest is when a police constable detains someone suspected of an offence. In the UK, the police can arrest you if they have a valid arrest warrant (issued by a magistrate), or if they have reasonable grounds for suspecting you have committed or are about to commit an offence. You are cautioned and then taken to a police station as soon as possible. Once you are in custody, you have the right to legal advice from a solicitor. If there is sufficient evidence, the police will charge you, and you will then appear in court where a magistrate will decide whether you should be remanded in custody or released on bail.

If your case goes to trial, you will either be convicted of the crime, or found innocent and acquitted. If you are found guilty, you will be sentenced by a judge.



#### SPOTLIGHT the police

A **police officer** is any member of the **police force**. In the UK, a (**police**) **constable** (abbreviated as **PC**) is an officer of the lowest **rank** (= position in an organization). Above the rank of constable is the **sergeant**, the **inspector**, and so on. The **chief constable** is the head of each regional police force.

#### GLOSSARY

GLUSSART			
procedure detain	the usual or correct way for doing sth keep sb in an official place, e.g. a police	custody	the state of being in prison while waiting for trial: <i>in custody</i>
	station, and prevent them from leaving: be detained in custody	solicitor	a lawyer who gives legal advice and prepares legal documents
suspect sb of (doing) sth	believe that sb is guilty of sth, though you do not have proof. A person is a <b>suspect</b> .	charge sb (with sth)	say officially you believe sb has committed a crime
offence formal valid	a crime: commit an offence legally or officially acceptable OPP invalid	remand sb	send sb away from court until their trial: be remanded in custody
warrant	a legal document signed by a judge that allows the police to do sth. A <b>search</b> <b>warrant</b> is a warrant to search sb's property.	bail	money left with a court of law to ensure that a prisoner will return for their trial. A judge can either <b>grant bail</b> or <b>refuse bail</b> .
issue	give or say sth to sb officially: issue a warrant/visa	convict sb (of sth)	say officially in court that sb is guilty of
magistrate	an official who acts as a judge in the lowest courts of law	acquit sb (of sth)	a crime state formally that a person is not guilty of a crime
grounds (for sth/ doing sth) (usually pl)	a reason for sth	sentence sb (to sth)	(of a judge) tell sb who has been found guilty of a crime what their punishment
be about to (do sth) caution sb formal	be going to do sth very soon warn sb officially that anything they say may be used against them as evidence in court		will be: He <b>sentenced</b> him <b>to</b> two years in prison.

	etain istody	suspect v solicitor	suspect n remand	offence		invalid acquit	magistrate constable	
w	rite the m	issing prepos	ition.					
1			police custo	dv	4	convict som	eone	an offence
2			doing som		5		one	
3			an offe		6			five year
3 6	omplete ti	he phrases wi	th suitable wor	ds.				
1					4	remand som	eone in	
2		n			5		bail OR refu	
3		a search			6			
4) W	rite your a	answers.						
1		es an arrest war	rant?					
2	Who deta	ins someone?						
3	Who offer	rs legal advice?		-				
4		le to grant bail	?					
5		manded in cust						
6		ions someone?						
7	Who has a	a lower rank that	an a sergeant?					
8		ove a sergeant	-					
9		e head of a regi						
10		ences someone						
	omplete th	ne sentences.						
1			in the	police force.				
			allows the polic		ome	one's propert	V.	
2	After som	eone has appe	ared before a ma					
2	III CUSIOU		v strict	when	the	y arrest some	one, otherwise	solicitors may arg
2 3 4								
2 3 4 5	Police hav that an ar	rest is not	•		tha	at this person	has committed	an

 A pointed a gun at another driver and was, possibly, (1)
 to use it. A young police

 (2)
 arrested the man, before taking him to the police station, where he was

 (3)
 . Once he was in (4)
 , the (5)

 (3)
 . Once he was in (4)
 , the (5)

 (7)
 him with several (8)
 , including the illegal possession of a weapon.

 The man will now appear before a (9)
 tomorrow morning, where he hopes to be

 (10)
 bail. However, his case will almost certainly go to trial, and if he is

 (11)
 , he could be (12)
 to a lengthy period in prison.

TEST YOURSELF

### Prisons 54

### A The prison system

n important element of the criminal justice' system is punishment for breaking the law. Since the abolition of capital punishment in the UK, imprisonment has been the most serious punishment. It satisfies our need for justice<sup>2</sup> and longer prison sentences are meant to be a deterrent. Furthermore, criminals who are locked up are no threat to society, and rehabilitation programmes in prison give criminals a chance to change their behaviour. However, the current system is in crisis. More people are being imprisoned, a significant percentage reoffend, and for some criminals, prison is simply regarded as an occupational hazard. Is it just our way of taking revenge? If so, can we justify its continued existence?

mannen

#### GLOSSARY abolition the official ending of a law, system or institution abolish v capital punishment punishment by death imprisonment the act of putting sb in prison imprison v SYN lock sb up inf iustice 1 the legal system that punishes people who have committed crimes 2 the fair treatment of people deterrent a thing that makes sb less likely to do sth deter v rehabilitation the process of helping people to live a normal life after they have been ill or in prison rehabilitate v crisis a period of great difficulty and uncertainty: be in crisis reoffend formal commit a crime again. A person is a reoffender. regard sth/sb as sth think about sth/sb in a particular way a risk or a danger. An occupational hazard is a hazard risk that is part of a particular job. action you take to punish sb because they made revenge you suffer: take revenge (on sb) (for sth) show that sth is right or fair justification n; justify justifiable adj

#### darling the stress on these words. Use the 📾 to help you

at re	nderline the stres polish habilitate azard	abolition rehabilitation justify		capital punishment reoffender justification	deterrent occupational justifiable	
-			ising the ser	ntence beginnings on t		
1	He's been impriso			He's been locked		
2	She thinks of me a		G	She regards	*	
3	They hang people		S.	They have	*	2
4	Can we justify the			Is the prison system		
5	He was imprisone			He got life	•	
6	It changed after th		e law.	It changed after the		
7	It's one of the risks			lt's an	•	
8	Do many people of		-	Are there many	?	
9	She wants him to	and the set of the set of	e did to her.	Terrestering and		
10	It's a period of gre	at difficulty.		At the moment we are	in	•
	omplete the word	is in the questi	ions			
1	Do you believe yo			criminals?		
2	Why do so many i	people r	and	go back to prison?		
3	Do you think prise	on is an effective	d	7		
4	Do you believe in					
5				n your criminal justice sys	tem?	
6	Is there ever any i	0	for taking r	on some	one who has harme	dvou?
7	Is the prison syste				one who has harme	a you.
8				system? In your view, doe	s it represent true i	
0	Do you believe in			system in your view, doe	sin represent true )	
4 A	BOUT YOU Write	vour answers	to Exercise	3, or ask another stud	lent.	
	TEST YOURSELF					
-	5					

## **B** A different system

GRENDON is not a typical institution within the prison system. It is constructed exclusively on the principles of group therapy, and operates more as a community than a prison for offenders. The inmates are all serving long sentences, and a high proportion are guilty of violent crime. Yet the prison is different from the normal system in almost every way, with an absence of physical force and segregation. The prison is divided into five self-contained communities, the prisoners are not confined in cells, and decisions are only taken with their consent.

#### SPOTLIGHT self

Before nouns and adjectives, self-means 'of, to or by yourself'.

- Self-contained communities are able to exist without outside help.
- On a self-catering holiday, you do the cooking yourself.
- Self-assessment is judging your own progress.

GLOSSARY		Territoria de	
institution	a large important organization with a particular purpose. An <b>institute</b> is similar but usually for education or a particular profession.	segregation	the policy of separating people of different sex, race, religion, etc, and in prison, by the type of crime committed <b>segregate</b> v
exclusively	completely; with nothing else: We rely <b>exclusively</b> on aid.	confine sb/sth in sth	keep sb/sth within an enclosed area confinement n: solitary confinement
principle	a law, rule or theory that sth is based on		(= a punishment in which a prisoner is kept
group therapy	the use of group discussion for the treatment of a physical or mental problem or illness	cell	alone in a separate cell) a lockable room for prisoners in a prison or police station
inmate	one of the people living in an institution such as a prison	consent	agreement about sth by common consent with
proportion	a part or share of the whole amount or number		everyone's agreement; by mutual consent with the agreement of both of the sides involved

#### 5 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- Solitary confinement / consent is part of the punishment.
- 2 The prisons / cells are quite small.
- 3 The management course is based on self-catering / assessment.
- 4 I think the trip requires the parents' agreement / consent.
- 5 The prison had to segregate / confine the men and women in separate cells.
- 6 It is based exclusively / partly on the original model.
- 7 Most of the inmates/ prisoners are female.
- 8 Prisons have similarities with many other institutions/institutes.

#### 6 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- Do they discuss each other's problems? ~ Yes, it's a type of group \_\_\_\_\_\_.
   Do they separate men from women? ~ Yes, there's a policy of \_\_\_\_\_\_.
   Do you do the cooking yourselves? ~ Yes, it's all self-\_\_\_\_\_.
   Are they locked up every night? ~ Yes, and the \_\_\_\_\_\_are very small.
  - Are they locked up every hight
- 5 Did everyone agree with the change?
- 6 Are many of the men violent?
- 7 Did you both agree to the deal?
- 8 They want prisoners to work together.
- ~ Yes, The system is based on the \_\_\_\_\_ of teamwork. ~ Yes, he was in solitary \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, it was by \_\_\_\_\_ consent.

~ Yes, quite a high \_\_\_\_\_.

- 9 Was he kept in a cell on his own?10 Do they rely on charities?
- ~ No, not \_\_\_\_\_. They get some money from the government.

## 7 ABOUT YOU What do you think of this prison? Is it likely to be more successful than a normal prison? Write your answers, or ask another student.

## 55 The armed forces

### The US Military

comprises five branches in its field of operations: the army, the navy, the air force, the marine corps and the coast guard, all under civilian authority. More than 1.35 million people serve in the professional



tank

full-time military, with a further 800,000 in the reserve army. (There is no longer compulsory military service, though men aged 18-25 must register for it if the need arises.) The US military distinguishes between enlisted personnel, who make up about 85% of the armed forces and carry out fundamental operations such as combat and administration; and officers, who manage and supervise operations. The range of jobs is vast, but encompasses such diverse activities as running a hospital, commanding a tank, flying military aircraft, programming computers, maintaining weapon systems, etc.



#### GLOSSARY

GEOSSAAA			
the military	a country's army, navy and air force SYN <b>the armed forces</b> ; <b>military</b> adj	enlisted	(especially US English) relating to members of the permanent armed forces
branch	a part of a large organization: <b>a branch</b> of a bank		below officer rank. <b>Enlist</b> is to join the armed forces.
operation	an organized activity, often involving the military or police	armed fundamental	carrying a gun or other weapon <b>arms</b> n (pl) central and forming the necessary basis
guard	a person or group of people who protect sth/sb <b>guard</b> v	combat	of sth fighting between forces: armed/unarmed
civilian	not belonging to the armed forces. A person is a <b>civilian</b> .		combat (= fighting with/without guns, bombs, etc.)
serve	do useful work: <b>serve your country /</b> in the army, etc.	vast	extremely large: the vast majority; vast numbers; a vast amount
the reserve(s)	an extra force that performs part-time duties and is available if needed	encompass formal diverse	include sth within an area or area of activity different from each other and of various
compulsory	If sth is <b>compulsory</b> , you have to do it. SYN <b>obligatory</b> ; OPP <b>optional</b>	command	kinds <b>diversity</b> <i>n</i> be in charge of sb. A person can also <b>be in</b>
military service	time spent serving in the military, especially as a compulsory period for young people	aircraft	command (of sth/sb). any vehicle that can fly and carry goods or passengers
distinguish between A and B	recognize a difference between two people or things SYN <b>differentiate</b> (between) A and B, make a distinction (between A and B)	weapon	an object such as a knife, gun or bomb that is used for fighting: <i>nuclear/chemical</i> <i>weapons</i> ; <i>a deadly/lethal weapon</i> (= that can kill sb)

#### SPOTLIGHT comprise, consist of, make up

These verbs describe the way in which something is formed.

- The group comprises / consists of / is made up of 30 people.
- When you mention some of the parts first, use make up or comprise.
- Men make up / comprise the majority of the group.

#### Answer the questions. Use the 🌚 to help you.

- 1 The pronunciation of the letter 'a' is the same as in **park** in five of the cases underlined. Which one is different? <u>armed</u> branch command encompass guard vast
- 2 Which three underlined letters are pronounced the same as in bit, and which three are pronounced the same as in bet?

civilian deadly differentiate encompass enlisted weapon

3 The pronunciation of the letter 'i' is the same as in **bit** in nine of the cases underlined. Which three are different? civilian comprise distinguish diverse enlisted military missile obligatory

#### 2 Use word(s) from the box to form nine compound words or phrases.

#### Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that has a similar meaning.

	-	
1	To run an army requires a very large amount of money.	
2	The decision will be taken by the armed forces.	
3	A brigade is made up of approximately 5,500 men and women.	
4	The right to self-defence is one of their central beliefs.	
5	There was very little armed fighting.	
6	The men are from very different backgrounds.	
7	Six soldiers were on duty to protect the camp.	
8	I wanted to serve my country, so I joined as a soldier.	
9	This knife is a lethal weapon.	
10	They don't recognize a difference between men and women.	
11	The work includes many different tasks and responsibilities.	
12	Is military service obligatory?	
13	A brigadier is a high-ranking officer, and is in charge of a large group of soldiers.	
14	Ensuring the safety of the ships will be a large organized military activity.	

#### Complete the text with suitable words.

The British (1)	forces is (2)	of the army, the navy and
the air force. As head of sta	ate, the Queen is theoretically in (3)	of the armed
forces, but in practice that	is the job of the British Prime Minister.	Approximately 146,000 men and women
	in the professional armed forces (oft	
further 36,500 in the (5)	. The armed fo	rces are also supported by a number of
(6)	agencies owned by the Ministry of [	Defence. The navy is the
(7)	of the armed forces which is response	
(8)	, which (9)	four Trident nuclear missile submarines.

#### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Has your country got a professional military?
- 2 Do you have a reserve army?
- 3 Do you have military service?
- 4 Are the police usually armed in your country?
- 5 Have you ever:
  - stood next to a tank?
     flown in a helicopter?

     owned or used a deadly weapon?
     dropped from a parachute?

     been in a professional army?
     done military service?



56 News headlines

Headlines	Meaning				
Arms deal probe	arms formal weapons, especially used by the armed forces deal an agreement, especially in business probe an investigation into sth probe v				
Mother's plea to kidnappers	a plea (for sth) formal an important and emotional request kidnapper sb who takes a person away illegally and keeps them as a prisoner, usually in order to get money (called a ransom) kidnap v				
Government <b>pledges</b> more <b>aid</b>	<b>pledge</b> formally promise to give or do sth <b>pledge</b> <i>n</i> <b>aid</b> money, food, etc, that is sent to a country to help them				
Senate urges caution	urge advise or try hard to persuade sb to do sth				
Bid to axe rail chief	<ul> <li>bid an effort to do sth or get sth bid v</li> <li>axe remove sb from their job; get rid of a service, system, etc:</li> <li>Bus company plans to axe part of rural service.</li> <li>chief the most important or one of the most important people in a company, often used in job titles: a police chief</li> </ul>				
Minister vows to quit	<b>minister</b> a senior member of a government who is in charge of a government department or a branch of one <b>vow</b> make a formal and serious promise to do sth <b>vow</b> <i>n</i>				
Bomb blast wrecks factory	(bomb) blast an explosion wreck destroy sth wreck n				
Boost for voters	boost sth that helps or encourages people boost v				
Go-ahead for road scheme	go-ahead formal permission to do sth scheme an official plan or system for doing sth				
IMG cease trading	cease formal stop (sth) happening or existing. A ceasefire is an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.				
Doctor cleared of negligence	clear sb (of sth) prove that sb is innocent of doing sth wrong				
Injury blow for United	blow shock or disappointment				
New flood alert	alert a warning				
Police <b>foil</b> bomb <b>plot</b>	foil prevent a plan from succeeding plot a secret plan by people to do sth wrong or illegal SYN conspiracy; plot v				
PM rules out referendum	rule sth out reject the possibility of sth				
Lords back hunting ban	the Lords (OR the House of Lords) in Britain, the second and higher part of Parliament, after <i>the House of Commons</i> , whose members are not elected by the people of the country				
	back give help or support to sb/sth backing n hunting the act of killing wild animals for food or sport				

### SPOTLIGHT headline words

Certain words often appear in newspaper headlines because they are very short, e.g. *bid*, *plea*, *quit*. Other words give stories a more dramatic effect, e.g. *blast*, *boost*.

Us	e the 🌚 to		you.											
1	plea plede		********				5	axe						
2	boost blow						6		sche		********			
3	pledge ah						7		ne c <u>ea</u>					
4	pr <u>o</u> be v <u>ov</u>	V					8	minis	ter cor	spiracy				
G	ood news o	r bac	I news fo	r the p	peo	ple in the	hea	dlines	? Write	G or B.				
1	Further blo	w for	house buy	ers		5	PM	gets b	acking	from par	liament	for new r	ail system	m
2	Company a	xes c	hairman			6			for man	ager				*******
3	Doctors giv	-	o-ahead		******	7			armers					
	for new dru	ıg				8	Arn	ny foils	crimina	al plot				
4	Company o	eases	operation	IS										
M	atch 1–10 w	vith a	-j.											
1	vow				a	secret pla	n							
2	plea				b	official pla	n							
3	bid				c	request								
4	conspiracy				d	explosion								
5	blow				e	investigat	ion							
6	alert				f	promise								
7	probe				g	warning								
8	scheme				h	disappoin	tmer	nt						
9	blast				1	agreemer	nt							
10	deal				j	attempt								
	Permission Company <u>r</u> Help and en Latest statis Men who to Senior men Motorcyclis PM rejects r	nanag ncour stics a ook c nbers t four the po	aing direct agement shock and hild dema of the gov nd innocer ossibility o	or big disap nd mo vernment of ch f furthe	ban poir ney ent s hild's er ta	ntment for for her retu strongly ad s death ax cuts.	the e	delay		ximum	of six v	vords fo	or each	
1	An explosic Senators re							In for		untries				
4	Senators re	jectil	ie possibil	ity of f	nore	e money al	iu ne			unines				
3	Shareholde	ers att	empt to fo	rce the	e cha	airman to r	esign	1						
4	Officers pre	event	a secret pl	an to e	esca	pe from pri	son			1				
5	Attempt to	chan	ge law on	killing	wild	d animals fo	or spo	ort						
-	There are n	ew w	arnings ab	out th	e da	angers of ce	ertain	food		******				

# Writing for a newspaper

## WRITING A NEWS STORY

The first thing to consider is the type of story you are writing and the type of publication you are writing for: this will determine the style of writing.

Here are a few guidelines:

- 1 When you look at your blank screen, imagine your reader and what will interest them most.
- 2 If it is a specialist publication, you can assume a greater knowledge on the part of the reader. If it is a serious newspaper, you can also use longer sentences. But remember that space is the most precious commodity in a print newspaper; long sentences take up space. Avoid difficult words and long sentences, especially in mass-market publications, but don't talk down to your readers.
- 3
  - Your opening has to engage the reader instantly and summarize what the story is about. A good introduction will state why the story is being written and grab the reader's attention. This sets the tone for the rest of the piece.
- 4 Quotes are good - they add colour and personal experience - but if you are citing from specific sources, keep it short, otherwise the story will lose pace and direction. Sometimes the quote has to be there to provide precision - when the actual words are crucial to the message.

GLOSSARY			
publication blank specialist assume	a book, magazine, etc. that is available to the public; the act of printing a book, etc. or sth in a newspaper empty, with nothing written on it having or involving knowledge in a particular area of work or study think or accept that sth is true but without	talk down to sb instantly grab sb's attention tone	speak to sb as if they were less important or intelligent than you immediately <b>instant</b> adj get sb's attention or interest (of a piece of writing) the general character and attitude of sth: <b>set the tone</b>
on the part of sb / on sb's part precious	proof <b>assumption</b> <i>n</i> experienced or done by sb valuable or important	quote inf	(abbreviation of <b>quotation</b> ) the exact words that sb uses. If you <b>quote</b> sb, you repeat the exact words that sb uses. <b>cite</b> v formal
commodity formal take up sth	a thing that is useful or has a useful quality fill or use an amount of space or time	otherwise	used to state what the result would be if sth didn't happen or sth weren't true
mass	affecting or involving a large number of people: <i>mass-market books, mass</i> <i>unemployment</i> . A mass is a large amount or quantity of sth.	pace precision	the speed at which sth happens the quality of being exact, accurate and careful SYN <b>accuracy</b>

#### SPOTLIGHT opening

**Opening** (n) has three meanings:

- 1 the beginning or first part of sth (as above): The story has a strange opening.
- 2 an act of making sth open:
- I went to the opening of the Picasso exhibition.
- 3 a small hole that sb/sth can pass though:
- There's a small opening in the wall where you can see the castle.
- Opening can also be used as an adjective.
- My opening sentence was a bit too long.



TEST YOURSELF

## 58 Politics in practice

## A A referendum

In 2016 there was a referendum in the UK concerning membership of the EU: to remain in the EU, or to leave the EU. The debate divided the nation and created a huge amount of conflict, even within families. Eventually, in a very closely-fought contest, there was a narrow majority for 'leave' (51.9% versus 48.1%). The turnout was high (just over 72% of the electorate voted), but that still meant that the outcome was decided by only 37% of the total electorate, and some have questioned, therefore, to what extent the result really represents the democratic will of the people. The British government then spent three years trying to negotiate an agreement that the British parliament could support.

GLOSSARY	
referendum	an occasion when all the people of a country can vote on an important issue
concerning	about sth; involving sb/sth SYN regarding
debate	an argument or a discussion expressing different opinions
divide	cause disagreement division n
conflict	a situation in which people, groups or countries are involved in a serious disagreement
closely	used to indicate that two or more things differ by only a small amount: <i>a closely-fought contest</i> (= a contest won or likely to be won by a small amount)
contest	a struggle to gain control of sth
majority	the number of votes by which one party wins an election, a discussion, etc: <i>a narrow majority</i> , e.g. 52% OPP <i>a clear majority</i> , e.g. 66%
turnout	the number of people who vote in a particular election
electorate	the people in a country or an area who have the right to vote
will	what sb wants to happen in a particular situation: <i>the will of the people</i>
negotiate	try to reach an agreement by formal discussion <b>negotiation</b> <i>n</i>

#### Underline the stress on the following words. Use the 10 to help you.

concerning	debate	conflict	divide	contest
turnout	negotiate	referendum	electorate	

#### 2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

1	The politician refused to answer questions on the subject of his private life.	-
2	They managed to get just over 50% of the votes.	
3	The issue has caused disagreement across the country.	
4	The result represented about 70% of the people who have a right to vote.	
5	The number of people who vote is often low in local elections.	
6	Both sides will have to discuss this to reach an agreement.	

#### 3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 There was a \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the UK in 1973 on membership of the Common Market.
- 2 If banning cars is the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the people, politicians may have to go along with it.
- 3 The two countries have been in \_\_\_\_\_\_ for months now, but nothing has been decided.
- 4 There has also been a long \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the media in Scotland about Scottish independence.
- 5 The two parties are very \_\_\_\_\_ matched, so it will be an interesting \_\_\_\_\_ between them.
- 6 There has been serious \_\_\_\_\_\_ in England for decades over membership of the EU. People have very strong and different opinions.

#### What can you remember? Cover the text and answer the questions.

- 1 What took place in June 2016 in the UK?
- 2 What was it about?
- 3 How did the people react to this event?
- 4 What was the result?
- 5 How many people voted?
- 6 What happened after that?



124 News and current affairs

## **B** Coalition government

In a parliamentary system, a coalition government is one in which two or even multiple political parties cooperate, thus reducing the dominance of any one party. Broadly speaking, there are two models. The first is to form a coalition before the election. The second is to form a coalition after the election, retaining a party's core philosophy and ideals, but then negotiating with other parties to form an administration that can govern the country. Advocates say that coalition government leads to consensus-based politics, which produces compromise, while opponents say that no-one gets what they voted for.

#### GLOSSARY coalition a government formed by two or more parties working together multiple involving many different people or things work together with sb else in order to achieve sth cooperate (with sb) dominance the fact of being more powerful or important than sb else dominant adj core the most important or central part of sth philosophy a set of beliefs or an attitude to life that guides sb's behaviour legally control a country or its people and be govern responsible for laws, etc. advocate a person who supports or speaks in favour of sb/ sth, especially a public plan of action advocate v consensus an opinion that all members of a group agree with [C] an agreement made between two people or compromise groups in which each side gives up some of the things they want so that both sides are happy at the end; [U] the act of reaching a compromise; compromise v

#### 5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the 🔤 to help you. 1 coalition 5 philosophy coal consensus

2	govern	dominance		6	cooperate	soon	********
3	advocate n	advocate v		7	compr <u>o</u> mise	consensus	
4	adv <u>o</u> cate	philosophy		8	compromise	dominant	
C	omplete thes	e words.					
1	qov		4	comp		<b>7</b> coa	1

#### 6

1	gov	4	comp	7	coal
2	соор	5	phi	8	dom
3	advo	6	mul	9	cons

#### Answer the questions.

8

1	What is required for a <i>coalition</i> ?
2	
3	If you govern a country, how much control do you have?
4	If you advocate something, are you for it or against it?
5	
6	
C (	omplete the sentences. It's a complicated government policy and will involve governmental agencies.
2	It's not easy to give up certain things you want and accept certain things you don't, but in the end we all have to sometimes.
3	Whoever gets a majority will have the opportunity to the country.
4	
5	If we don't with other groups, we'll never achieve anything.
6	
7	The prime minister has always been a strong of personal choice and freedom.

8 If no single party gets a majority, there will have to be some type of \_\_\_\_\_\_ to form a government.

TEST YOURSELF



## Extinction Rebellion protest blocks the Strand

During the Extinction Rebellion\* demonstrations in April, the police arrested over 1,000 people and charged 53 in connection with the climate change protests across five UK cities. In response to these arrests, the group staged another demonstration yesterday outside the Royal

Courts of Justice. They occupied much of the Strand, and by erecting barriers and sitting in the road, they effectively blocked the entire area for almost eight hours. No arrests were made and the police have recognised their right to protest. Nevertheless, the Chief Constable has made it clear that the police do have a duty to uphold the rule of law, and cannot tolerate significant disruption to communities across the capital.

Meanwhile, the group has **called on activists** to participate in a summer of 'creative acts of civil **disobedience**', which they hope will force government into taking action.



\**Extinction Rebellion* is a political **movement** with a **mission** to **avert** climate catastrophe and **minimise** the risk of ecological collapse, and with it the extinction of **human beings** altogether. They aim to do this through non-violent **resistance**.

#### GLOSSARY

GLOJJANT			
rebellion [U, C] protest [U, C]	opposition to authority by an organized group the expression of strong disagreement with	tolerate	allow sb to do sth that you do not agree with SYN <b>put up with sth</b>
	or opposition to sth. A person is a <b>protester</b> . <b>protest</b> v	disruption	a situation in which it is difficult for sth to continue in the normal way
demonstration	a public meeting or march at which people	call on sb to do sth	ask or demand that sb do sth
	show they are protesting against sth or supporting sth. A person is a <b>demonstrator</b> .	activist	a person who works to achieve political or social change
	demonstrate v	disobedience	refusal or failure to obey
in connection with sth/sb	for reasons connected with sth/sb	movement	a group of people who share the same ideas or aims
stage	organize and take part in action that needs careful planning	mission	particular work that you feel it is your duty to do
erect	put sth in position and make it stand <i>upright</i> (= in a vertical position)	avert	prevent sth bad or dangerous from happening
barrier	an object like a fence that stops people moving forward	minimize	reduce sth, especially sth bad, to the lowest possible level
entire	including everything, everyone or every part	being	a living creature: <i>a human being</i>
uphold	support sth that you think is right and make sure it continues to exist	resistance [U, sing]	opposition to or dislike of an idea, plan, etc; refusal to obey

#### SPOTLIGHT occupy

Occupy has several meanings:

- 1 enter a place in a large group and take control of it (as above)
- 2 fill or use a space, an area or an amount of time: The bed occupies half the room.
- 3 live or work in a room, building, etc: We occupy the 12th floor of the building.

<b>Underline</b>	he stress on t	nese words. Use the	to help you.			
rebellion	minimise	protester	uphold	demonstrators	avert	
erect	occupy	demonstration	meanwhile	protest n	disobedience	
Circle the w	ords which su	iggest public prote	st.			
demonstratio						
uphold	disobe	dience tolerate	resistance	e occupy		
True or fals	e? Write T or F	If false, explain wh	v.			
		ou make it stand upric				
		aw, they are trying to				
	ert an accident, y			***************************************		
		, you stop it happenin	a.			
	g which is occur		5		***************************************	
		e to prevent someone	from going some	where.		
		g, you reduce it slight				
		no is demonstrating ag				
			,			
Replace the	underlined w	ord(s) with a word	or phrase that ke	eps the same mea	ning.	
1 The prote	sters pulled dow	wn the metal fences th	hat the police had	put across the road.	-	
2 There wa	s even greater re	efusal to obey today at	the march.			
3 The peop	le who are worl	king to get political ch	ange are meeting	in the square.		
		d considerable proble				
5 There cou	uld be a lot of or	position to this plan.				
6 A new po	6 A new political group has formed around concerns about hate crimes.					
7 The gove	rnment has aske	d people to cooperat	e with them at this	s time of crisis.		
8 We're org	anizing a march	through the city to pr	rotest about cuts to	o public spending.		
9 The whol	e village is oppo	sed to the council pla	n for more new ho	omes.		
10 The local	community wo	n't put up with any mo	ore disruption.			
One word it	missing in an	ch contonco What	a la su d sub sus s			
	_	ch sentence. What i	-			
		man at the demonstra				
		ch have called activist				
		ion will cause problem				
		ew the protesters in w				
		an employment agen				
		potential danger to the				
		were carrying banne	-	it climate change.		
		to avert during the pi		-		
		vith our politicians con				
it was the	protesters who	the barriers in order to	skeep themselves	sale.		
Complete ti	ne texts				10000	
complete ti	ie texts.		A group	of (7)	have been	
conomic instah	ility in the coun	try has led to the		ng in front of Parliame		
mergence of a	new protest (1)	called	d am in F	he (8) Hyde Park, and led to a	march towards	
ight to Survive	Their (2)	is to bring		ent Square with (9)		
bout political c	hange through	civil (3)		signs saying 'Meat is		
acts such as ma	arching, sitting in	the road or strikes. An	1.3	ur heart, not your ston		
ne same time, t	hey wish to (4)	any	(10)	on Mem	bers of Parliament	
		and they are aware th	10 0000 1	aws ensuring that ani	mals have equal	
are rarely (6)		government build by the authorities.		ith human (11)	, and	

are rarely (6) by the authorities.

they are planning to (12) further demonstrations in the coming weeks.

AA

a.a.a

TEST YOURSELF

## 60 Disasters

## A An earthquake

## Earthquake hits Pakistan

Last night a sudden earthquake struck a region in Kashmir, and reports suggest that hundreds lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept. Thousands are now being evacuated, but there are fears that many are still trapped inside their homes, so the death toll could rise significantly. The exact scale of the damage will not be known for several days or even weeks, but it has already been considerable, and reports are coming in of numerous tremors in the surrounding area. The next 48 hours will be crucial, not only to rescue more people but also to maintain supplies of water and electricity.

#### GLOSSARY hit happen suddenly and have a harmful or damaging effect on sth/sb SYN strike (of a building) fall down or fall in suddenly collapse move sb away from a dangerous place evacuate evacuation n If sb is trapped, they are inside sth and cannot trap getout. the number of people killed in a disaster, death toll accident, etc. significantly to a degree that is important or easily noticed significant adj: a significant effect/ improvement the size of sth, especially when compared with scale other things considerable very large in size or amount numerous formal existing in large numbers tremor An earth tremor is a small earthquake. take sb from a dangerous place to safety rescue SYN save; rescue n make sth continue at a certain level or standard maintain

## The pronunciation of the underlined letters is the same in all but one example. Which one? Use the ep to help you.

collapse significant numerous evacuate considerable tremor

#### Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

1	Many buildings fell to the ground during the earthquake.	
2	We've had many reports of possible earth tremors.	
3	The villagers have all been moved from the village.	
4	There are people who are inside their homes and cannot get out.	
5	Scientists believe the hurricane will reach and attack Florida within 24 hours.	
6	The number of people killed could be as high as 2,000.	
7	The storm has caused a great deal of damage.	
8	Many of those trapped were taken to safety by the helicopter.	
9	Experts will try to assess the <u>relative size</u> of the problem when all the facts are known.	
10	The situation has become guite a lot worse with the continuing bad weather.	

#### 3 Complete the text.

When an earthquake (1)	ngs will (2)					
and people will be (3)	inside. As soon as the immediate danger has passed, the first job					
be the (4)	of people from the area, and to (5)	any	one still in danger. While			
the government will send	in supplies of food, it is very difficult	to (6)	a supply of clean drinking			
water. There is also the risk	of further earth (7)	, which can have a	(8) effect on			
the level of damage. It may	y be weeks later before anyone can re	eally judge the (9)	of			
the disaster, and what the	final death (10) mig	ht be.				



## **B** Fire

The Glasgow School of Art has been devastated yet again by a huge fire. More than 120 firefighters tackled the blaze, which began on Friday night and spread to a concert hall next door. There were no reported casualties, but police evacuated 27 people from nearby properties as a precaution. At the moment, there is no suspicion the fire was started deliberately, but the intense heat is preventing fire officers from getting in to assess the damage. First Minister, Nicola Sturgeon, praised the courage of the firefighters who fought to save the building.

GLOSSARY	
devastate firefighter	destroy or damage sth badly <b>devastation</b> <i>n</i> a person whose job is to stop fires, working for the <b>fire brigade</b>
tackle	make an effort to deal with a difficult problem or situation
blaze	a large and often dangerous fire
casualty	a person who is killed or injured in a war or accident
precaution	sth you do in order to avoid danger or problems
suspicion	a feeling or belief that sth is wrong or that sb has done sth wrong <b>suspicious (of sb)</b> adj <b>suspect</b> v
deliberately	in a way that was planned <b>deliberate</b> <i>adj</i> SYN <b>intentional</b>
intense	very great, strong or serious: intense heat/cold/ pressure intensity n
assess	judge or form an opinion about sth assessment n
praise	say that sb is good and should be admired for sth <b>praise</b> <i>n</i>
courage	the ability to do sth dangerous without showing fear SYN <b>bravery</b> ; <b>courageous</b> <i>adj</i>

succont

Underline the main stress on these words. Use the end to help you.
 devastate firefighter casualty precaution deliberate

devastate	nrengnter	Casually	precaution	Genderate	suspect
assessment	courage	courageous	intensity	intentional	suspicion

#### 5 Complete the sentences on the right with a single word. Keep the same meaning.

1	There is a suspicion it was deliberate.	The police it was deliberate.
2	The intense heat caused problems.	The of the heat caused problems.
	Fire chiefs are assessing the damage.	Fire chiefs are making an of the damage.
	The firefighters showed great courage.	The firefighters were very
5	The area was devastated.	The area suffered huge
6	They evacuated people to avoid danger.	They evacuated people as a
	One died and four were injured.	There were five
	They're making an effort to deal with the problem.	

~ Yes, a huge

~ Yes, they are \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, very

~ Yes, they think it was started

~ Yes, they called the fire \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, they showed great \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, they make the final

~ Yes, they received a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 Agree with the first speaker, without using the underlined word(s) they use.

- 1 Was it a big fire?
- 2 Was it intentional?
- 3 I imagine they needed firefighters.
- 4 They were very <u>courageous</u>.
- 5 Do the officers judge the outcome?
- 6 I hope people <u>admire them for what they did</u>.7 Do the police <u>think the shopkeper has done</u>
- something wrong?
- 8 Was strong pressure really put on her to make a decision?

#### Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 Most of the ...... went to hospital.
- 2 Somebody call the fire
- 3 There is \_\_\_\_\_ pressure on the fire service.
- 4 The PM \_\_\_\_\_\_ everyone for their bravery.
- 5 Investigators have to \_\_\_\_\_ the damage.
- 6 There is a \_\_\_\_\_ that the fire was deliberate.

## 61 Investigations

## **A** A police investigation



Somerset police were last night called to the 200-acre estate of Lord and Lady Appleby, where a body was found in a fishing lake on the property. A dog walker notified the police after spotting a hat and fragments of clothing floating on the lake, and we received confirmation early this morning that they had discovered the body of a young man who had drowned. He has not yet been formally identified, and police from the neighbouring county of Devon are providing assistance with the investigation.

estate ord ootify ragment	a unit for measuring an area of land (approx. 4,0 square metres) a large area of land, usually in the country, that owned by one person or one family a man of high rank in the <i>nobility</i> (= people of I social class) or sb who has been given the title an honour and is entitled to sit in the House of officially tell sb about sth a small part of sth that has broken off or come sth larger	is high 'lord' as Lords <b>county</b>	stay on or near the surface of sth and not sink a statement, letter, etc. that shows that sth is tru or definite die because you have been underwater too lon and cannot breathe; kill sb in this way officially; in a way that follows an agreed way of doing things an area of Britain that has its own local governme help or support
Is the help	e pronunciation of the underlined le you.	tters the same or o	different? Write S or D. Use the 🐵 to
		agment	5 confirmation nobility
2 <u>a</u> c	cre <u>a</u> ssistance 4 float n	-	6 county drown
	And the second second second		
	ace the underlined word(s) with othe	er words that keep	the same meaning.
1 Th	ney announced it officially.		e were <u>small pieces</u> of
	ney want some kind of		al everywhere.
			owned a large <u>area of land</u> .
	e <u>died underwater</u> .		vill provide them with
	ne paper boat stayed on the		e help.
<u>su</u>	irface of the water.	8 I will	inform the police.
Com	plete the sentences.		
	nave a very large garden; it's about half an		
	proke a bottle, and there were		r the floor
	person who has died will need to be		
	ould see a plastic bag in		
	you change your personal details in any v		your bank
6 If	you are offered a job and accept it, the co	mpany will require y	vritten
7 He	e wasn't born into the nobility, but was la	ter given the title of	
	ne girl because she fell in		
	5		
ABO	UT YOUR COUNTRY Write answers to	the questions, or	ask another student.
	o you have a word in your language for an		
2 Do	o you have many large estates in your cou	untry?	
3 Do	byou have an equivalent of a lord in your	country/language?	
4 Is	your country divided into areas equivalen	t to British counties?	
			ify?

130 News and current affairs

B	Ame	edia	inve	stigat	ion

The media regulator has launched a formal investigation into Australia's biggest news television networks after complaints about the live broadcast of a shooting in Christchurch, New Zealand. Some broadcasters put edited versions of the live stream on their channels, but commentators have argued that none of the content should have been broadcast.

A spokeswoman for one network said they always took reasonable steps to avoid offence, distress or prejudice, unless doing so was regarded as being in the public interest. It's a delicate balancing act said another station, which had shown brief clips of the shooting.

#### SPOTLIGHT public

Public (adj) is used in a number of phrases with different meanings.

- a person known by many people a public figure
- public money
  - money connected with the government
- a public library

a library for everyone

a public appearance intended to be seen by people in general

#### GLOSSARY a person or an organization that controls regulator an area of business or industry and makes sure it operates fairly regulation n a group of radio or TV stations that are network connected and that broadcast the same programmes at the same time broadcast a radio or TV programme broadcast v; Broadcasters are companies that send out radio or TV programmes. take what has been filmed or recorded edit and decide which parts to show a live broadcast of an event over the live stream internet live-stream v a person who is an expert on a subject commentator and talks or writes about it on radio, TV or in a newspaper a feeling of great worry or unhappiness distress an unreasonable dislike of or preference prejudice for a person, custom, etc, especially when based on race, religion, sex, etc. needing skill and sensitive treatment delicate a good result or an advantage for sb: interest be in the public interest a process in which sb tries to please two balancing act or more groups who want different things a short part of a film that is shown clip separately

#### 5 Underline the stress. Use the 🐵 to help you with the words, and see where the main stress is in the phrases in the Answer Key.

regulator	network	edit	distress	in the public interest
live stream	commentator	prejudice	delicate	balancing act

#### 6 Circle the words which are directly connected with the media (i.e. TV, radio or the internet).

network	regulator	broadcaster	clip
prejudice	balancing act	edit	live stream

#### 7 Form six phrases using words in the box.

a public	a balancing	a media	in the public	a film	racial
library	interest	prejudice	act	clip	regulator

#### 8 Complete the sentences.

1 Advertisements for a new film often show \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ from the film.

.....

- 2 The event is being \_\_\_\_\_\_ live on TV, but you can also watch recorded highlights later.
- 3 News bulletins are not allowed to show violent acts because they cause \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to many viewers.
- 4 The film has been \_\_\_\_\_\_ and most of the violence removed.
- You can watch a \_\_\_\_\_ of the concert on the day. 5
- Sometimes TV networks report on difficult things because they are in the interest; balancing act. other times you don't show certain events. It's a
- 7 Some TV programmes are accused of \_\_\_\_\_\_ against certain groups of people.
- There were complaints that the sports \_\_\_\_\_\_ has made racist remarks about some 8 players, so the media has launched an investigation.



# 62 Celebrity

## A Celebrity and the media

### Celebrities deserve privacy

A survey **conducted** on privacy and the media has **revealed** that most people think there should be little or no **coverage** of the private lives of celebrities. This **contrasts** strongly with the huge success of celebrity magazines, which go into great detail about the lives of people **in the public eye**. It also **emerged** from the **findings** that people did not want politicians to have their private lives **exposed** in the same way. Certain **tabloids** were thought to be particularly guilty of **prying into** the lives of famous people.

#### SPOTLIGHT emerge

**Emerge** has several different but closely related meanings. 1 become known (as above)

- 2 come out of a hidden place: She **emerged** from the lake.
- 3 start to exist or appear: After the election, new groups started to emerge.

deserves	Manage descence of the delayed of the later
deserve	If you <b>deserve</b> sth, it is right that you should have it because of what you have done or the way you have behaved.
privacy	the state of being alone and not watched or disturbed by others
conduct formal	organize and/or do a particular activity: conduct a survey / an experiment; SYN carry sth out
reveal	make sth known to sb revelation n
coverage	the reporting of news in newspapers, on TV, etc.
contrast (with sth)	show a clear difference when close together or when compared
in the public eye	well known to many people through TV or newspapers
findings (usually pl)	information learned as the result of research
expose	show sth that is usually hidden
tabloid	a newspaper full of pictures and/or stories about famous people, often thought of as less serious than other papers
pry (into sth)	try to find information about people's private lives

#### Circle the word(s) that are correct. More than one word may be possible.

- Papers are often good at conducting / revealing / exposing the truth.
- 2 They have carried out / deserved / conducted a survey on people's hobbies.
- 3 I don't like the way the papers deserve / pry into / conduct people's private lives.
- 4 Have you read the coverage / tabloids / findings today?
- 5 This new information exposes / contrasts with / reveals what we already know.
- 6 New celebrities emerge / pry into / deserve all the time.
- 7 I'm sure the facts will be revealed / be conducted / emerge soon.
- 8 Findings / Coverage / Privacy of the news on TV is pretty good.
- 9 They will publish further findings / revelations / tabloids in tomorrow's paper.
- 10 The refugees pry into / deserve / expose our help.

#### 2 Complete the text with suitable words from the top of the page.

The New Yorker (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_out a survey among 650 young people in NY, and it (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_some interesting and quite disturbing (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_on how some teenagers view celebrity. Many believe that because they work hard, celebrities (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_to be famous. It also (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_from the survey that lonely teenagers are more likely to follow the lives of people in the public (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_. These findings (7) \_\_\_\_\_\_with the views of most older people, who have less respect for celebrities and also think they don't deserve (8) \_\_\_\_\_\_.

3		omplete the questions with suitable words. Nen write your answers, or ask another student.	ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY
	1	In your country, do you have newspapers?	
	2	Are they often guilty of into the private lives of people in the	
	3	Are you happy about this, or do you think celebrities deserve some ?	
	4	What are the advantages and disadvantages of being a TV ?	******



News and current affairs

132



## 63 Human interest stories

## A Amazing but true!

### **OPERATED ON AFTER 55 YEARS!**

German woman who spent 55 years with a pencil stuck in her brain has finally had most of it removed. She had fallen over holding the pencil when she was four. It went directly through her cheek and then into her brain. Ever since, she had had to endure severe pain because doctors dared not operate. The three-inch long pencil was finally removed on Friday in a very delicate operation, all except the tip of the pencil. The woman is said to be making a speedy recovery, and mysteriously the remaining tip seems to be causing her no problems at all.

stuck (in sth)	unable to move or be moved
directly	in a direct line or manner
ever since	continuously since the time mentioned
endure formal	experience or deal with sth that is painful or unpleasant, especially without complaining SYN <b>bear</b> , <b>put up with sth</b>
severe	very bad or serious
inch	a unit of measurement equal to 2.54 centimetres
delicate	showing or needing very skilful and careful treatment
tip (of sth)	the thin pointed end (of sth)
make a speedy/ rapid recovery	get well again quickly after an illness
mysteriously	in a way that is difficult to understand or explain <b>mysterious</b> adj
remaining	still existing or needing to be dealt with

#### SPOTLIGHT dare

Dare means 'be brave enough to do something'.

I dare you to ask him. (= Are you brave enough to ask him?)

It is usually used in questions and negative forms.

- How dare you say that! (= I am very angry that you said that.)
- Don't you dare come near me! (used to give someone a strong warning)

### Circle all the adjectives you can find in the word snake.

## dareseveredirectlyremaininginchmysteriouslytipstuckrapidsincedelicate

#### 2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be possible.

- The tip / edge of the cat's tail is white.
- I made a speedy / rapid recovery.
- 3 The pain can be quite severe / mysterious.
- 4 She's got a delicate / mysterious virus.
- 5 He had to endure / put up with a lot of pain.
- 6 How dare you do / to do that!

#### Complete the dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 Was the pain bad? ~ Yes, I didn't think I could \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it much longer.
- 2 It must be so difficult operating on the brain. ~ Yes, it's a very \_\_\_\_\_ procedure.
- 3 You've put on weight. ~ How \_\_\_\_\_ you say that!
- 4 How's Tania? ~ No idea. I haven't seen her her accident last year.
- you to ask that girl out. ~ Mmm. What do you think she'll say? 5
- Where has he gone? ~ They have no idea. It's a very disappearance.
- 7 Is Tina getting better? ~ Yeah, apparently she's making a ...
- 8 I'm going to tell the teacher you copied my answers. ~ Oh, don't you do that!
- Was Karen hurt? ~ No. She was on the same bus, but not \_\_\_\_\_\_ involved in the accident. 9
- 10 What did you say about a nail? ~ It got \_\_\_\_\_\_ in his foot. It was quite difficult to get out.

TEST YOURSELF

News and current affairs 134

.

- 7 It's about two inches / five centimetres long.
- 8 There were seven and I've had six, so where's the left/remaining one?
- 9 I bought it in 2012 and have lived there ever / ever since.

### **B** A survival tale



An Australian farmer has described how he spent SEVEN days sitting on the upper branches of a tree above a swamp full of deadly crocodiles. The 53-year-old man said he was forced to take the action after his horse accidentally stumbled and he fell off. The horse panicked and galloped off, leaving David stranded. He managed to climb a nearby tree and realized he could either stay put and hope to be found by a rescue team, or try to climb down, taking a chance on being eaten by a crocodile. After a week, and nearly starving, he was spotted by helicopters and rescued.

GLOSSART			
tale upper	an exciting description of an event at or near the top of sth OPP <b>lower</b>	gallop	When a horse or similar animal <b>gallops</b> , it moves across the ground very fast.
swamp	an area of ground that is very wet or covered in water and in which plants,	be stranded	be in a place from which you have no way of leaving
	trees, etc. are growing	stay put inf	stay where you are rather than moving away
deadly	causing or likely to cause death	take a chance	decide to do sth, knowing it is a risk
accidentally	by chance; in a way that was not planned	(on sth)	suffer as die begauge vou de pet have
stumble	hit your foot against sth while walking or running and nearly fall	starve	suffer or die because you do not have enough food to eat
panic (panicked; panicking)	suddenly feel frightened so that you cannot think clearly <b>panic</b> <i>n</i>	spot	see or notice sb/sth, especially suddenly or when it is not easy to do so

#### 4 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1 We had to stay put for an hour.	We couldn't move for an hour.	
2 The snake was deadly.	The snakes was nearly dead.	
3 Don't look for an opportunity.	Don't take any chances.	
4 We were attacked.	We were stranded.	
5 He stumbled and fell.	He tripped and fell.	
6 I was on an upper slope of the mountain.	I was near the top of the mountain.	
7 The horse galloped towards the lake.	The horse walked towards the lake.	
8 The area was covered in water.	It was like a swamp.	

#### 5) Complete the definitions.

- If it's deadly, it can \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 If you starve, you can 3 If you spot something, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.

#### 6 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.

~ No, I'm afraid I was in a 1 Did you stay fairly calm? ~ Yes, they found me in a \_\_\_\_\_. 2 Was the land very wet? ~ Fortunately, they \_\_\_\_\_ my white hat. 3 How did they see you? ~ I don't know, but it's an interesting \_\_\_\_\_. 4 Is that a true story? ~ No, too risky, so I decided to Was it safe to move around? 5 6 Could you get out of the village? ~ No, we were 7 Is that the upper limit of money ~ No, the complete opposite. It's the we can spend? 8 You stayed where you were during ~ Yes, I didn't want to take the flood? TEST YOURSELF



4 If it happens accidentally, it's by \_\_\_\_\_.

5 If you stumble, you nearly \_\_\_\_\_.

6 If you panic, you don't think \_\_\_\_\_.

# 64) Jobs

J	blumber	elect	trician	Carpenter
	tronics are seeking Chief Executive	the number of	plaints about f <b>civil servants</b> country	Manual workers in short supply
to cre	ernment wants eate thousands w <b>apprentices</b>		n a <b>jeweller</b> and ow, I'm a <b>housew</b>	vife. Senior posts in Health Service still left vacant
barmar	asual work as a in the evenings. I used to be a butcher, ut now I'm a handyman.	C I	ctricians and	
C	action find finding findin.			
You toug	u need to be pretty h to be a <b>bodyguard</b> .	We ne entrep	ed more reneurs, try Minister	More people unwilling to accept low- <b>status</b> jobs
You toug	u need to be pretty h to be a <b>bodyguard</b> .	We ne entrep	ed more reneurs, try Minister	More people unwilling to accept low- <b>status</b> jobs
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with	We ne entrep says Indus	ed more reneurs, try Minister housewife	More people unwilling to accept low-status jobs (male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc.
You toug GLOSSARY eek formal executive	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization.	We neg entrep says Indus tant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in	ed more reneurs, try Minister housewife nowadays	More people unwilling to accept low-status jobs (male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentic</b>	We net entrep says Indus tant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a	ed more reneurs, try Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed	(male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money from your own business
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentic</b> being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or <b>casual work/labour</b>	We neg entrep says Indus ant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a ceship is the state of regular:	ed more reneurs, atry Minister housewife nowadays incentive	(male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentic</b> being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or <b>casual work/labour</b> (female <b>barmaid</b> ) a person w	We neg entrep says Indus ant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a ceship is the state of regular:	ed more reneurs, arry Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed entrepreneur manual	(male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money from your own business a person who makes money by starting or running a business, especially one involving financial risk using your hands
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive apprentice asual barman	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentic</b> being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or <b>casual work/labour</b>	We neg entrep says Indus ant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a ceship is the state of regular:	ed more reneurs, arry Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed entrepreneur	(male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money from your own business a person who makes money by starting or running a business, especially one involving financial risk using your hands having a high position in a company
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive apprentice casual barman outcher handyman	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentic</b> being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or <b>casual work/labour</b> (female <b>barmaid</b> ) a person of from behind a bar in a pub a person who sells meat a man who is good at doing or outside the house, as a ho	We neg entrep says Indus ant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a seship is the state of regular: who serves drinks practical jobs inside obby or as a job	ed more reneurs, arry Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed entrepreneur manual	(male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money from your own business a person who makes money by starting or running a business, especially one involving financial risk using your hands
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive apprentice casual barman butcher handyman	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentio</b> being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or <b>casual work/labour</b> (female <b>barmaid</b> ) a person of from behind a bar in a pub a person who sells meat a man who is good at doing or outside the house, as a ho strong enough to deal with	We neg entrep says Indus ant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a seship is the state of regular: who serves drinks practical jobs inside obby or as a job	ed more reneurs, arry Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed entrepreneur manual senior	More people unwilling to accept low-status jobs
You toug GLOSSARY seek formal executive apprentice casual barman butcher handyman tough bodyguard	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga executive is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An apprentic being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or casual work/labour (female barmaid) a person of from behind a bar in a pub a person who sells meat a man who is good at doing or outside the house, as a ho strong enough to deal with or situations a person whose job is to pro a person who works for the	We neg entreps says Indus ant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a seship is the state of regular: who serves drinks practical jobs inside obby or as a job difficult conditions tect sb civil service, which is	ed more reneurs, arry Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed entrepreneur manual senior post formal	(male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money from your own business a person who makes money by starting or running a business, especially one involving financial risk using your hands having a high position in a company or organization a job, especially an important one sYN position (of a job in a company) available for sb to take vacancy n a person whose job is to manage or examine the financial accounts of a company.
You toug	try to find or get sth a person who has an import manager in a business, orga <b>executive</b> is the person with a company or organization. a young person who works of time in order to learn the particular job. An <b>apprentio</b> being an apprentice. (of work) not permanent or <b>casual work/labour</b> (female <b>barmaid</b> ) a person w from behind a bar in a pub a person who sells meat a man who is good at doing or outside the house, as a ho strong enough to deal with a or situations a person whose job is to pro	We neg entrep says Indus tant position as a nization, etc. A chief h the highest rank in for a fixed period skills needed in a ceship is the state of regular: who serves drinks practical jobs inside obby or as a job difficult conditions tect sb civil service, which is tents	ed more reneurs, try Minister housewife nowadays incentive self-employed entrepreneur manual senior post formal vacant	More people unwilling to accept low-status jobs (male househusband) a person who doesn't have a job outside the home and spends their time cleaning the home, looking after the family, etc. at the present time, in contrast with the past sth that encourages you (to do sth) working for yourself and making money from your own business a person who makes money by starting or running a business, especially one involving financial risk using your hands having a high position in a company or organization a job, especially an important one SYN position (of a job in a company) available for sb to take vacancy n a person whose job is to manage or examine

1 2	elp you.									
2	butcher plun				6	status casual		2		
-	plumber libra				7	librarian appr		e	*******	
3	carpenter bar				8	vacant manu			********	
4	barman hand				9	lucrative acco			*******	
5	apprentice se	erv <u>a</u> nt			10	appr <u>en</u> tice <u>er</u>	ntrep	reneur		
		stress on these	words							
	prentice	handyman	exec			ntrepreneur				
	crative	librarian		rician		owadays				
CIV	vil servant	vacancy	body	guard	Se	elf-employed				
w	hat's my job?					and the second second				
1	I sell rings and				7	I make things v				**********************
2		ferent small jobs.			8	I fix sinks and to	oilets			
3	I work for a go	overnment			9	I lend books.				
	department.	in a cub	*********		10	I sell meat.	c			
4	I serve drinks i				11	I look after the	nnan	cial side	OF	
5 6	I protect famo	be a plumber. ous people.			12	the business. I do just about	every	thing in	the home	e.
		1. h								
w		jobs are quite	vell-pa						tant	
	apprentice electrician		4	civil serv				accoun		
3	barman/barm	hie	6	housew casual w			9	libraria	worker	
2	They're not loo	vice is always oking for junior s a lot of money as	taff; the	want		staff.				
4		ere were many op							o find a i	ob
		ioyed								
5						. Deconice a con			2160	
5			ny, but h	ne's been	self-		NON		ears.	
	Max used to w	vork for a compar	-					-	ears.	
	Max used to w If you're lookin	vork for a company for work, try th	e post d	office: the	y've g	got lots of				
6 7 8	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju:	vork for a company	e post o ew chief	office: the	y've g	of a big adve	rtisin	g comp		
6 7 8 9	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju You have to be	vork for a company ng for work, try th st become the ne	e post o ew chief if you	office: the want to jo	y've g	ot lots of of a big adve e armed forces a	ertisin as a n	g comp narine.	any.	o bad.
6 7 8 9	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju You have to be There's no The chief exec	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne eto cutive had been i	e post of w chief if you work for n the	want to jo that com	oin th	of a big adve of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye	ertisin as a n y and	g comp narine. I conditi	any. ons are se	
6 7 8 9	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju You have to be There's no The chief exec became	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne eto to cutive had been i , it wo	e post of ew chief if you work for n the as offere	want to jo that com	oin th pany uch yo	of a big adve of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man.	ertisin as a n y and ears, b	g comp narine. I conditi put when	any. ons are se n he retire	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju You have to be There's no The chief exec became Though I've w	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne eto cutive had been i , it was orked in different	if you work for the <u>s</u> offere govern	want to jo that com ed to a mu ment dep	oin th pany uch yo	got lots of of a big adve the armed forces at because the part for nearly ten ye bounger man. ents, I've spent n	ertisin as a n y and ears, b	g comp narine. I conditi put when	any. ons are se n he retire	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju: You have to be There's no The chief exec became Though I've w	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne e	if you work for the govern	want to jo that com ed to a mu ment dep	oin th pany uch yo partm	of a big adve of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student.	ertisin as a n y ance ears, b ny wh	g comparine. I conditi but when	any. ons are so n he retire eer in the	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju: You have to be There's no The chief exec became Though I've w BOUT YOU W Do you have e	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne e	if you work for n the govern ers, or t of the j	want to jo that com ed to a mu ment dep talk to an obs in thi	oin th pany uch yo partm <b>noth</b>	got lots of of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student.	ertisin as a m y ance ears, b ny wh	g compo narine. I conditi but when nole care	any. ons are so n he retire eer in the	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju You have to be There's no The chief exec became Though I've w BOUT YOU Do you have e Are you attrac	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne eto cutive had been i , it wo orked in different <b>Trite your answe</b> experience of any ted to any of the	e post of ew chief if you work for n the govern ers, or n of the j m?	want to jo that com ed to a mu ment dep talk to an obs in thi	y've <u>c</u> oin th npany uch yo oartm <b>noth</b> s unit	ot lots of of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student.	ertisin as a n y ance ears, b ny wh	g comp narine. I conditi but when nole care	any. ons are so n he retire eer in the	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju: You have to be There's no The chief exec became Though I've w BOUT YOU W Do you have e Are you attract Would you pre	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne e	e post of ew chief if you work for n the govern ers, or t of the j m?	office: the want to jo that com ed to a mo ment dep talk to an obs in thi	oin th pany uch yo partm <b>noth</b>	got lots of of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student. ?	ertisin as a m y ance ears, b ny wh	g componential d condition but when nole care	any. ons are so n he retire eer in the	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A 1 2 3 4	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju You have to be There's no The chief exec became Though I've w BOUT YOU W Do you have e Are you attrac Would you pre Do you think y	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne eto cutive had been i , it was orked in different vorked in different vorked to any of the efer to be self-em you need incention	e post of ew chief if you work for n the govern ers, or to of the j m? ployed? ves to w	office: the want to jo that com ed to a mu ment dep talk to an obs in thi	y've <u>c</u> oin th pany uch yo oartm s unit	got lots of of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student. ?	ertisin as a m y ance ears, b ny wh	g comparine. I conditi but when	any. ons are so n he retire eer in the	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A 1 2 3 4	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has jun You have to be There's no The chief exect became Though I've w BOUT YOU W Do you have e Are you attract Would you pre Do you think y Are you good If you were loo	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the noise to the cutive had been i , it way orked in different <b>Frite your answer</b> experience of any ted to any of the efer to be self-em- you need incentive at manual work? oking for casual v	e post of ew chief if you work for n the govern ers, or to of the j m? ployed ves to w	office: the want to jo that com ed to a mo ment dep talk to an obs in thi ork hard?	y've <u>c</u> oin th pany uch yo partm s unit	got lots of of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student. ?	ertisin as a m y ance ears, b ny wh	g companie. I conditi but when	any. ons are so n he retire eer in the	ed and the job
6 7 8 9 0 1 2 A 1 2 3 4	Max used to w If you're lookin My dad has ju: You have to be There's no The chief exect became Though I've w BOUT YOU Do you have e Are you attract Would you pre Do you think y Are you good If you were loo to be a barma	vork for a company ng for work, try the st become the ne e	e post o ew chief if you work for n the govern ers, or n of the j m? ployed? ves to w	office: the want to jo that com ed to a mo ment dep talk to an obs in thi ork hard?	y've <u>c</u> oin th npany uch yo partm <b>noth</b> s unit	got lots of of a big adve e armed forces a because the pa for nearly ten ye ounger man. ents, I've spent n er student. ?	ertisin y and ears, b ny wh	g comparine. I conditi but when	any. ons are so n he retire	ed and the job

# 65 Careers

## A Market sectors

We advertise jobs across a range of market **sectors**. **Register** by email now, and you can be first in line to apply for jobs as they appear. Just select any two sectors in which you have experience and/or qualifications.

🗋 retail

- administration
- manufacturing
- market research
- human resources
- G finance
- recruitment
- insurance

GLOSSARY	The state of the state of the state	and a stand	
sector	a part of the business activity of a country <b>public sector</b> the sector controlled by the	market research	the study of what people want to buy and why
	government <b>private sector</b> the sector controlled by private companies	human resources	(often abbreviated <b>HR</b> ) the department in a company that deals with employing
register (with sth)	put a name on an official list register n		and training people
qualifications	the exams you have passed or courses you have finished	finance	the activity of managing money financial adj
retail	selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.	recruitment	the business of finding people for job vacancies <b>recruit</b> v
administration	(often abbreviated as <b>admin</b> ) the process or act of managing sth such as an organization or a business	insurance	an arrangement with a company in which you pay them money and they agree to pay the costs if, for example,
manufacturing	the business of producing goods in factories, etc.		you die or are ill, or if you lose or damage sth

Underline the main stress on these words. Use the 😁 to help you.

qualifications	administration	manufacturing	market research
human resources	finance	recruitment	insurance

- 2 What sector do these people work in?
  - 1 I try to discover what customers want.
  - 2 I have to look for the best way to use people in the company.
  - 3 I sell clothes.
  - 4 I sell policies to people as protection against illness.
  - 5 I work in car production.
  - 6 I work in an office, in charge of a small group.
  - 7 I control the money in our firm.
  - 8 I help to find jobs for people.

#### 3 Complete the text.

I'm still doing my accountancy exams, but I've already (1) with a recruitment company that helps young people to find work. And when I finally get my accountancy (2) , it should help me find a career in (3) , preferably in the private (4) , and eventually run my own business, like my dad. He started in (5) , where he worked on the production of motorbikes, but ended up with his own business.

ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or qualifications in? If you're still studying, would you like to work in any of these market sectors in the future?



### **B** Job prospects

Two years ago, I got a challenging job with good prospects in local radio. I worked hard, and as a reward, I was promoted and transferred to a different department. Then, all of a sudden, things started going wrong: one colleague got the sack, and another handed in his notice. Two months later, ten people were made redundant. I didn't want to be out of work, so I decided to look elsewhere. I applied for a job in TV and was appointed assistant director. Amazing!

#### SPOTLIGHT dismiss, sack, fire

An employer may dismiss an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say sack someone, give someone the sack or fire someone. An employee can get the sack.

He was sacked was given the sack got the sack was fired

for being rude.

was dismissed -

GLOSSARY prospects pl the chances of being successful in the department a section of a business, university, etc. future give your employer a formal letter saying hand in your notice that you will leave your job SYN resign; challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable challenge n Quit (inf) means 'leave your job'. sth you get because you have done sth make sb leave their job because they are reward make sb redundant not needed any more helpful, worked hard, etc. reward v (often passive) not working and unable to find a job SYN give sb a better job at a higher level in a out of work promote unemployed company promotion n (usually passive) transfer sb/sth move sb/sth from one place to another elsewhere in or to another place (from ....to ....) choose sb for a job appoint

#### Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- 1 a challenge / a reward
- fire someone / dismiss someone 2
- 3 be promoted / be appointed
- promotion / prospects 4
- reward someone / promote someone 5
- 6 hand in your notice / resign

- 7 be sacked / be rewarded
- 8 transfer someone / move someone to another office

(difficult but interesting)

(section of the business)

(given a higher-level job in the company)

(chances of success)

(in another place)

(hand in my notice)

(chosen for the job)

(a higher level job)

(not needed)

(leave my job)

(out of work)

(dismiss)

- 9 guit / hand in your notice
- 10 make someone redundant / fire someone
- 11 get the sack / sack someone
- 12 out of work / unemployed

#### Complete the sentences with a single word, with the meaning of the words in brackets.

......

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

- 1 My job's very
- 2 I want to transfer to another \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I have good \_\_\_\_\_ in my job.
- I'd really love to be 4
- I'm bored at work, so I'm going to look 5
- l've never been \_\_\_\_\_. 6
- I'd hate to have to someone. 7
- If I hated my job, I would definitely 8
- I was very happy to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the job I currently have. 9
- I think is usually a reward for hard work. 10
- 12 I didn't like it, so I decided to \_\_\_\_\_.

ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 6 true for you? Write True or Not true, or talk to another student who has a job.

# 66 Ways of working

## A Freelance work: the pros and cons



(8) \_\_\_\_\_ benefits of a company car

ABOUT YOU Have you ever worked freelance? If so, did you enjoy the same advantages and encounter similar problems? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



## **B** Working in a team: the pros and cons

- Working as part of a team with a common goal fosters team spirit.
- Collaboration and mutual feedback are fulfilling and make people feel valued.

GLOSSARY

- Bringing together diverse skills is generally more productive.
- If someone doesn't fit in, that can be disruptive for the whole team.
- X Teams can suppress individual enterprise and initiative.
- Individuals can sometimes get away with being lazy.

part	a person or thing that, working together	value	think that sb/sth is important
	with others, forms part of a single unit: part of a team	diverse	different from each other and of various kinds
foster	help sth to develop SYN encourage, promote	fit in (with sb/sth)	be accepted by the others in a group
team spirit	loyal feelings towards a group, team, or society	disruptive	causing problems, and making it hard to continue with sth
collaboration	the act of working with others to	suppress	prevent sth from growing, developing or continuing
(with sb) mutual	produce sth used to describe a feeling that two	enterprise	the ability to think of new ideas and make them successful
	people have for each other equally: mutual respect/trust	initiative	the ability to take decisions and act alone: use your initiative
fulfilling	giving personal satisfaction SYN <b>rewarding</b> ; <b>fulfil</b> v	get away with sth	avoid doing sth, or manage to do less than expected

#### 5 Positive or negative? Write P or N.

1	He showed enterprise during the project.	 5	The team members have diverse skills.	
2	She can be disruptive in the office.	 6	He doesn't use his initiative.	
3	I don't feel valued.	 7	She gets away with poor-quality work.	
4	The work was fulfilling.	 8	There is mutual trust between the members.	

#### 6 Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the same meaning.

•
ot
•
one with
ot of

#### Complete the sentences with suitable words from the top of the page.

- 1 My boss appreciates what I do, and that helps me to feel \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 To feel \_\_\_\_\_\_ of a team, it helps to have a manager who works to build team \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 You need people who will \_\_\_\_\_\_a good atmosphere in the team.
- 4 The people in my office are all different and all from very \_\_\_\_\_ backgrounds.
- 5 One colleague has a lot of loud phone calls, and that is \_\_\_\_\_\_ for others in the group.
- 6 I used to work for a boss who tried to \_\_\_\_\_\_ any individual enterprise, which was very frustrating. With my new boss, however, I enjoy the work and find it very \_\_\_\_\_.

## 8 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the pros and cons above? Can you think of any others? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



# 67 The workplace

## A An industrial dispute

Talks to settle the dispute between Royal Mail bosses and the CWU union have broken down again, so the union has decided, following the support of its members in a ballot, to set a date for strikes as early as next month. They claim it is not just a pay dispute, but an attempt to halt the closure of 2,500 post offices around the country. For the government, though, there is a great deal at stake. If the management gives in to the demands, it could set a precedent for other groups, who may feel more inclined to step up their own claims for higher wage settlements.

#### SPOTLIGHT set + noun

Set is used with many nouns and often means 'fix something for others to copy', e.g. set a standard / a precedent / an example. It can also mean 'decide on something', e.g. set a date/limit.

GLOSSARY	
settle	put an end to an argument or a disagreement
dispute	a disagreement, often official, between people or groups: <b>a pay</b> / <b>industrial dispute; settle a dispute</b>
break down	(of talks/negotiations, etc.) fail
ballot	a system of voting in which votes are made in secret <b>ballot</b> <i>v</i>
halt	prevent sth from continuing
closure	a situation in which a school, factory, etc. is permanently shut
at stake	If sth is <b>at stake</b> , you will lose it if a plan or action is not successful.
give in	agree to do sth that you do not want to do
precedent	sth that happened in the past which is seen as a rule or example for others in a similar situation to follow
inclined to do sth	likely to do sth or tending to do sth
step sth up	increase the amount of an activity in order to achieve sth
wage (ALSO wages pl)	a regular amount of money you earn, often paid weekly: <i>a high/low wage</i>

1) Circle the words which suggest that something is stopping, failing or going wrong.

dispute	give in	step up	break down
halt	precedent	closure	inclined to

#### 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

- 1 The manager \_\_\_\_\_\_ the standard for others to follow.
- 2 We must act now in order to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the dispute.
- 3 The union must \_\_\_\_\_\_ their members before they can go ahead with strike action.
- 4 The 5% wage settlement has \_\_\_\_\_\_a precedent for other unions.
- 5 The government has failed to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the economic decline, so things look bad.
- 6 If their demands aren't met, some workers will their call for strike action.
- 7 We mustn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ to their demands. We will fight to the end.
- 8 The negotiations started well but they've just \_\_\_\_\_\_ for some reason.

#### 3 Complete the dialogues.

members first.

TEST YOURSELF

142 Work and business

## **B** Working conditions

## What **fringe benefits** can you expect from your job?

- \* a company pension?
- \* an annual bonus?
- health or dental insurance?
- \* paid sick leave?
- maternity/paternity leave?
- a commission (on certain jobs)

### What rights do you have?

### \* the right to join a trade union?

- \* Are you entitled to strike?
- \* the right to a minimum level of paid holiday?

#### GLOSSARY

(fringe) benefit (usually pl)	an advantage you get from a company in addition to the money you earn SYN <b>perk</b>
pension	money paid regularly by a government or company to sb when they retire: a state/company pension
bonus	an extra amount of money, often added to a wage or salary, as a reward: <b>an annual bonus</b>
dental	connected with teeth: dental treatment
leave	a period of time when you are allowed to be away from work for a holiday or a special reason: annual/unpaid/sick leave
maternity	the state of being or becoming a mother: maternity leave, ALSO paternity leave (for fathers)
commission	an amount of money paid to sb for selling goods which increases with the amount sold
right	a moral or legal claim to have or get sth or to behave in a particular way
trade union	an organization of workers that exists to protect its workers
entitle (sb to sth) (often passive)	give sb the right to have or do sth
strike	a period of time when an organized group of employees refuse to work because of a disagreement over pay or conditions: <b>be/go on strike</b>
minimum	the smallest that is possible or allowed: the minimum wage/charge

Form seven compound words or phrases from words in the box.

minimum	fringe	maternity	state	dental	go on	trade
pension	strike	wage	leave	union	benefit	treatment

#### Complete the sentences.

- 1 Most countries have leave, but not always paternity leave.
- 2 I've always belonged to a trade \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We only get an annual if the company is doing well.
- 4 The workers are planning to \_\_\_\_\_\_ strike next week.
- 5 The company pays sick up to a certain number of weeks.
- 6 When you retire, will you be \_\_\_\_\_\_ to a state and company \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I think most workers in the UK have a \_\_\_\_\_\_ to join a \_\_\_\_\_\_ union, but I don't think members of the emergency services can go on \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 | get 10% \_\_\_\_\_ on everything I sell.
- 9 I believe everyone has the \_\_\_\_\_\_ to refuse overtime over a certain number of hours.
- 10 Most people have a \_\_\_\_\_ of 20 days' paid \_\_\_\_\_ every year.

#### ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Have you got a job? If so, which of the perks above do you get? What other perks do you get? Which are the most important to you?
- 2 Are you entitled to all the rights above?
- 3 If you haven't got a job, which of the perks above sound the most important, and why?...



6

?
# 68 Time management

# **A** Some important reminders

# Time Management tips

- Do you note down jobs you have to do on a daily basis?
- Do you put up reminders in the office about these aims?
- Do you prioritize the tasks you have to accomplish by the end of the day?
- Do you stick to your priorities, no matter what happens?
- Do you focus on one thing at a time?
- Do you try to anticipate so you can organize tasks better?
- Do you delegate tasks and responsibilities as far as possible?
- Do you set deadlines for tasks and stick to them?

## SPOTLIGHT no matter what/how, etc.

No matter what/how, etc. means 'it doesn't matter what/how, etc.' or 'it isn't important what/how, etc.'. It is similar to whatever, etc.

- No matter what happens, don't panic. = Whatever happens, don't panic.
- You'll find work no matter where you are. = Wherever you are, you'll find work.

### GLOSSARY write sth quickly SYN make a note sth down note of sth a particular way in which sth is basis organized or done: on a dayto-day/daily/weekly/regular basis sth that makes you remember reminder sth remind sb (of/about sth) v put tasks, problems, etc. prioritize in order of importance so that you can do the most important first priority n: a high/low/top priority accomplish succeed in doing or completing sth SYN achieve continue doing sth despite stick to sth difficulties one (thing) at a time separately; individually expect sth will happen and anticipate prepare for it give part of your work or delegate sth (to sb) power to sb in a lower position a time or date before which sth deadline must be finished

Underline the stress on these words. Use the 🐵 to help you.

deadline accomplish anticipate reminder prioritize

delegate

# Circle the correct word(s). More than one word may be possible.

- 1 Once you have prioritized / accomplished your daily goals make sure you do them all.
- 2 I had to remind / delegate him about the conference next month: he'd forgotten.
- 3 You need to set a time limit, no matter what / whatever happens.
- 4 I tend to check emails on a daily basis / base wherever / whatever I am in the world.
- 5 The organizers hadn't prioritized / anticipated how many people would attend.
- 6 There's nothing worse than a manager who can't delegate / stick to the priorities.
- 7 We've accomplished / achieved a lot this month.
- Employing a new manager is now my top reminder / priority. 8

# Complete the dialogues.

~ Usually on a monthly \_\_\_\_\_. 1 How often do you review the figures? ~ I know, he always \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the task. 2 He won't give up, even if it's hard. ~ Yes. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ that at all. 3 Were you surprised Jack was angry? 4 Do you remember the dates of meetings? ~ No, I often need a \_\_\_\_\_. ~ I know, I should \_\_\_\_\_\_ work more often. 5 You should get your assistant to do it. ~ No, let me just \_\_\_\_\_ of it. 6 Have you got my email address? ~ Yes, I'll do it no \_\_\_\_\_\_ what happens. 7 Will you finish the project this week? ~ Yes, we've \_\_\_\_\_a great deal. It's been a real achievement. 8 9 Will the work be done by a certain date? ~ Yes, I always set \_\_\_\_\_\_ for tasks. 10 Is the time of the meeting in your diary? ~ No, I need to 11 Do you try to do everything at once? ~ No, one thing

# ABOUT YOU Do you think any of the time management tips are more important than others? Write your answers, or ask another student.

# **B** Email stress

# The new office workers' **plague**

If you are constantly interrupted by the need to read your emails, your nerves are on edge. Over a third of workers say that they are increasingly overwhelmed by the endless stream of emails they receive, and are stressed out by the pressure to respond to them promptly. Research has found that some employees check their emails every few minutes, leaving them both frustrated and not very productive. Women seem particularly badly-hit by this flood of correspondence. One of the researchers said that email is 'an amazing tool' but agreed that it is getting out of control. The advice is to set aside two or three specific email reading times each day.

### GLOSSARY

interrupt	stop sth/sb from doing sth interruption n
nerves pl	feelings of worry and anxiety. If your <b>nerves are on</b> edge, you feel very nervous or excited.
be overwhelmed (by sth)	have so many things that you cannot deal with them overwhelming adj (of things to do) so many that you feel stressed
endless	seeming to last for ever
stressed out inf	too anxious and tired to be able to relax stress sb out phrasal v
promptly	quickly; without delay prompt adj
frustrated	feeling annoyed or impatient because you cannot do or achieve what you want. Sth that makes you <b>frustrated</b> is <b>frustrating</b> .
productive	producing good results. A person's <b>productivity</b> is how much they produce in a given period.
badly-hit	badly affected by sth ALSO severely/hard hit
be/get out of control	be/become impossible to deal with OPP <b>be under control</b>
set sth aside	keep sth, especially money or time, to use later SYN <b>put sth aside</b>

SPOTLIGHT metaphorical use of words

A **plague** is a serious fast-spreading disease which often results in death. In the title, though, it is used metaphorically and describes something that causes a lot of trouble. A **stream** is a small river, but here it means 'a continuous flow of things'. A **flood** is a large amount of water from a river or rain, but in the text it means 'a large quantity of something arriving at the same time'.

### 5 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be possible. 1 I always send a prompt / promptly reply 5 We always put / set aside some money each to emails. month for a party at work. 2 The amount of work was overwhelmed / 6 We've had a *plague / flood* of letters this week overwhelming. expressing support. 3 We've been badly / severely hit by a 7 I got very frustrated / frustrating by the computer virus. constant interruptions. 4 I've had a stream / plague of enquiries about the 8 People were streaming / flooding out of vacant job. the building. 6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go? 1 Our spending has got of control. 4 I was overwhelmed the response. 2 He still hasn't called. My are on edge. 5 There's so much work. I'm out. ...... Fortunately, the situation is control. 6 He keeps me when I'm working; it's annoying. Complete the questions with a suitable word from the top of the page. 1 Do you have a constant stream of \_\_\_\_\_\_ when you're working/studying? 2 When you work/study, do often waste time, or are you usually quite ? 3 If you don't think you're achieving much, what might improve your Do you think it's important to reply to emails \_\_\_\_\_, or can they sometimes wait? Do you often feel \_\_\_\_\_ out because of work or studies? 5 Do you ever feel you have an amount of work and you'll never finish it? 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or ask another student. Give reasons or examples.

# 69 The business world

# A Business takeovers

# Warburg takeover imminent

The battle for Warburg Glass may soon be over. Under the leadership of the former chairman Matthew Cavendish and with the backing of corporate finance, a new group is now mounting a fresh takeover bid. An initial bid has already been rejected, but an improved offer is on the agenda for the next meeting of shareholders, and this time the outcome could be different. City analysts believe Cavendish could strike a deal within weeks, setting off a new round of mergers and acquisitions.

SPOTLIGHT takeover, acquisition, merger

In a takeover, one company takes control of another company by buying most of its shares. In an acquisition, one company buys another company which cannot offer its shares for sale to the public. In a merger, two companies agree to join and form a single company.

# GLOSSARY

imminent	likely to happen soon
leadership	the state or position of being a leader: under sb's leadership
former	having a particular position in the past: the former president/boss
backing	help SYN support; back v
corporate	connected with a corporation: corporate finance/strategy
mount	organize and begin sth: mount a challenge/campaign
bid	an offer to pay a particular price for sth <b>bid</b> <i>v</i>
agenda	a list of items to be discussed at a meeting
shareholder	sb who owns shares in a business or company
outcome	the result or effect of an action or event
deal	an agreement, especially in business, for the conditions of buying or doing sth: <b>strike/make/conclude a deal</b>
set sth off	start a process or series of events

# Complete the definitions with a single word.

- 1 Imminent means something will happen
- 2 The outcome of something is the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 If you set something off, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 4 A shareholder shares in a company.
- 5 In a takeover, you take \_\_\_\_\_\_ of another company.
- 6 A former boss was the boss in the
- 7 If you have *backing*, you have \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 If you make a deal, you have an \_\_\_\_\_.

# Complete the sentences.

- 1 If we're lucky, we could \_\_\_\_\_\_ a deal next week.
- 2 He wants to buy the company and has already made one
- 3 If there is more uncertainty, it could \_\_\_\_\_\_ off another wave of selling.
- 4 John Emery is preparing to \_\_\_\_\_\_a challenge for the leadership.
- 5 The takeover hasn't happened yet, but it's \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Wainwrights have already bought one company; this could be their second
- 7 The sale price is the main item on the \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the next meeting.
- 8 It is likely to be a very large business deal which relies on \_\_\_\_\_\_ finance.

## Rewrite the sentences without using the underlined words. Keep the same meaning.

1	She <u>used to be</u> my boss.	
2	He will be leader of the group.	
2	I need them to support me	

- I need them to support me.
- We could reach an agreement.
- 5 Will the people who hold shares be happy? 6 Are you expecting a different result?
- 7 Will they offer more money?
- 8 The two companies have agreed to join.

We could strike Will the \_\_\_\_\_ be happy? Are you expecting a different Will they make ? The two companies have agreed a ......

The group will be under \_\_\_\_\_.

She's my

I need their



# 70 A successful business

Gecko Headgear Ltd is a designer and **manufacturer** of **safety helmets** for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling **surfboards**. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit** a **gap in the market**.

'As a surfer, I could see the **potential** for a light helmet that gave **protection** and **retained** heat.' He made one and sold a few to other **surfers**. He then did some research and discovered that **lifeboat crews** might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be **adapted for** their use, and for that he needed **investment**. So, he **took out** a **bank loan** and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is crucial if you're developing an **innovative** product. In our **case** the process took three years.' The new safety helmets were **launched** in the late 90s.

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and the **firm** has always used customer **feedback** to **refine** the products.

'A good **partnership** with suppliers has also been a key factor in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of our **rivals**.'



### GLOSSARY

GLUSSART			
manufacturer	a person or a company that makes things using machines SYN <b>producer</b> ; <b>manufacture</b> v	investment	the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result <b>invest in sth</b> v
found v (often passive)	start an organization. A person is a <b>founder</b> .	loan	money that sb/sth lends you: <b>take out a</b> ( <b>bank</b> ) <b>loan</b>
diversify	introduce a wider range of products <b>diversification</b> <i>n</i>	launch	start sth new or show sth for the first time launch n
exploit	make the best possible use of sth exploitation n	innovative	introducing new ideas <b>innovate</b> v; <b>innovation</b> n
gap in the market	an opportunity to create a new product which has not been produced by other companies	case contract firm	a situation ( <i>see spotlight</i> ) a written legal agreement: <b>sign a contract</b> a business company
potential	the possibility of becoming successful in the future	feedback	information and comments from people who have used sth: give sb feedback (on sth)
protection	the act of keeping sb/sth safe so it or they are not harmed or damaged	refine partnership	change sth a little to make it better a relationship between two organizations
retain	keep or continue to have sth retention n		
crew	all the people who work on a boat, ship, aircraft, etc.	keep ahead (of sb/sth)	remain in a stronger position compared to sb/sth
adapt sth (for sth)	change sth so you can use it in a different situation	rival	a person or thing that is competing with you SYN <b>competitor</b>

### SPOTLIGHT phrases with case

- in some cases in some situations
- I got a reply immediately, but in some cases you have to wait weeks.
- in that case if that is the situation
- I'm busy on Monday. ~ OK, in that case, I'll call you on Tuesday.
- in any case whatever happens or has happened; anyway
- The traffic will be bad. In any case, we'll be there on time, so don't worry.

## Read the text again quickly if necessary, then answer these questions.

- What qualities did the helmet have to have? 4
- Were the helmets immediately suitable for lifeboat crews?

## Complete the table.

- What is Gecko Headgear?
   6 How did he get the money for extra staff?
- 2 When was it founded? \_\_\_\_\_\_7 What happened in the late 1990s? \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Why did Jeff need to diversify? 8 What information has he used to refine the products?
  - 9 What was a key factor in his success?

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
retain		innovate	
invest		exploit	
diversify		launch	

7

- Change the order of the letters to make words. Use the definitions to help you. a written legal agreement
- 1 TOCCARNT ...... 2 NATERI keep or continue to have something .....
- 3 ONPIRCTNEOT keeping someone safe from harm
- comments from people who use something EFKABEDC \*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*
- VINVONITEA introducing new ideas .....
- REDYFIVIS introduce a wider range of products
  - PERITNSARPH a relationship between two organizations ......
- LOPENITAT the possibility of becoming good in the future .....

# 4 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- They are the main producers / manufacturers.
- 2 If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit / adapt it.
- 3 You can't compete in Europe. ~ In that case / any case, we'll look outside Europe.
- We have to keep ahead of / retain our competitors.
- She invested / founded the company ten years ago. 5
- 6 We need to know what our rivals / competitors are doing.

# Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- 1 You have to make the best possible use of your strengths. ..... The introduction of new ideas was crucial. 2 The product needed to be improved a little bit. 3 4 My partners were prepared to <u>put money</u> in the company. ..... They signed a written legal agreement. 5 ..... I knew the product had the possibility to become better. 6 We try to get information and comments on our products. 7
- They wanted to introduce a wider range of products. 8

# Complete the sentences.

- 1 They were lucky because they saw a \_\_\_\_\_ in the market.
- 2 I needed extra money so I \_\_\_\_\_a bank \_\_\_\_\_a
- They washing machines, but mostly sell them abroad. 3
- You need people who are willing to \_\_\_\_\_ you feedback.
- 5 The company will need more \_\_\_\_\_\_ if it wants to diversify.
- 6 Many of the \_\_\_\_\_\_ on a lifeboat have worked at sea in other jobs.
- 7 In some \_\_\_\_\_\_ people take out a loan, but I borrowed money from my parents.
- Innovation helps a company to \_\_\_\_\_\_ ahead of its \_\_\_\_\_\_. 8
- Carol Simmons was the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the company. Her decision to sell the \_\_\_\_\_\_ four years later was a surprise.
- 10 We plan to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the new design in Paris at the end of the month.

# 71 Success and failure

# A Success

- A Maximo, your restaurant chain has been thriving now for over 20 years. What's the secret of your success?
- B There's no secret really, and it hasn't always been successful. Life was tough at the beginning, and, as you would expect with a new business, we've had various obstacles to overcome. But I guess the big breakthrough was winning the Master Chef competition on TV, and since then we've gone from strength to strength. However, I don't want to boast about myself. The main reason for the success, I think, is the dynamic team of young chefs I have working for me. They are passionate about what they do and aspire to be the best. And you can never be satisfied with where you are, never relax. Forward planning is essential ...

## GLOSSARY

GLOSSAM	
thrive the secret of your success	grow or develop well SYN <b>flourish</b> a way of doing things that has brought you success
obstacle	a situation or event that makes it difficult for you to do sth
overcome	manage to control or deal with a problem
breakthrough	an important development that may lead to an achievement or agreement: <b>make a</b> <b>breakthrough</b>
go from strength to strength	become more and more successful
boast	talk with too much pride about sth you have done or can do <b>boast</b> <i>n</i>
dynamic	(of a person or a business) full of energy and ideas <b>dynamism</b> <i>n</i>
passionate	showing very strong feelings
aspire (to sth / to be sth)	have a strong desire to do or be sth
satisfied	pleased because you have done what you wanted to do OPP <b>dissatisfied</b>
forward planning	planning for the future

## Good or bad? Write G or B.

- 1 We went from strength to strength.
- I've overcome all obstacles.
- 3 I'm still waiting for a breakthrough.
- 4 Their business is flourishing.
- 5 I've never aspired to anything.
- 6 He's always boasting.
- 7 The company has been thriving for years.
- 8 They're a dynamic business.
- 9 We've had so many obstacles.
- 10 She is easily satisfied.

2 Complete the questions with a suitable word from the top of the page.

- 1 Can businesses \_\_\_\_\_\_ without a lot of hard work and a bit of luck?
- 2 In life, is it important to be \_\_\_\_\_\_about what you do and the way you do it?

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*

·.....

......

- 3 Is \_\_\_\_\_ planning important if you want to be successful at anything?
- 4 Is there something that you particularly \_\_\_\_\_\_ to do in your own future?
- 5 Have there been any particular obstacles in your life that you've had to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 Would you say that \_\_\_\_\_\_ is an essential quality for success in business and life?
- 7 Do you think it's possible to talk about the things you have done or achieved without
- 8 Are there positive things you've done where you nevertheless feel a bit \_\_\_\_\_\_ for some reason?
- 9 Think of someone who is very successful. What is the \_\_\_\_\_ of their success?
- 10 Can you think of a recent \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the area of either medicine or technology?

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.



# **B** Failure

Is the business going downhill?

- ~ Yeah, it's a real struggle. Marek thinks he's a failure.
- Carla came bottom in the exams.
- ~ Yes, and I only just scraped through. Mum says we've let her down.
- Why did you drop out of the course?
- ~ Oh, it was hopeless. I was getting nowhere.
- Callum and Natalie are always having rows.
- ~ I know, and I don't want to interfere, but I doubt the marriage will last.

### SPOTLIGHT last

- Last often means 'continue for a period of time'.
- The lesson lasts 45 minutes.
- It can also mean 'continue to exist, function or survive'.
- I don't think their relationship will last. (as above)
- The good weather won't last.
- These shoes should last a long time.
- Finally, last can mean 'be enough for what sb needs'.
- The money will last me a couple of weeks.

godownini	SYN deteriorate
struggle	sth that is very difficult to do or succeed in <b>struggle</b> v
failure	a person or thing that is not successful OPP success
come bottom	receive the lowest score in an exam OPP <b>come top</b>
scrape through (an exam)	only just succeed in passing an exam
let sb down	make sb disappointed because you haven't behaved well or done what you said you would do
drop out (of sth)	leave a course or stop doing sth before you have finished
hopeless	giving no hope that sth/sb will be successful or get better
get somewhere/ nowhere (with sth/st	make/not make progress with sth/sb
row (about/over sth)	(pronounced like <i>now</i> ) a noisy argument or serious disagreement between two or more people <b>row</b> v
interfere (in sth)	get involved in a situation that does

tworre in quality health

GLOSSARY

.....

## 4 Circle the correct word(s). Sometimes both words may be correct.

- Unfortunately, I got / came bottom in the end of year progress tests.
- I don't want to interrupt / interfere in their relationship.
- 3 The film continues for / lasts an hour and a half.
- 4 She said she'd help but didn't, so she let us down / out badly.

## 5 Two words are missing in each dialogue. What are they? Where do they go?

- 1 The business is downhill. ~ Yeah, it's been for a while now.
- 2 What was the about? ~ Kate got annoyed because of Sonny's in her project.
- 3 Did Mia top in the exam? ~ Yes, but Tom only just through.
- 4 Do you think the relationship will long? ~ No. Not if Kieran keeps her down.
- 5 Why did she drop of the course? ~ She told me it was.
- 6 Why did you in their cooking? ~ I just felt they were nowhere with it.

### 6 Complete the questions.

Have you ever ...

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ top in anything?
- 2 just \_\_\_\_\_ through an exam?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ out of a course or class because you you didn't like it, or because it was too easy?
- 4 done something or achieved something that you thought was a real \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 had a serious \_\_\_\_\_\_ with another person? What was it about? Do you have a good relationship with them now?
- 6 stopped doing something because you felt you were getting \_\_\_\_\_?

## ABOUT YOU Write answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student the questions.

not involve you and where you are

5 Basically, the campaign has been a fail / failure.

6 Her health has been going downhill /

8 Jeans usually last / wear a long time.

7 I heard they had a terrible row / argument.

deteriorating for some time.

probably not wanted interference n

# 72 Problems and solutions

# A Problems in general

A number of adjectives are used with *problem*: a **minor** problem (= small; OPP **major**), a **growing** problem (= getting bigger all the time), an **urgent** problem (= needs attention now) and an **insoluble** problem (= cannot be solved).

There are also many verbs that are commonly used with problem:

If problems arise, they start to exist. If you raise a problem, you mention it so that people can discuss it or deal with it. If you address a problem, you start to think about how to solve it. If you confront a problem or difficult situation, you deal with it. SYN face (up to) sth If you tackle a problem, you make a big effort to deal with it. If you resolve a problem, you find a solution to it. SYN solve If you overcome a problem, you succeed in dealing with a problem that has prevented you from achieving something. If you exaggerate a problem, you make it seem bigger than it is. If a problem escalates, it gets bigger or worse. SYN grow If problems multiply, they increase very much in number.

Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word that keeps the same meaning.

- Anxiety about weight is increasing among teenage girls.
- 2 She's had to face up to her fear of flying.
- 3 How did the problem <u>first occur</u>?
- 4 Our problems have more than doubled since last year.
- 5 Funding has become an impossible problem.
- 6 Unemployment is a problem, but we mustn't make it seem bigger than it is.
- 7 Can we easily find a solution to plastic recycling?
- 8 They've been making a big effort to solve the problem of knife crime for years.

### 2 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- 1 Have they made the problem worse? ~ Yes, it has been \_\_\_\_\_\_ for months .
- 2 Is he aware of the problem? ~ No, but he'll have to \_\_\_\_\_\_ it soon.
- 3 Is it an \_\_\_\_\_ problem? ~ No, we can deal with it later.
- 4 Have they discussed finance? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_\_ it at the last meeting.
- 5 Has she \_\_\_\_\_ her shyness? ~ Yes, and the difference is amazing.
- 6 Have they solved the problem? ~ No, but they're working hard to \_\_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 7 It's an \_\_\_\_\_ problem, isn't it? ~ It seems to be: we just don't know what to do.
- 8 Are they \_\_\_\_\_ the problem? ~ Yes, I think they're making a real effort.
- 9 Is it a major issue? ~ No, it's just a \_\_\_\_\_ problem, really.
- 10 Do we need to deal with it now? ~ Yes, otherwise it could \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Are these things problems in your country? If so, which adjectives and verbs above might describe the problem, and what is the government doing about them? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

litter on the streets pollution in town centres

graffiti on walls parking in town centres increasing household rubbish bullying in schools

# **B** Teenage problems and solutions

# How parents can tackle teenage problems problems

- 1 Teenagers are never satisfied with their appearance, and this can be very damaging for their self-esteem. Don't play down these worries, even if they seem insignificant to you. Explain that others don't notice the details that we notice in ourselves.
- 2 Some teenagers can accept failure, while others let it get them down. Help your teen to keep things in perspective. Explain that everyone has setbacks in life, and reassure them that you're behind them 100%, regardless of what happens.
- 3 Some teenagers boys especially find it difficult to identify and articulate how they feel. Keep channels of communication open at all times and respect their ideas.

demontra	having a had offect on ch/cth damage u
damaging self-esteem	having a bad effect on sb/sth <b>damage</b> v the way you feel about yourself: <b>have high/low</b> <b>self-esteem</b>
play sth down	try to make sth seem less important than it really is OPP take sth seriously
insignificant	not big enough to be considered important OPP <b>significant</b> ; <b>significance</b> n
accept	continue in a difficult situation: accept the fact that
get sb down	If sth gets you down, it makes you feel sad or depressed.
perspective	the ability to think about problems and decisions without exaggerating their importance: <i>keep sth/things in perspective</i>
setback	a problem that delays or prevents progress
reassure	say or do sth that makes sb less worried
be behind sb/sth	give your support to sb/sth
regardless of sth	without being affected or influenced by sth
articulate formal	express your thoughts clearly in words <b>articulat</b> adj (Listen to the different pronunciation of the verb and adjective on the (PP.)
channel	a system or method for sending or obtaining information: a channel of communication

## Complete the sentences. His poor exam results have not been good for his self-\_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 It's upsetting, but she mustn't let it \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 She's clever and can her ideas very clearly.
- 4 His mother will support him \_\_\_\_\_\_ of what he does, because she loves him.
- 5 Bullying is not an \_\_\_\_\_ issue; it's a serious problem.
- 6 Parents must ensure there is an open \_\_\_\_\_\_ of communication with their kids.
- 7 Some boys cannot \_\_\_\_\_\_ the fact that they're not good enough to be professional footballers.
- 8 I'm always telling my son to work harder, but he doesn't take me
- 9 Air pollution is very \_\_\_\_\_\_ to people's health.
  10 The government is not optimistic, and is \_\_\_\_\_\_ any hopes of a settlement.

5 Complete the conversation with a suitable word or phrase.

- A: One of the teachers told Carrie that she wasn't good enough to study medicine at university, and it has
- really (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ her confidence.
  B: I'm sure it has. And Carrie tends to let things (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_, doesn't she?
- A: Yes. And when you're her age, it's difficult to keep things in (3)
- B: I guess so. But I'm sure her mother has supported her.

A: Oh yes, she has. She's been right (4) her all along, and is constantly (5) her that everything will be OK. But it's been a (6) for her.

- B: And is there any (7) in what the teacher is saying? Do you think he's right?
- where good communication is important.

6 ABOUT YOU Have you experienced any of the teenage problems above, either as a teenager yourself or as a parent? What other problems do teenagers often have, and how should parents respond? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

# 73 Old and new

# A A barn conversion

Friends of mine converted an old barn that had formerly been used for domestic animals. They bought it for next to nothing, and were fortunate that parts of it were still quite well-preserved. They estimated they could convert the barn for about £200,000, but the council then made them modify their building plans so the original estimate turned out to be a bit optimistic. Nevetheless, they now have a magnificent contemporary four-bedroom home.



## GLOSSARY

convert (sth) (into sth)	change from one form, system, or use into another <b>conversion</b> <i>n</i>	estimate	calculate the size, cost, etc. of sth approximately estimate n
formerly	in the past; before now former adj	modify	change sth slightly
domestic	(of animals) kept as pets or on a farm	turn out (to be sth)	prove to be
next to nothing fortunate	very little money, etc: <i>buy sth for next to nothing</i> lucky OPP <b>unfortunate</b>	magnificent	extremely impressive and attractive SYN splendid
preserve	keep sth safe and in good condition: a well-preserved 18 <sup>th</sup> century table	contemporary	of the present time; modern

1 Circle the odd one out based on the pronunciation of the underlined letters. Use the @ to help you.

1 convert modify domestic

- 3 estimate v estimate n fortunate
- 2 contemporary formerly fortunate
- 4 convert preserve formerly

# 2 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 They were not very lucky with that house.
- 2 It's a magnificent apartment.
- 3 It's a hotel now, but in the past it was a bank.
- 4 It's an old house but it's in good condition.
- 5 They've just bought a very modern house.
- 6 It was a small cottage, but it's been changed slightly over the years.
- 7 We thought it would be quite grand, but in the end it was rather small.
- 8 They have calculated they will need about £10,000.
- 9 It cost very little.
- 10 The barn is for our cows, sheep, etc. in the winter.

# Complete the dialogues. More than one word may be correct.

- 1 The building used to be a prison, didn't it?
- 2 Did they throw out all the old furniture?
- 3 Is it an old cottage they've bought?
- 4 How big is it?
- 5 Are you keeping to your original plan?
- 6 The conversion is very impressive.
- Do they want to keep all the old features in the house? ~ No, they want something more 7
- Are they keeping the barn as it is? 8

TEST YOURSELF

- ~ No, it's a hospital.
- ~ No, they thought it was worth \_\_\_\_\_.
- ~ No, it's a barn \_\_\_\_\_.
- ~ The agent \_\_\_\_\_\_ it is about 300 square metres.

.....

- ~ No, we've had to \_\_\_\_\_\_ it a bit.
- ~ Oh yes, the house is really now.
- ~ No, they're \_\_\_\_\_\_ it into a music studio.

Old ar	nd new objects	GLOSSARY	
		innovative	featuring or introducing new idea
		device	methods, etc. an object or piece of equipment designed to do a particular job
20	Innovative anti-snore device – clips onto sleeper's nose for a good night's sleep	clip	fasten sth with a <b>clip</b> (= a small object, usually of metal or plastic, used for holding things together, e.g. <b>a paper clip</b> , <b>a hair clip</b> )
KOREA	Up-to-date guidebook to Korea - second-	up to date	having the most recent informatio an up-to-date timetable OPP out of date
	hand but good as new	genuine	real, exactly what it appears to be SYN authentic
		_ antique	old and often very valuable antique n
	Genuine antique grandfather clock. The	mechanism	a set of moving parts in a machine that does a certain task
	8-day <b>mechanism</b> is in perfect condition.		sth made as a copy of an earlier object or style <b>reproduce</b> v
A.		ancient	belonging to a period of history that is thousands of years ago
	Reproduction of Ancient Egyptian statue	reconditioned	(of a machine) repaired so that it is in good condition
	of the goddess Bastet	packaging	materials used to wrap and protect goods sold in shops
		SPOTLIGHT	second-hand and new
18	Fully reconditioned exercise bike with	If something is	second-hand, it is not completely
Is the pror	original packaging and instructions	new. If somethin say <b>brand new</b> describe somet	ng is completely new, we usually (As) good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to b
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete	antique       3       genuine       device         ism reconditioned       4       genuine       pack         the phrase in each sentence.	new. If somethis say brand new describe something ime or different?	Write S or D. Use the end to an <u>tique</u> authen <u>tic</u> inn <u>o</u> vative repr <u>o</u> duction
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema	antique       3       genuine       device         ism reconditioned       4       genuine       pack         the phrase in each sentence.       of date.	new. If somethis say brand new describe something ame or different?	to
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a	antique       3       genuine       device         ism reconditioned       4       genuine       pack         the phrase in each sentence.	new. If somethis say brand new describe something ime or different? The data is up 5 My car is brand	to
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa	antique       3       genuine       <	new. If somethis say brand new describe something ime or different? The data is up 5 My car is brand	<ul> <li>Ing is completely new, we usually</li> <li>(As) good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to be the second second</li></ul>
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa	anciation of the underlined letters the satisfies         antique       3 genuine device         ism reconditioned       4 genuine pack         the phrase in each sentence.         ail list is       of date.         paper       for this document.         ais       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.	new. If somethis say brand new describe something ime or different? The data is up 5 My car is brand 6 I usually buy so	<ul> <li>Ing is completely new, we usually (As) good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to be write S or D. Use the (Arrow) to S antique authentic innovative reproduction</li> <li>to</li></ul>
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be	anciation of the underlined letters the satisfies         antique       3       genuine device         ism reconditioned       4       genuine pack         the phrase in each sentence.       4       genuine pack         ail list is       of date.       of date.         paper       for this document.       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.       y charger is an extremely useful energy-saving autifully made, 18 <sup>th</sup> century       charger	new. If somethis say brand new describe something d	to
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be 3 There w	anciation of the underlined letters the satisfies         antique       3 genuine device         ism reconditioned       4 genuine pack         the phrase in each sentence.         ail list is       of date.         paper       for this document.         ais       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.       y charger is an extremely useful energy-saving autifully made, 18 <sup>th</sup> century         cere earrings like it thousands of years ago in	new. If somethis say brand new describe something describe something describe something and the descri	to
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be 3 There w 4 We bound	antique       3       genuine       genuine         ism reconditioned       4       genuine       pack         the phrase in each sentence.       ail list is       of date.         paper       for this document.         ais       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.         ty charger is an extremely useful energy-saving autifully made, 18 <sup>th</sup> century       ck         ere earrings like it thousands of years ago in       of them and sell them in tourist shops         ght a second-hand hoover – it was fully	new. If somethis say brand new describe something describe something describe something and fanta is up to the data is u	to
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be 3 There w 4 We bour 5 I don't w	anciation of the underlined letters the sa         antique       3       genuine device         ism reconditioned       4       genuine pack         the phrase in each sentence.       4       genuine pack         ail list is       of date.       of date.         paper       for this document.       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.       y charger is an extremely useful energy-saving autifully made, 18 <sup>th</sup> century       ck         ere earrings like it thousands of years ago in	new. If somethis say brand new describe something describe something describe something and fanta is up to the data is u	As good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to be write <i>S</i> or <i>D</i> . Use the reproduction in antique authentic in novative reproduction to books.
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be 3 There w 4 We bour 5 I don't w 6 Shops o	antique       3       genuine       genuine         ism reconditioned       4       genuine       pack         the phrase in each sentence.       ail list is       of date.         paper       for this document.         ais       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.         ty charger is an extremely useful energy-saving autifully made, 18 <sup>th</sup> century       ck         ere earrings like it thousands of years ago in       of them and sell them in tourist shops         ght a second-hand hoover – it was fully       want a copy of the clock: I want a         ften sell more goods if they're displayed in attraction       attraction	new. If somethis say brand new describe something describe something describe something and fanta is up to the data is u	As good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to a write S or D. Use the error to s antique authentic for innovative reproduction to
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This emails 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be 3 There with 4 We bour 5 I don't with 6 Shops on 7 Our small 8 They wat	antique       3       genuine       <	new. If somethis say brand new describe something ame or different? aging	<pre>mg is completely new, we usually (As) good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to b Write S or D. Use the end to antique authentic antique authentic antique authentic antique reproduction to ce, and now they make astic value. antiernet at a great profit.</pre>
help you. 1 <u>an</u> cient 2 mech <u>an</u> Complete 1 This ema 2 I need a 3 The sofa Complete 1 A batter 2 It's a be 3 There w 4 We bour 5 I don't w 6 Shops o 7 Our sma 8 They wa most	antique       3       genuine       genuine         ism reconditioned       4       genuine       pack         the phrase in each sentence.       ail list is       of date.         paper       for this document.         ais       as new.         the sentences with a suitable word.         ty charger is an extremely useful energy-saving autifully made, 18 <sup>th</sup> century       closenter close	new. If somethisay brand new describe something and fanta is up to date, and they're and they in the and they're and they in the and the a	As good as new can be used to thing that is not new but appears to be the to the thing that is not new but appears to be the to

# 74 ) Time

# A Thinking about time

- Time flies when you get older.
- I get depressed from time to time.
- It's about time I started a pension.

I do everything at the last minute.

At one time I wanted to be a journalist.

- In retrospect, I wish I'd gone to university.
- For the time being, I'm happy where I am.
- I think punctuality is a great virtue.
- I live on a day-to-day basis.
- With hindsight, I should've worked harder.



# Find eight time phrases in the box.

leave sth	one time	flies	from time	with	in	day		at
for the time	-to-day	hindsight	retrospect	being	to time	to the	last min	ute

Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given. Keep the same meaning.

Looking back, I didn't enjoy it.
 He leaves things till the last minute.
 It was an ambition in the past but not now.
 I go there now and again.
 I don't think about the future.
 I don't think about the future.
 I'm OK here at the moment.
 In \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 In \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 In \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 In \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 He does \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 It was an ambition at \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 I go there from \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 I live on a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
 I'll be OK here for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

# 3 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Looking \_\_\_\_\_\_, I don't think I made the most of my time at university.
- 2 With the benefit of \_\_\_\_\_\_, it was probably a mistake for me to leave my last job.
- 3 The trouble with Angel is that he \_\_\_\_\_\_ everything till the last \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Listen, it's \_\_\_\_\_\_ time you started taking these exams seriously.
- 5 I'm always \_\_\_\_\_\_, never late. For some people though, \_\_\_\_\_\_ doesn't matter.
- 6 The time has \_\_\_\_\_\_ since I've been in Greece. I've loved every minute of it.
- 7 For most people, patience is a great \_\_\_\_\_\_. Unfortunately, I'm very impatient, but I have worse than that!
- 8 This dictionary will be big enough \_\_\_\_\_\_ the time \_\_\_\_\_.

ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are any true for you? Do you agree with any of them? Write your answers, using the phrases in **bold**, or talk to another student.





# **B** Memories

Some people have very vivid memories of their early childhood and can recall events in extraordinary detail. I have a few unforgettable memories. One of them is when I slipped and fell off a wall, and landed on a four-inch nail. It was still stuck in my foot when they took me to hospital. Broadly speaking, though, when I look back on that period of my life, I don't have many lasting or vivid memories; most are quite vague.

### GLOSSARY

vivid	(of memories, a description, etc.) very clear; producing a strong picture in your mind
recall formal	remember sth from the past recollection n
extraordinary	surprising, unusual and not what you expect SYN incredible
unforgettable	If sth is <b>unforgettable</b> , you cannot forget it, usually because it is beautiful, surprising or interesting.
slip (over/on sth)	slide a short distance by accident so that you fall or nearly fall
land	come down to the ground after falling or being thrown
inch	a measure of length, equal to approximately 2.5 cm
stick (in sth)	become fixed in one position and impossible to move
broadly speaking	used to show that what you are saying is true in general ALSO generally speaking, on the whole
look back (on sth)	think about sth in your past
lasting	continuing to exist or have an effect for a long time
vague	not clear in a person's mind: a vague memory/recollection

### 5 Underline the correct answer(s). Both answers may be possible.

- I only have a vague / vivid memory; it was a long time ago.
- She's had an extraordinary / incredible life.
- 3 I don't remember / recall the occasion very well.
- 4 It was ages ago, but I still have a very vague / vivid memory of it, as if it was yesterday.
- 5 On the whole / Broadly speaking, my recollections are guite vague.
- 6 He slipped / stuck on the ice and fell over.
- 7 I made a number of *lasting / vivid* friendships when I was at university.
- 8 Sam fell off the wall but managed to slip / land on his feet.

### 6 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- Broadly speaking, my memory isn't very good.
- Climbing that mountain was an <u>incredible</u> experience.
- 3 I'm good at remembering events from my past.
- 4 She has a vague memory of the accident.
- 5 I don't remember <u>hitting the ground</u> after I fell.

### 7 Complete the text with suitable words.

I'm a keen climber and one of my most (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ memories was when I attempted to climb part of Mount Snowdon in Wales. I was quite near the top when I (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ on some loose rock. I must've fallen about five metres before I (3) on a narrow piece of rock. It was only about 18 (4) wide, so I could hardly move. Worse still, there was something in my back (I later discovered it was part of my equipment), and the pain was (5) terrible. I was there for three hours before being rescued. (6) \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the incident, it was an (7) \_\_\_\_\_ piece of luck that I wasn't seriously injured. It's an (8) memory, though not something that I (9) \_\_\_\_\_\_ with pleasure.

### ABOUT YOU Complete the three guestions, then write your own answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 What is your earliest \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 What is your most \_\_\_\_\_ memory of childhood?
- 3 Generally \_\_\_\_\_, do you think you \_\_\_\_\_\_events in your past clearly, or are your recollections quite \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Do you often look \_\_\_\_\_\_ on things from your past? Why / Why not?

# 75 Link words and phrases

# A Written and spoken

1	Here are some link words from both written and spoken English.	GLOSSARY	
	Some people can work to music <b>while/whereas</b> others find it very difficult. <b>While</b> the situation is not ideal, we'll have to manage. It's not a serious problem. <b>Nonetheless/Nevertheless</b> , we'll have to do something about it. People respect the minister for her knowledge of education. <b>Furthermore/Moreover</b> , they trust her. You can withdraw £250 a day, <b>provided/providing</b> that you have the money in your account.	while while nonetheless formal furthermore formal provided (that)	used to compare or contrast two people, things, situations, etc. SYN whereas (at the beginning of a sentence) although; despite the fact that despite this fact SYN nevertheless (used especially to add a point to an argument) in addition to what has just been said SYN moreover formal used to say what must be done or happen to make sth else possible; only if SYN providing (that)
1	I'd better shut the window, <b>otherwise</b> it'll get cold in here. Isabella failed her maths exam. <b>Consequently</b> , they wouldn't give her a place at the college.	otherwise	used to state what the result would be if sth didn't happen or the situation were different
1	wasn't very keen on the idea of flying to Australia. <b>Besides</b> , I couldn't afford it.	consequently besides	as a result; therefore in addition to what has just been said
	Regular exercise strengthens the heart, <b>thereby</b> reducing the risk of heart attack.	thereby formal	used to introduce the result of the action or situation mentioned

Orcle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are possible.

- The students are happy with the course. Furthermore / Nonetheless they want to carry on next term.
- 2 My father was there for two days, whereas / while the recommended stay is three.
- 3 We left early, otherwise / consequently we would've missed the bus.
- 4 Neither of us had an umbrella. Consequently, / Therefore, we both got rather wet.
- 5 I don't really want to go. Nevertheless, / Besides, it's too late now.
- 6 While / Although the weather wasn't great, we still managed to have a good time.
- 7 I can stay at the hotel providing / while I book well in advance.
- 8 The company will offer compensation, thereby / nevertheless ending the dispute.

## 2 Complete the sentences with a suitable link word or phrase.

- 1 I found the work quite difficult \_\_\_\_\_ my brother thought it was easy.
- 2 It is one of the best places to stay. \_\_\_\_\_, it's not that expensive.
- 3 You can borrow the car that you return it by the weekend.
- 4 We both found the walk very tiring. \_\_\_\_\_, we carried on till the end.
- 5 It's a long way to go just for the evening. , I'm not that keen on opera.
- 6 The government reduced spending on arms, \_\_\_\_\_\_ increasing funds available for health.
- 7 We had to stay and wait for my mother, and \_\_\_\_\_\_ we missed our train.
- 8 I'll have to work on Saturday , \_\_\_\_\_ I'll never finish this project on time.

## Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- 1 I don't really want to go abroad this summer. Besides,
- 2 My brother is always late whereas \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I missed the bus and consequently \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 You can watch me practise provided that \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We'd better lock the door, otherwise \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 It wasn't the greatest film I've ever seen. Nevertheless, \_\_\_\_\_

# B More formal link words

... It is our understanding that the residents of Alton Court received a full apology from the Council in writing prior to the meeting of 7 June. In view of the limited inconvenience they suffered, this was felt to be adequate; thus no further action was taken.

With regard to Mr Wilson, however, some damage was caused to his property, and he was obliged to move out while the damage was being repaired. Since the council accepts full responsibility for this, it has agreed to pay Mr Wilson the full costs of the repair and a further £200 in compensation.

In conclusion, we hope this brings an end to the matter.

Yours ....

## GLOSSARY prio

prior to sth formal	before sth
in view of sth formal	SYN considering sth
inconvenience	a quality of not being easy or suitable OPP <b>convenience</b>
adequate	acceptable; good enough OPP inadequate
thus formal	therefore; for this reason SYN hence formal
with regard to sb/sth formal	connected with sb/sth SYN regarding sb/sth formal
oblige (usually passive)	force sb to do sth
since	as; because
compensation	money you pay to sb because you have injured them, or lost or damaged their property
in conclusion	used in writing or a formal speech to show that you are about to finish what you are saying

## Underline the stress on these words. Use the 🔤 to help you.

considering conclusion

6

inconvenience inadequate

adequate compensation

## Replace the underlined word(s) with a more formal word or phrase.

1	He was only seven years old, so he could not be held responsible for his actions.	
2	We were told before the meeting.	
3	His performance was extraordinary considering his advancing years.	
4	As far as the other climbers are concerned, we have no further information.	
5	So, to finish what I was saying, there is still a lot of research we need to do.	
6	In the end, they had to release the men	
C	omplete the sentences.	

- 1 I wasn't happy with her apology. I didn't think it was \_\_\_\_\_\_ at all.
- 2 They did not have valid tickets, \_\_\_\_\_\_ they were not allowed to board the train.
- our conversation yesterday, I had not met either man. 3
- the roof, the contractors Work on the new extension will commence next month. have assured us that necessary repairs will be carried out immediately.
- the complaints received, we will need to speak to the director. 5
- , the board would like to thank everyone for attending the meeting and for 6 making such a positive contribution.
- As the rail company lost all our luggage, we are asking them for 7
- I didn't have enough money to pay the fare, so I was \_\_\_\_\_\_ to get off the train. 8
- 9 The building work made life difficult, but the neighbours did apologize for the
- 10 We decided to go home early \_\_\_\_\_\_ we had already done everything we planned to do.
- 11 The heating on the train was \_\_\_\_\_\_, so I complained to the rail company.
- 12 They provided additional seats for the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the customers.

# 76 Academic English

# **A** Public examinations

# Exam requirements

Some public examinations in English consist of a written paper in which candidates are required to produce a piece of extended writing. They may be asked to present and develop an argument, evaluate ideas, summarize information, etc. Candidates are assessed on a number of criteria, including their ability to write in an organized and coherent way, their command of a range of stylistic features, and their ability to write in an appropriate register. Some tasks may ask students to write a narrative.

## SPOTLIGHT present v

Present (stress on second syllable) can mean 'show, offer or describe something for others to look at and consider'.

- She's presenting a talk at the conference. (SYN give a presentation n)
- They want to present their ideas at the meeting next week.

It is also used when you give something to somebody, especially at a ceremony.

The mayor presented the prizes to the winners.

### GLOSSARY

extended	long or longer than usual or expected
argument	a set of reasons that sb uses to show that sth is true or correct
evaluate	form an opinion of sth after thinking about it carefully <b>evaluation</b> n; SYN <b>assess</b> v; <b>assessment</b> n
summarize	give a short statement that brings together the main points of sth <b>summary</b> n
criterion (pl criteria)	a standard or principle by which sth is judged
coherent	(of ideas, arguments, etc.) logical and well organized; clear and easy to understand OPP <b>incoherent</b> ; <b>coherence</b> n
command of sth	a knowledge of sth and an ability to use it well
stylistic	connected to the way a writer or artist does sth <b>style</b> <i>n</i>
register	the words, grammar and style that sb uses in a particular situation: <i>a formal/informal register</i>
narrative	a description of connected events; a story. A person is a <b>narrator</b> .

# Underline the stress on these words. Use the 👳 to help you.

argument	evaluate	evaluation	criterion	incoherent
present v	narrative	narrator	stylistic	summarize

# 2 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers may be possible.

- 1 He asked me to summary / summarize the main points.
- 2 Having read her essay, what is your command / assessment of it?
- 3 The events in the novel are described by a narrative / narrator.
- 4 We had to assess / evaluate the different ideas.
- 5 The single most important criterion / criteria was experience.
- 6 The chairman came to my criterion / presentation and thanked me afterwards.
- It was an interesting *argument / register*, but I'm not sure I agree with it. 7
- 8 You have to be able to summarize / present your argument on paper.

## 3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- I decided to write a \_\_\_\_\_ because I'm quite good at telling stories.
- 2 You should provide a brief \_\_\_\_\_\_ of your ideas at the end of the talk.
- 3 What was your \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the essay? I found it \_\_\_\_\_\_ and couldn't follow it.
- The use of metaphors is an important feature of her writing.
- What are your \_\_\_\_\_\_ for choosing the best essay? 5
- To write an academic essay, you need a very good \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the language.
- 7 Most academic essays are written in a formal style and
- 8 I didn't think the \_\_\_\_\_ he put forward in his essay was very convincing.
- The head will the prize for the best piece of \_\_\_\_\_\_ writing. 9
- You have to develop an \_\_\_\_\_, which is completely \_\_\_\_\_, so the reader can 10 understand it.

TEST YOURSELF

160 Written English

# **B** The basics of academic writing

In a piece of academic writing, the writer will do at least some of the following:

- outline their main ideas
- explore certain ideas in greater depth
- illustrate their ideas
- adopt a particular stance or point of view
- draw conclusions

They may also compare and contrast, **condemn** or **condone**, explain, describe, analyse, evaluate, summarize, **assert**, **justify**, and – to the annoyance of some people – **sit on the fence**.

GLOSSARY	
outline	give a description of the main points involved in sth <b>outline</b> <i>n</i>
explore	examine sth carefully: <i>explore an idea</i> ; exploration n
illustrate	make the meaning of sth clearer by giving examples <b>illustration</b> <i>n</i>
adopt	take a particular point of view, or use a particular method
stance (on sth)	an opinion that sb has about sth and expresses publicly SYN <b>position</b>
conclusion	a decision that you make about sth after thinking about it, discussing it and looking at any evidence: draw/reach/come to a conclusion (about sth)
condemn	say publicly that you think sth/sb is bad or wrong condemnation <i>n</i>
condone	accept behaviour that most people think is wrong
assert	state clearly that sth is true assertion n
justify	show that sth is right or reasonable justification n
sit on the fence	avoid deciding or saying which side of an argument you support

# 4 The pronunciation of the underlined letters is the same in seven of the words. Which word is different? Use the approximation to help you.

adopt assert conclusion condemn condone justify illustrate position

# 5 Which of these words clearly show a particular point of view?

condemn outline condone assert explore justify adopt a stance illustrate

## 6 Complete the sentences with a form of the word in capitals.

1 There was universal \_\_\_\_\_ of the attack.

- 2 What \_\_\_\_\_ did you draw about the reason for the delay? CONCLUDE
- 3 I thought he gave a good \_\_\_\_\_\_ of his point.
- 4 The book is an \_\_\_\_\_ of the human mind.
- 5 He was correct in his \_\_\_\_\_\_ that the man was guilty.

6 What was his \_\_\_\_\_ for the government's position?

## Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 She gave a general picture of her ideas.
- 2 She was very critical of his behaviour.
- 3 She went on to analyse the idea in more depth.
- 4 She wouldn't accept or tolerate his behaviour.
- 5 She didn't take and support a clear position.
- 6 She couldn't show her ideas were reasonable.
- 7 She gave examples of her ideas.

TEST YOURSELF

- 8 In the end, she wouldn't agree or disagree.
- 9 She continued to <u>state very clearly</u> that she was innocent.
- He didn't <u>come to any final decisions or</u> judgement.



CONDEMN

ILLUSTRATE

EXPLORE

ASSERT

JUSTIFY

# Far from the Madding Crowd

by Thomas Hardy

Summary: After inheriting her uncle's farm, Hardy's heroine, Bathsheba Everdene, becomes an independent woman. Her beauty attracts many admirers: farm worker Gabriel Oak, landowner William Boldwood, and handsome soldier Frank Troy, whom she later marries. However, Troy is a selfish and evil man who allows his earlier love, Fanny Robin, to die in poverty while giving birth to his child. Boldwood hates Troy, and later in the novel he kills him in a jealous rage. Gabriel asks for mercy to be shown him, and Boldwood escapes death but is sent to prison instead. The novel ends with Bathsheba marrying Gabriel.

**Commentary:** Incidents, such as Fanny's pregnancy and her terrible death, and Boldwood's act of murderous violence, convey Hardy's growing taste for tragedy. But unlike Tess in the later *Tess of the D'Urbevilles*, fate still favours Bathsheba, as she finally finds happiness with Gabriel, who embodies the best qualities of the rural community in its fight against industrialization\*, which Hardy found so alien.

Hardy **exposes** the dangers **inherent** in romantic love: relationships based on romantic love are by nature **irrational**, unstable and at risk of **betrayal**. In contrast, he **implies** that the true basis of a happy marriage is **companionship** and a common interest.

For some it is also an early example of **feminist** literature. Bathsheba is **portrayed** as an independent woman with the courage to **defy convention** and run a farm by herself. Her passionate nature leads her into errors of judgement, but Hardy gives her the qualities of strength, intelligence and good luck to overcome the mistakes of youth.

GLOSSARY			
inherit	receive property, money, etc, from sb who has died <b>inheritance</b> <i>n</i>	expose	tell the true facts about sth and show it to be bad or wrong
evil rage	morally bad; causing harm to people <b>evil</b> <i>n</i> a feeling of violent anger that is difficult	inherent (in sth)	If sth is <b>inherent in</b> sth, it is a natural part of it and cannot be removed from it.
	to control	irrational	not logical or sensible OPP rational
mercy	a kind or forgiving attitude towards sb you have the power to harm or the right to punish	betrayal	the act of being disloyal to sb who trusts you <b>betray</b> v
commentary	a written explanation or discussion of sth such as a book	imply	suggest sth in an indirect way without actually saying it <b>implication</b> <i>n</i>
incident	sth that happens, especially sth that is unusual or unpleasant	companionship	a friendly and comfortable relationship between people
pregnancy	the state of being <b>pregnant</b> (= expecting a baby)	feminist	having the belief that women should have the same rights and opportunities as men
convey sth (to sb) tragedy	communicate ideas and feelings to sb a very sad event, especially one that often	portray	describe sb/sth in a piece of writing
	involves death	defy	refuse to obey a law, a rule or a person
fate	a power that is believed to control everything and that cannot be changed	convention	defiant adj the behaviour and attitudes that most
embody formal alien	be a good example of sth strange, difficult to understand, and often unacceptable		people consider to be normal and right conventional <i>adj</i> ; OPP unconventional

\*industrialization = the development of new manufacturing processes in Britain from the late 18<sup>th</sup> century into the 19<sup>th</sup> century

A	dd the relat	ed words.						
be	tray	n	inherit		n	pregna	ncy	adj
po	ortray	n	defy .		adj	conven	tion	adj
im	iply	n	evil n		adj			adj
Ci	rcle the cor	rect answer.						
1		tary on a novel				main event	S.	
2		g is alien to you						
3		ional beliefs are		-	normal.			
4		idered to be wi						
5		se someone, yo						
6		it something, it				ow/don't k	now.	
7		ion is <i>a direct / a</i>			mething.			
8	If you are de	efiant, you <b>agre</b>	e/refuse to do	o something.				
Re	eplace the u	inderlined wo	ord(s) with a	word (or wo	rds) that	has a simi	lar meaning	<b>g</b> .
1	She is portr	aved as a very h	nonest charact	ter.		*******		
2		xpecting a baby				*********		
3		an's speech is o			f a weddir	ng		
4		ee he was full c						
5	She is able	to communicate	e a lot of feelin	ng through he	er gestures			
6	His attitude	is not logical o	r reasonable.			********		
7	She is a goo	od example of o	optimism and	positive think	ing.			
8	She misses	the enjoyment	of being with	Ellen.				
C	omplete the	e dialogues wi	ith a suitable	word.				
1	Did he say	Callum was resp	oonsible? ~ He	didn't actual	y say it, bu	it he	it.	
2	Do you ofte	en wear black? -	- No, but it's fa	airly	to	wear black	at funerals.	
3	How did yo	u feel living in M	New York? ~ A	t first it felt ve	ry			
4		te about the rig					iest	litera
5	What's the	book about? ~	Basically it's ab	out the confl	ict of good	d and		
6		ents leave her t						
7		sk with this kind						new business.
8	Are there ar	ny evil characte	rs? ~ Yes, and	she	the	eir evil and	cruelty throu	ghout the no
9	Was the	a	surprise? ~ Ye	s, nobody kn	ew they w	anted a bal	DY.	
10		r violent? ~ Yes,						dy.
Co	2010 C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	e summary of		the second second	om the bo	ox, in the c	orrect form	<b>n.</b>
	fate embody	tragedy	mercy defy	portray betray	embod	liment		
То								
in	the novel as	ine of Hardy's no a daughter of na	over that bears	ner name: res	many n	oble qualities. Si	es that make	her such a
SVI	mpathetic ch	aracter. But time	and again she	has to endur	e suffering	from the br	utal Alec D'U	rbeville, who
(3)	)	of evil in th	ne novel. The o	ther man in h	er life is An	igel Clare, a	n intelligent y	oung man w
1.41		conventio	a sea of the landstate		r	Test of the second s		17 61





a painting by J.M.W. Turner, after whom the Turner Prize is named

Art

The Turner Prize is awarded **annually** to a British visual artist for **outstanding artistic merit**. The winner also receives £25,000, although the amount has **varied depending on** the **sponsor**. The public can **submit** an artist **nomination**, and the **panel** of judges then selects a **shortlist** of three or four from their own nominations and those of the public. They select a winner on the day of the award ceremony, and the **venue alternates between** Tate Britain and galleries outside London.

Although it remains one of the most **prestigious** European art awards, it is also extremely **controversial**, and **splits** opinion in the art world. Some critics believe it **demonstrates** the most **pretentious** aspects of contemporary British art, while others think the Turner **deserves** respect for rewarding art which is **bold**, **challenging** and **imaginative**.

### GLOSSARY

annually	every year ALSO monthly/daily, etc.	prestigious	respected and admired as very important or
outstanding	extremely good SYN excellent		of high quality
artistic	connected with art or artists; showing a natural skill in or enjoyment of art	controversial	causing a lot of angry public argument and disagreement <b>controversy</b> <i>n</i>
merit	the quality of being good and deserving admiration	split	divide, or make a group of people divide, into smaller groups with different opinions <b>split</b> n
vary	change or be different according to the situation	demonstrate	show sth clearly by your actions SYN display
	variable adj	venue	a place where people meet for an organized
depending on sb/sth	used for saying that you are not certain of sth until other things have been considered		event, e.g. a concert, ceremony, conference, etc.
sponsor	a person or company that pays for sth, e.g. a sporting or cultural event, usually in return for advertising	alternate (between A and B)	change from one thing to another and back again
submit	give a document, proposal, etc. to sb in authority so they can study it	pretentious	trying to be important, intelligent etc. or sth you are not in order to impress people
nomination	the act of suggesting or choosing sb as a candidate in an election, or for a job or award <b>nominate</b> v	deserve	If sb <b>deserves</b> sth, it is right they should have it because of the way they have behaved or what they are.
panel	a group of specialists who are asked to give their opinion on sth	bold	(of people and the things they do and create) brave and confident; not afraid to take risks
shortlist	a small number of candidates for a job, award,	challenging	difficult in an interesting way
	etc. that have been chosen from all those who applied or were nominated	imaginative	having or showing new and exciting new ideas

ou	tstanding	depending	submit	nominate	nomination	controversial
alt	ernate v	venue	prestigious	imaginative	pretentious	controversy
Ci	rcle the corr	ect answer(s). So	ometimes bot	h answers are poss	ible.	
1		of his work varies /				
2				e has helped younge	er artists	
3		an excellent / outs			in di cisco.	
4				still quite challengin	a / imaginative	
5				hat's why people wa		
6		ngs split / divide of			in to winne.	
7			-	e when she paints in	oil	
8		ated / submitted se			01.	
Re	place the u	nderlined words	with a single	word that keeps th	ne same meaning	
1		awarded <u>every yea</u>		word that keeps t		•
2	A group of s	pecialist people w	ill make the fina	l decision.		
3	The place w	here they hold the	event changes	from year to year.		
4	We need to	find a person with	money who wi	Il support us.		
5	The award o	ften causes a lot o	f public argume	ent and disagreement		
6	I think she h	as shown clearly by	y her actions wh	ny she deserves to wi	n	
7	The winner	will be chosen from	n a small numbe	er of the candidates w	who applied.	
8	I think Rothk	o's paintings are q	uite interesting	but difficult to under	stand.	
Co	mplete the	sentences.				
1	Guernica is p	ossibly Picasso's gi	reatest	achievemen	t.	
2				osal for a new kind o		
3				r the Turner Prize but		
4				own the middle: two		t.
5	I think the a	t world is full of hey are cleverer th		people who are just t	rying to impress pe	ople and give the
6				lptor. He takes on bra	ve subject matter a	ind on a large scale
7				see much artistic		
8		is one of the UK's n rees each year.	nost	institutions and	d attracts thousand	s of applications fo
-	mplete the	centences on th	e right Keen t	the same meaning	as the sentences	on the left
		om Melbourne to		It alternates		
2	-	of the work varies.	cyancy.	The quality of the w	ork is	
2		nge according to t	he season	Colours change dep		
4		is have lots of excit		The paintings are ve		
5		racts a lot of contr		Her work is very		
6		ated three people.		There were three		
A	BOUTYOU	Look at some ex	amples of con	temporary art (sin	ce 2000) online	Focus on five
				think about them.		
				ariable in quality?		

TEST YOURSELF

.

# Scientific English

# **A** Research

# **Scientific method**

Scientific research proposes hypotheses as explanations of phenomena, and then designs experimental studies to gather empirical evidence and test them out. It is important these procedures can be repeated in order to predict future results with some certainty. A feature shared by other fields of enquiry is the conviction that the process must also be objective in order to reduce a biased interpretation of the results. Another basic expectation is to make all the data available for scrutiny by other scientists. This provides the opportunity to conduct further experiments to try to verify the results.

# GLOSSARY

A REAL PROPERTY AND A REAL	지수는 것은 것은 것이 같이 물건을 가 들었다. 이렇게 물건을 가지 않는 것을 가 많다.
hypothesis (p/ hypotheses)	a possible explanation of sth, based on a few facts but not yet proven: <i>formulate/confirm a hypothesis</i> ; SYN <b>theory</b>
phenomenon	sth that happens or exists, especially sth that is not
(pl phenomena)	fully understood
experimental	connected with scientific experiments
empirical formal	based on experiments or experience rather than ideas: empirical evidence/knowledge/research
conviction	a strong opinion or belief: a political/moral conviction
objective	based on fact and not influenced by personal feelings or opinion OPP <b>subjective</b> ; <b>objectivity</b> n
biased	influenced by personal feelings OPP unbiased
scrutiny	careful and thorough examination: come under close scrutiny SYN inspection; scrutinize v
conduct formal	organize and/or do a particular activity: conduct an experiment / a survey
verify	check or show that sth is true and accurate <b>verification</b> <i>n</i>

# The pronunciation of the underlined letters is the same as in sit in six words, and the same as in site in the other three. Divide into them two groups. Use the 🜚 to help you.

hypothesis	
biased	

experimental scrutinize

empirical objective conviction

scrutiny

### Replace the underlined word(s) with a word that keeps the same meaning. I don't think the results are influenced by personal feelings. The results will come under very close examination. 3 At the moment it's just a working theory. 4 His views are completely <u>objective</u>. 5 It is their personal <u>belief</u> that this new drug is completely safe. 6 They are hoping to <u>carry out</u> a similar experiment.

verify

# 3 Complete the sentences.

- Violence in society is not a new \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 By repeating the experiment, we can see if we are able to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the results.
- 3 Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ evidence to support your theory?
- 4 I'm pleased that the results \_\_\_\_\_ my hypothesis.
- 5 It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ report and lacks objectivity.
- 6 We will need to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the results carefully.
- 7 They need to carry out further \_\_\_\_\_\_ studies to confirm the results.

# Answer the questions.

- 1 What's the opposite of objective?
- 2 What's the plural of *phenomenon*?
- 3 What noun is formed from objective?
- What's the opposite of *biased*? 4 .....
- 5
- 6 What noun is formed from verify?
- 7 What nouns can be used with conduct?
- 8 What nouns can be used with *empirical*?
- 9 What verbs can be used with hypothesis?
- What's a synonym for theory? 10 What adjectives can be used with conviction?



# **B** Genetics

**GENE THERAPY**: Genes are the units which control the particular qualities inside a living thing. The process of passing these qualities on from parents to their children is known as heredity. Gene therapy is a technique for correcting defective genes responsible for diseases. It works by inserting a normal gene into the genome (the complete set of genes in a living cell) to replace an abnormal gene. A carrier molecule called a vector must be used to deliver the normal gene to the patient's target cells. But there are many limitations:

- the rapidly dividing nature of many cells means that gene therapy may be short-lived
- the normal gene may be attacked by the patient's immune system
- gene therapy works best on disorders arising from the mutation of a single gene.

GLOSSARY	
therapy	the treatment of a physical problem or an illness
heredity	as explained in the text hereditary adj
defective	having a fault or faults SYN faulty; defect n
insert (sth into sth)	put sth into sth else, or between two things <b>insertion</b> <i>n</i>
cell	the smallest unit of living matter that can exist; all plants and animals are made up of <b>cells</b> : <b>blood/brain cells</b>
abnormal	different from what is expected, and often harmful or unwanted
molecule	the smallest unit (of two or more <i>atoms</i> ) that a substance can be divided into, without changing its chemical nature <b>molecular</b> adj
limitation (usually pl)	a limit on what sb/sth can do or how good they/it can be
rapidly	very guickly rapid adj
short-lived	only lasting for a short time OPP long-lived
immune system	the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease <b>immunity</b> n
arise	(especially of a problem) start to happen or exist SYN occur
mutation	(in biology) a process in which genetic material changes in structure when it is passed on <b>mutate</b> <i>v</i>

### SPOTLIGHT unit

A unit can be a thing, person or group that is complete in itself but can also form part of something larger.

- The basic unit of society is the family.
- a maternity unit in a hospital
- the central processing unit of a computer

5 Underline the stress on these words. Use the 🌚 to help you.

therapy hereditary abnormal molecule molecular immune mutate defect n

### 6 Circle the correct answer.

- The unit is defective / defaulty.
- 2 Is this particularly unnormal / abnormal?
- 3 The ward is in the maternity unit / system.
- 4 Arthritis can be heredity / hereditary.
- 5 The effects are *short-living / short-lived*.

### 7 Complete the sentences.

- 6 a healthy immune / immunity system
- 7 The fault's in the central processor / processing unit.
- 8 The spread of the disease is a rapid / rapidly process.
- 9 Happily, the benefits are short / long-lived.
- 10 This vaccine provides immunity / heredity.

1 Gene has been used to restore the function of ageing brain in monkeys.

- 2 The problem was caused by the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the genes as they were passed on.
- 3 The doctor \_\_\_\_\_\_a tube into the patient's stomach.
- 4 Cancer \_\_\_\_\_\_ are constantly dividing, and that can happen very \_\_\_\_
- 5 Problems can \_\_\_\_\_\_ when there is a \_\_\_\_\_\_ in one or more genes in the body.
- 6 If an illness can be passed from parents to their children, it's a problem of
- 7 The technique involves the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of genes for nerve growth into the brain.
- 8 In \_\_\_\_\_\_ science, a \_\_\_\_\_\_ is a stable unit comprising two or more atoms.

# 80 Technical English



# **REACHING FOR THE SKY**

An architect starts with an **aesthetic** vision of what a **skyscraper** will look like, and an engineer then turns this **unique** concept into a safe and practical building. For skyscrapers, which have more **physical constraints** than the average building, this is no easy task. To **comply with** building **regulations**, any structure reaching high into the sky has to be capable of **supporting** its considerable weight and able to **withstand** high winds and earthquakes. They have to **undergo** a **thorough** process of testing, and if results indicate there may be **excessive** movement, engineers have to find ways to restrict this **motion** and ensure the building will be **structurally** sound.

A skyscraper will also have many users – e.g. office workers, residents, hotel guests – so it must **meet** their various **needs**, as well as the strict rules concerning protection from fire and flooding.

The **construction** of a skyscraper begins with laying the **foundations** on rock deep beneath the ground. Steel or **reinforced concrete** columns are **inserted** into holes within the foundations, and concrete is then poured around them. Large **cranes** erect the vertical columns of the building's **framework**, after which **girders** are attached horizontally between them. It is this structure that gives **support** to the enormous **load** the building must bear. **Panels** made of materials such as glass or metal are built onto the framework to complete the skyscraper's exterior.

## GLOSSARY

GEOSSAAA			
aesthetic	made in an artistic way and beautiful to look at	structurally	the way in which sth is built or organized structure n
unique constraint	very special and unusual a thing which limits your freedom to do sth: physical/financial/political constraints SYN restriction; restrict v	meet the needs of sb/sth construction	satisfy the needs of sb/sth the process or method of building or making sth, especially roads, bridges, etc. <b>construct</b> v
comply (with sth) regulation		foundation (usually pl)	the bricks, concrete, etc. that form the solid underground base of a building
support	or other authority hold sth in position or prevent sth from	reinforced	made stronger, especially by the addition of another material
withstand	falling support n	concrete	a building mixture of sand, cement, small stones and water
withstand	be strong enough not to be hurt or damaged by extreme conditions, the use of force, etc. SYN <b>resist; resistance</b> n	insert framework	put sth into sth else, or between two things the parts of a building or an object that
undergo	experience sth, especially a change or sth unpleasant	girder	supports its weight and gives it shape a long piece of wood or metal, used to
thorough	done completely; with great attention to detail	load	support weight the amount of weight or pressure that is
excessive	more than is reasonable, appropriate, or permitted		pressing against or down on sth: <i>a building's</i> <b>vertical load</b>
motion	the act or process of moving: <i>The train is already</i> <b>in motion</b> .	panel	a square or rectangular piece of wood, glass or metal that forms part of a larger surface, such as a door or wall

	lp you.									
1	concrete	construct	********	5	cond	crete	reinforc	ced	*******	
2	s <u>upport</u>	comply		6	uniq		resist			
3	th <u>o</u> rough	undergo	********	7	<u>ae</u> st	hetic	unique		*******	
4	thorough	foundation		8	com	ply	structu	rally		
M	atch 1–8 wit	th a-h.								
1	meet		а	the horizontal loa	ad ade	equately	У			
2	comply with	n	b	a number of char	nges					
3	resist		c	one tube inside t						
4	undergo		d	the effect of stron	-					
5	construct		e	the architect's fre	edom	1				
6	insert		f	the regulations						
7	support	*******	g	the needs of the						
8	restrict		h	the road going u	nder t	he brid	lge			
Ci	rcle the odd	one out.								
1	a) restriction	h b) const	ruction	c) constraint	5	a) rule	2	b) la	W	c) regulation
2	a) detailed	b) thoro	ugh	c) reinforced	6	a) wit	hstand	b) re	esist	c) comply
3	a) panel	b) girder	r	c) concrete	7	a) reg	ulation	b) fr	amework	c) structure
4	a) framewor	rk b) motio	n	c) movement	8	a) bas	ie	b) fo	oundations	c) concrete
1 2 3 4 5 6	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the	t until the pro these girders ects have to o e fence comp	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>r</u>	nade stronger. noving and happen port the <u>amount o</u> within various finan- rectangular pieces	ing. f weig cial re of wo	aht. striction				
4	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building	tions will need t until the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>p</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u>	nade stronger. oving and happen port the <u>amount o</u> vithin various finan	ing. <u>f weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app	aht. striction od. e. necks. propriat	<u>ns</u> . <u>re</u> .			
4 5 6 7 8 9	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building	tions will need t until the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>p</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u>	nade stronger. noving and happen port the <u>amount o</u> within various finance rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with <u>detailed</u> safe than is reasonable of	ing. <u>f weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app	aht. striction od. e. necks. propriat	<u>ns</u> . <u>re</u> .			
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building The amount There are ar	tions will need t until the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text.</b> ng has been o	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>r</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber o	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with <u>detailed</u> safe than is reasonable of of very tall buildings	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or appr in th	aht. striction od. e. propriat e city c	ns. re. entre. of the	buildi	ng is the resp	oonsibility
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Afri	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> the building the enginers	tions will need t until the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text.</b> ng has been o , and they have	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>r</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> umber o designed we to ens	nade stronger. noving and happen port the <u>amount o</u> within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with <u>detailed</u> safe than is reasonable of f very tall buildings d, the (1)	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app <u>i</u> in th n is (2)	aht. striction od. e. propriat e city c	<u>ns</u> .  entre. of the		ng is the resp sound. T	ponsibility his involves
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Afri of	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> the enginers sting the (3)	tions will need t until the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was in increasing n e <b>text.</b> ng has been o , and they have	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> operate w prises six <u>m</u> nced a n to comp <u>greater</u> number of designed we to ens	nade stronger. noving and happen port the <u>amount o</u> within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with <u>detailed</u> saf than is reasonable of <u>very tall buildings</u> d, the (1) ure that the design of the building	ing. <u>f weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co	ns. entre. of the	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the	ponsibility his involves movement is
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Afr of tes too en	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> the enginers, sting the (3)	tions will need t until the pro- t these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text.</b> ng has been o , and they have onflict with th	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> perate w prises six <u>r</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> umber o designed we to ens	nade stronger. noving and happen port the <u>amount o</u> within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with <u>detailed</u> safe than is reasonable of f very tall buildings d, the (1)	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict if	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e effects ts (4)	ns. entre. of the	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers, sting the (3) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced.	tions will need t until the pro- t these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text.</b> ng has been o , and they have onflict with th	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> operate w prises six <u>m</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber of designed we to ens e to find he archite	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with <u>detailed</u> safe than is reasonable of of very tall buildings d, the (1) ure that the design of the building various ways to res	ing. <u>f weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict in I the (	e effects (4)	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers, sting the (3) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced.	tions will need t until the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text.</b> ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent.	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> operate w prises six <u>m</u> nced a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber of designed we to ens e to find he archite	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with detailed safe than is reasonable of very tall buildings of the building various ways to reserve, who might fee	ing. <u>f weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict in l the (	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co s (4) 5)	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> the enginers ting the ( <b>3</b> ) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced. <b>hat can you</b> What are the	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text</b> . ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physica	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> perate w prises six <u>p</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> designed we to ens e to find he archite <b>from th</b>	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with detailed safe than is reasonable of of very tall buildings d, the (1) ure that the design of the building various ways to reserve, who might fee he text on the oth aints that affect sky	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict if l the (	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	his involves movement is is may bring th of his design is
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be W to 1 2	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers, sting the (3) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced. <b>hat can you</b> <b>another stu</b> What are the What does a	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o efence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text</b> . ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physica a skyscraper n	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>j</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber of designed we to ens to find he archite <b>from th</b> al constra- need to s	nade stronger. noving and happen oport the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with detailed safe than is reasonable of than is reasonable of of very tall buildings of the building various ways to research, who might fee that that affect sky atisfy apart from the	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th to the trict if l the ( her pa scrap ne nee	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be W to 1 2 3	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers, sting the (3) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced. <b>hat can you</b> <b>another stu</b> What are the What does a Why do sky:	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o efence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n etext. ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physical a skyscraper n scrapers have	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> can sup operate w orises six <u>j</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber of designed we to ens e to find he archite <b>from th</b> al constra- need to s e to unde	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with detailed safe than is reasonable of very tall buildings of the building various ways to reserve that the design of the building various ways to reserve that sthat affect sky atisfy apart from the orgo thorough tests	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th to the trict if l the ( her pa scrap ne nee	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be W to 1 2	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers ting the ( <b>3</b> ) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced. <b>hat can you</b> <b>another stu</b> What are the What does a Why do sky: What is the	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text</b> . ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physical a skyscraper n scrapers have purpose of w	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> perate we rises six <u>p</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber of designed we to ens to to find he archite <b>from th</b> al constra- need to s to under vind tunn	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with detailed safe than is reasonable of of very tall buildings d, the (1) ure that the design of the building various ways to reserve, who might fee he text on the oth aints that affect sky atisfy apart from the end tests?	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict it l the ( her pa scrap he need	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be W to 1 2 3 4 5	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers, sting the ( <b>3</b> ) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced. <b>hat can you</b> <b>another stu</b> What are the What are the What is the What is inse	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o efence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text</b> . ng has been o , and they have onflict with the onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physical a skyscraper n scrapers have purpose of w erted into the	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> operate we prises six <u>r</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> <u>a umber of</u> designed we to ens to to ens to to find he archite <b>from th</b> al constra- need to s to under ind tunn foundati	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes ly with detailed safe than is reasonable of very tall buildings of the building various ways to reserve that the design of the building various ways to reserve that sthat affect sky atisfy apart from the orgo thorough tests	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict it l the ( her pa scrap he need	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be W to 1 2 3 4 5 6	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers sting the ( <b>3</b> ) o great, the enginers sting reduced. <b>hat can you</b> <b>another stu</b> What are the What are the What are the What is the What is the What is the	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o e fence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text</b> . ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physical a skyscraper n scrapers have purpose of we ented into the n poured on t	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> perate we rises six <u>p</u> <u>nced</u> a n to comp <u>greater</u> oumber of designed we to ens to to find he archite <b>from th</b> al constra- need to s to under ind tunn foundati top?	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes by with detailed safe than is reasonable of very tall buildings d, the (1) ure that the design of the building various ways to rese tect, who might fee text on the oth aints that affect sky atisfy apart from the rego thorough tests ons of the building	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict it l the ( her pa scrap he need	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i
4 5 6 7 8 9 10 Co Aff of tes too en be W to 1 2 3 4 5	The foundat We will wait I'm not sure Most archite Basically, the The building High-rise building There are ar <b>omplete the</b> ter the building the enginers, sting the (3) o great, the e gineer into co ing reduced. <b>hat can you</b> <b>another stu</b> What are the What are the What does a Why do skys What is the What is inse What is the How are the	tions will need tuntil the pro- these girders ects have to o efence comp g has <u>experien</u> uildings have to t of force was n increasing n e <b>text</b> . ng has been o , and they have onflict with the <b>remember</b> udent. e two physical a skyscraper n scrapers have purpose of w erted into the n poured on t	d to be <u>r</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> cess is <u>m</u> operate we prises six <u>m</u> <u>nced</u> a <u>n</u> to comp <u>greater</u> <u>nced</u> a <u>n</u> <u>to comp</u> <u>to comp</u> <u>foundati</u> top? ports put	nade stronger. noving and happen port the amount of within various finan- rectangular pieces umber of changes by with detailed safe than is reasonable of very tall buildings d, the (1) ure that the design of the building various ways to rese tect, who might fee text on the oth aints that affect sky atisfy apart from the rego thorough tests ons of the building	ing. <u>if weig</u> cial <u>re</u> of wo of use ety ch or app in th is (2) to the trict it l the ( her pa scrap he need	aht. striction od. ecks. propriat e city co e city co e effects ts (4) 5) age? W ers?	ns. entre. of the s of stron	g wind	ng is the resp sound. T ds, and if the 	ponsibility his involves movement is is may bring th v of his design i

# 81 / Everyday language

The words and phrases below are all commonly found in everyday spoken language, and some of them are informal.

- ~ Where's Karl?
- ~ We're short of milk, so he went off to get some. He'll be back any minute.
- ~ Can you give us all a lift?
- ~ Sure. I can take up to four people, and you can stick your stuff in the boot.
- ~ I bet Elsa will be exhausted after yesterday. It's not like her to walk six miles.
- ~ Well, no doubt she'll tell us what made her decide to do it. I mean, she didn't have to, did she?
- ~ What are you and Beata doing for her birthday?
- ~ Well, it's up to her really, isn't it? I don't know whether or not she has any plans.
- ~ Dominic said he'd be here at 9. He's not going to make it, is he? And the concert was an absolute disaster last time without him.
- ~ Don't worry. He'll turn up he needs the money.
- ~ Do you reckon we'll still get tickets for the Mozart concert?
- ~ Oh yeah, we're bound to there's still three weeks to go.
- ~ I bet Kian makes a mess of organizing this festival. I don't know why I put him in charge.
- ~ True, but you never know, he may surprise us.

GLOSSARY			
short (of sth) go off (to do sth)	not having enough of sth leave a place, especially in order to do sth	whether disaster inf	used to express a doubt or choice between two possibilities: <i>whether or not</i> a complete failure: <i>an absolute / a total disaster</i>
(at) any minute (now) give sb a lift up to sth	very soon give sb a free ride in your car as far as a particular number, level, etc.	turn up	<ol> <li>(of a person) arrive, especially in a way that is unexpected (as above)</li> <li>be found, especially by chance, after being lost</li> </ol>
stick inf I bet (that) inf	put sth in a place, especially quickly or carelessly used to say that you are almost certain sth is true or that sth will happen	be sth	think sth or have an opinion about sth be certain or likely to happen, or do or be sth
it's (not) like you/him/ her, etc. no doubt	used to show what is usual or typical for sb used when you are saying that sth	to go mess	remaining; still left a situation that is full of problems, usually because of bad organization or mistakes that sb has made: <b>make a mess of sth</b>
make sb/sth do sth I mean inf	is probable cause sb/sth to do or be sth used to explain or correct what you have just said	you never know inf	used to say that you can never be certain about what will happen in the future, especially when you are suggesting that sth good might happen
be up to sb	be sb's responsibility; be for sb to decide		5

# SPOTLIGHT make it

### Make it can mean:

- 1 succeed in reaching a place, especially when it is difficult (as above)
- 2 be present at a place: I'm afraid I can't make it this evening.
- 3 be successful in a career: Liam will never make it as a pop star.
- 4 survive after a serious accident or illness; deal successfully with a difficult experience: *The doctors think he'll make it*.

	no a total	whether at any	give me short	make it's up	disaster of money	it tonight a lift	to you doubt	or not minute
	od new She mad	<b>s or bad ne</b> de a mess of t de it through	ws? Write G			not short of mo will take up to		ve're seven.
3		emony was an dent was bo				y, Daniel turne test made her		
Re					or phrase that ke	eps the same	e meaning	<b>g</b> .
1		just put thos					***********	
2		Caitlin will w					***************	
3				<u>be successful</u> i				
4					naining before the			
5	Sophy's	not feeling a	t all well, so s	he's very likely	to be at home tor	night.		
6	I think th	ne café will b	e shut by the	time we get t	here. Let's go tom	orrow instead.		
7					nd find the dog.			
8			-		to get here in time	2		
				5 5	-			
Re	write th	e sentence	s on the left	, starting wi	th the words giv	en. Keep the	same me	aning.
1		go in your ca			Could you give			?
2		be here very			Felix will be here			
2		ot typical of						
3			ICKy.		That's			
4		decision.			lt's	•		
5		expected to		4.34	I don't think he		······································	
6	He creat	ted a lot of pi	oblems with	the task.	He made		· · ·	
7	The traff	fic might be h	neavy; you can	n't be certain.	The traffic might			
8	Has any	one found th	e document	s yet?	Have the docum	ents		?
9	I haven'	got much n	noney left.		I'm a bit			
10		I she change		out the car?	What			
Co		the dialogu						
1					it as a file			
	COUD	le of parts in	some TV adv	erts, the comp	, with s petition is Hollywood movie	to be	tough. Still	, you never
	thour	ah no	we might ju	o'll have man	periods waiting f	or work	and bee	ornes rarrious,
-	A Dobb	in coome rat	har daprossa	d at the mome	ent, and that's not	or work.	him	
2								big
	think	medicine wa	as right for hi	m. He's not ve	fficult. To be hone ry hardworking an	d he isn't very	interested	in people.
	whet	her or		e finishes it or	on the co changes to somet	hing else.		
3	A Whe	re's Taki? He a	sked me to g	give him a	to th	e stadium, and	it's 6.30 al	ready.
	B Well,	he was here	ten minutes	ago, but he - don't worry.	off	to try and get	a sandwich	h. He'll be here
4	A Caro	has lost the	ina Ali boua	ht her. It'll be a	total	if she can	't find it.	
	RI	indo robe erre i	she's	it so	mewhere safe and	forgotten abo	out it. It'll	
		m sure.	3116.3	12 30	incontere sure une	rorgotterruo	out it. it in	
	00,11	in sure.						
Th	ese ver	bs have diff	erent mean	ings, apart f	rom those given	in the gloss	ary. What	are they?
		to help yo						

# 82 Phrasal verbs

# A Phrasal verbs with more formal equivalents

PHRASAL VERB	MORE FORMAL EQUIVALENT			
If you get your ideas across to someone,	you communicate them to sb successfully.			
If you bring up a topic in conversation,	you raise the topic. = introduce it into the conversation			
If you look up to someone,	you respect them. = have a high opinion of them			
If you own up to something,	you confess to it. = admit you did sth wrong			
lf you <b>get over</b> a problem	you overcome it. = find a way to solve it			
If you <b>put</b> something <b>off</b> ,	you <b>postpone</b> it. = arrange for an event etc. to take place at a later time			
If you <b>put forward</b> a plan,	you propose it. = suggest it for discussion			
If you call off a meeting,	you <b>cancel</b> it. = decide that sth that has been arranged will not take place			
If you make up for something,	you <b>compensate for</b> it. = provide sth good to balance or reduce the bad effects of damage, loss, etc.			
If you are taken in by someone,	you are deceived by them. = are made to believe sth that isn't true			
If a book <b>comes out</b> ,	it is published. = is produced for sale			

# Match the verbs on the left with the phrasal verbs on the right with the same meaning.

propose
postpone
communicate

compensate cancel deceive confess overcome take sb in own up to sth make up for sth call sth off get sth across put sth forward

put sth off oss get over sth vard

# 2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals at the end as part of a phrasal verb.

1	I never expected him to confess to the crime.	UP	
2	Nothing can compensate for the loss of earnings.	MAKE	
3	Will someone raise the topic at the meeting?	UP	
4	Who proposed the plan?	FORWARD	
5	The inspector isn't easily deceived.	IN	
6	Why did they cancel the meeting?	OFF	
7	He has always respected his uncle.	UP	
8	When was the new dictionary published?	OUT	
9	The match has been postponed for a week.	OFF	
10	We have to communicate our message more clear	ly. ACROSS	

Complete the responses using a suitable phrasal verb

and have merely and a survey b	
<ol> <li>Elena Ferranti is writing a new novel.</li> </ol>	~ Great! When will?
<ol> <li>We need to discuss staff holidays.</li> </ol>	~ Yes, at the next meeting, I'm going to
3 This is such an unhappy situation.	~ Yes, but in time, I'm sure
4 Do you think a lot of your grandparents?	~ Yes, I really
5 Damian seems so charming and friendly.	~ Be careful: don't be
6 Oh, no! I've got a dental appointment tomorrow and I'm going away!	~ Well, you'll just have to
7 Do they know who stole the painting?	~ Yes, one of the gallery guides has
8 The transport strike is coming to an end, isn't i	

# **B** Multiple meanings

One of the difficulties with phrasal verbs is that some have more than one meaning.

My brother gets through a lot of money.	Could you set up a meeting?
(= use up a large amount of sth)	(= arrange for sth to happen)
I tried calling the bank several times, but couldn't get	I had to set up the computer for them.
through (to anyone). (= make contact by phone)	(= make equipment or machinery ready for use)
We couldn't get through to the village because of	The police have set up more roadblocks.
snow. (= reach somewhere)	(= build sth or put sth somewhere)
I'm taking over from Sarah Miles next week. (= begin to have responsibility for sth, especially in place of sb else) The army has taken over the country. (= gain control of a political party, country, etc.)	My mum went through a difficult period when my dad died. (= experience or suffer sth) I went through the evidence carefully. (= examine sth carefully, especially to find sth) You have to go through various security checks. (= perform a series of actions)

## 4 What is the meaning of the phrasal verb in each sentence? Write your answer at the end.

- 1 UN supply trucks are now trying to get through to the refugee camps.
- 2 Who will take over when the manager retires?
- 3 Do you need someone to set up the recording equipment?
- 4 I went through my emails but couldn't find any record of the meeting.
- 5 I got through to someone in the Accounts department, and they were very helpful.
- 6 We went through a terrible time when our baby was ill, but, fortunately, he recovered.
- 7 The region has been taken over by rebel soldiers.
- 8 If you've never set up a tent before, have a look at some online videos.

## 5 Circle the correct word.

- 1 I finally went through / got through to the doctor after 20 minutes on the phone.
- 2 The police have *gone through / set up* a traffic-free area in front of the parliament.
- 3 The lawyers are *going through / setting up* the documents, looking for clues to the disappearance of the money.
- 4 We are worried about who will set up / take over when the old leader resigns or dies.
- 5 The boys are home from university, so we're getting through / going through a mountain of food.
- 6 Nobody should have to go through / take over such terrible medical treatment.
- 7 The person who got through / set up the meeting sent out the wrong date to everyone.
- 8 Could you go through / take over the shop for a minute while I go and get a coffee?

## 6 Complete the phrasal verbs in the questionnaire.

## Have you ever:

2

- 1 had problems \_\_\_\_\_\_ to a place because of really bad weather? What happened?
  - \_\_\_\_\_ a tent in pouring rain?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_\_ the driving when the person you were with was ill or too tired to carry on?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_\_ a terrible experience in a plane or on a train? What was it?
- 5 been stopped and questioned when you were \_\_\_\_\_ passport control?
- 6 been involved in \_\_\_\_\_\_ a festival?
- 7 had to help someone\_\_\_\_\_\_ their PC or mobile phone?
- 8 known someone who\_\_\_\_\_ money faster than they can earn it?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire in Exercise 7, or tell another student.



# **B** Responses

A number of idioms are often used as responses in spoken English.

Idiom	Meaning
I'm going to do the essay again. ~ What for?	for what purpose or reason
Are you going to the party? ~ You bet!	used to emphasize that you are keen to do sth
I've got my exam today. ~ OK. (The) best of luck.	used to wish sb success in what they are going to do ALSO <b>all the best</b>
I'll be there as soon as I can. ~ It's OK – <b>take your time</b> .	used to tell sb there is no hurry
Where's Poppy? ~ Don't ask me.	used to emphasize that you don't know sth SYN I haven't the faintest (idea)/ Goodness knows
It must've been an awful evening. ~ <b>On the contrary</b> , I really enjoyed it	used to introduce a statement that says the opposite of the last one
Are you ready? ~ <b>Hang on</b> . I'll be with you <b>in a minute</b> .	wait a minute/moment very soon
Rani's going out with a film star. ~ You're kidding!	inf used to show that you are very surprised at what sb has just said
I think you owe me some money. ~ How come?	<i>inf</i> used to say you do not know how something can happen and would like an explanation
Can we go in if we aren't members? ~ No way!	inf used to say that sth is not at all possible or not allowed SYN no chance

# 5 Circle the correct answer.

- 1 If you answer you bet, you want to do something / don't mind doing something.
- 2 If you reply don't ask me, it means you don't know the answer / don't want to answer.
- 3 If you say you're kidding, you think the other person is being / not being serious.
- 4 No way means it's not practical / possible.
- 5 Goodness knows means I'm sorry / I don't know.
- 6 If you ask someone to hang on, you want them to help you / wait for you.

# 6 Combine words from each box to form eight idioms.

don't hang best you ask me way for kidding	you're	no	how	what	of luck	bet	on	come
	don't	hang	best	you	ask me	way	for	kidding

# Complete the idiom in each response.

1	I've just won the lottery!	~ You're	!
2	Could I borrow your dad's car?	~ No	!
3	Why did they leave so early?	~ Goodness	•
4	I'll be with you in two minutes.	~ It's ok, take	•
5	Are you going to the party?	~ Yes, you	
6	I've got my driving test tomorrow.	~ Well, best	
7	The college said we have to apply again.	~ What? How	
8	I'm going to repeat the course.	~ What	?
9	Where have they all gone?	~ I haven't the	
10	I heard the lecture was really boring.	~ No, on the	

# 84 Idioms (2)

# A Commenting on a situation

Some idioms are commonly used to express an opinion about a situation.



# **B** Adding tone and emphasis

Some idioms are used to add extra politeness or emphasis, and to prepare the listener for what you are going to say.

Do you know if they're married, by any chance?	used especially in questions to ask if sth is true or possible
I wouldn't mind a cup of tea, if it's no trouble.	used to say politely that you would very much like sth / to do sth
I'd love to go. <b>The (only) thing is</b> , I promised to help my dad in the garden.	used to introduce an explanation, and often one that suggests there is a problem
I didn't like it <b>at all</b> . / I'm not <b>at all</b> keen on it.	used to emphasize a negative statement (used after a verb but before or after an adjective)
You should read it. It's by far his best book.	used to emphasize what you are saying
Smoking is very bad for your health, not to mention the cost.	used to introduce extra information and emphasize what you are saying
Guess what! Ed and Sal are moving to Kenya.	used before giving sb surprising or exciting news
Believe it or not, he asked if he could live with us.	inf used to introduce information which is true but surprising
He's been working since 7 o'clock this morning, so <b>no wonder</b> he's tired.	inf used to emphasize the fact that sth is not surprising
Where on earth did you get those boots?	used after wh- questions to indicate surprise, and sometimes annoyance, about sth
I'd like to ask you a few questions, if you don't mind.	used to check that sb does not object to sth that you want to do, or ask sb politely to do sth SYN if you wouldn't mind
The room is empty but, <b>for some reason</b> , we're not allowed to use it.	used to say, often with slight annoyance, you don't know the reason for sth or don't understand it

4 Cross out one wrong word in each sentence.

- 1 That's by very far the worst article.
- Believe it or believe not, he's a politician.
- 3 The only bad thing is, I can't afford to go.
- 4 Guess you what I'm getting married.
- 5 Who on the earth gave you that tie?
- 6 I'd like to borrow this if that you don't mind.
- 7 He's bad at the job, not to be mention lazy.
- 8 I wouldn't really mind a lift, if that's OK.

# 5 Complete the idiom or set phrase in each sentence.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ what! I've got a new job.
- 2 I'd love to go to Brazil in December, but the \_\_\_\_\_\_ is, my exams are in January.
- 3 What on \_\_\_\_\_\_ are you doing here this morning? It's Saturday!
- 4 I made a special trip to the post office, but for \_\_\_\_\_ reason, they closed early.
- 5 I'm not hungry, but I \_\_\_\_\_ mind a glass of water if that's OK.
- 6 He won all his matches, so no \_\_\_\_\_ he's delighted.
- 7 Have you got any string I could use by any \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 The book was great, but I wasn't at \_\_\_\_\_ impressed with the film; it was far too long.

# 6 Add a suitable idiom or set phrase to these sentences.

- 1 It didn't work.
- 2 Do you know if it's open?
- 3 Melinda's going to marry a famous pop star.
- 4 Why are you wearing gloves in the summer?
- 5 Jacob looks about 20, but he's only 13.
- 6 He's been very ill, so he looks thin.
- 7 They have a large apartment here, a farm in Wales and a house on the coast.
- 8 We said we were members, but they wouldn't let us in.
- 9 It is his most violent film.
- 10 I'd like to know more about your background.



# 85 Two-part expressions

These phrases consist of two main words, usually joined by **and** or **or**. The word order is almost always fixed, i.e. **backwards and forwards** (NOT forwards and backwards). Most are made up of near synonyms or opposites, and they are more common in spoken English.

Examples	Meaning		
We've been going backwards and forwards all day.	move from one place to another and then back again, many times SYN back and forth		
First and foremost we need a plan.	more than anything else		
They'll be here sooner or later.	at some time in the future, probably soon		
We're considering the pros and cons of moving.	the reasons for and against doing sth		
I learnt how to use a computer by trial and error.	trying different ways of doing sth until you find the best one		
It costs £300 a month, more or less.	1 approximately		
I've more or less finished this book.	2 almost		
I see my cousins <b>now and again</b> .	sometimes but not often; occasionally SYN now and then, on and off		
Who is responsible for law and order?	a situation in which people obey the law		
The children got home safe and sound.	safely; not harmed, damaged, lost, etc.		
I'm sick and tired of this weather.	bored with or annoyed about sth, and wanting to stop SYN sick to death of sth		
I've almost finished packing except for a few odds and ends.	inf small things of little importance SYN bits and pieces		

Form ten phrases using words in the box, adding either and or or.

trial law	more cons	the pros forth	back less	sick order	sooner tired	odds later	safe off	ends error	on sound	
	te the phr				Thank go	dears th	oro is or	lu ono m	010	
	ck to									
	ollected mo									
	ad a class d									
	ind									
	It was a terrible flight, but we finally got here safe and I'm moving stuff into my flat, and I've been going backwards and all day.									
									all day.	
	we've got									
8 It's a r	matter of la	w and		, SO	the decisi	ion rests	with the	police.		
Comple	te the dial	logues wi	th a sui	itable pl	nrase.					
1 It look	s like they'r	e not comi	ing.			~ 1	lo, they'll	be here		
> Voula	ok miserab	olo				~ Y	'es, l'm		******	of the noise
2 TOUIC		ne.								or the hold
-	did you asse		bookca	se withou	it instructi	ons? ~ B	lasically in	ust		or the noise
3 How		emble that		se withou	it instructi	ons? ~ B	lasically ju	ust		······································
3 How of 4 Do yo	did you asse ou go to tha many came	emble that it restauran	t a lot?	se withou	it instructi	ons? ~ B ~ N	lasically ju No, but w	ust e like to g		······································

4 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Do you have expressions like these in your language? How would you translate the examples at the top of the page?

36 Similes

We form most similes with: (as) + adjective + as + noun and a smaller number with: verb OR noun + like + noun Similes with as emphasize the meaning of the adjective, so they are often easy to understand. They are more common in spoken English, and the first as is usually omitted.

(Main) noun	Simile	(Main) noun	Simile
gold	The children were <b>as good as gold</b> today. (= well behaved)	beetroot	Sian went as red as a beetroot. (= very embarrassed)
feather	I picked up the little girl – she was as light as a feather. (= very light)	bone	The ground is <b>as dry as a bone</b> at the moment. (= very dry)
bat	<i>I'm afraid I'm <b>blind as a bat</b>.</i> (used humorously)	cake	The new model is selling like hot cakes. (= selling very quickly or in large numbers)
-post	<i>My father is <b>deaf as a post</b>.</i> (used humorously)	log	/ slept like a log last night. (= slept very well)
rake	My sister's as thin as a rake. (= very thin)	dream	The plan worked like a dream. (= was very successful)
sheet	Sammy went as white as a sheet. (= white with fear or from illness)	sieve	Sometimes I've got a memory/mind like a sieve. (= a bad memory)

# Complete the similes.

- 1 My poor uncle is deaf as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 This computer game will sell like hot
- 3 The sheets are dry as a \_\_\_\_\_\_after hanging in the hot sun.
- 4 Surprisingly, the suitcase was light as a
- 5 My father sleeps like a

2 Choose a suitable simile to describe these people and things.

- 1 My grandfather can't hear a thing.
- 2 My grandmother can't see a thing.
- 3 My girlfriend needs to put on weight.
- 4 The plan was very successful.
- 5 She looked really ill.

- 7 He realized his mistake and went red as a
- 8 The printer is working like a \_\_\_\_\_ now.
- 9 James is blind as a \_\_\_\_\_ without his glasses.
- 10 She heard someone downstairs and went white as a

# 6 The children behaved very well. 7 She was very embarrassed.

- 8 He often forgets things.
- 9 The little girl weighed almost nothing.
- 10 Everyone is buying the new phone.

# 3 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Do you have similes in your language. Can you find equivalent expressions for the similes above?
I'm not very keen on the flat, or the area. **Mind you**, it's better than my last place. **Incidentally**, do you know how Pavel's getting on in his new flat?

Sam The company is likely to move its headquarters to Brussels. As for Deborah, she may have to get a job with another insurance firm.

Tanya Yes, or alternatively, she could stay with the company here, but in a different branch.

Sam OK, but in the end, she may decide that a change of company would do her good.

It's true that Peter was only trying to help. Even so, he shouldn't have got involved -Mind you ... it just made the problem a lot worse. Incidentally ... As far as I am concerned. In the end ... Do you think you'll go back to the same hotel? Brad It's true ... Even 50 ... Asma Well, as a matter of fact we were a bit Alternatively ... disappointed the last time we were there. By and In any case ... large the staff were still great, but the place was starting to look a bit tired, and the food wasn't

> I don't think Ali should apply for the job in Munich. He doesn't have that much experience and, **in any case**, he doesn't speak German.

quite as good.

MOTHERGeorge wants to spend the summer in<br/>France so as to improve his French.FATHERWell, as far as I'm concerned, that's fine, but<br/>I hope he's not expecting us to pay for it.

GLOSSARY	
mind you inf	used to add sth to what you have just said, especially sth that makes it less strong SYN still
incidentally	used to change the conversation to a different topic SYN by the way
as for sb/sth	used to start talking about sb/sth
alternatively	used to introduce an idea that is a second choice or possibility
in the end	after everything has been considered
do sb good	have a positive effect on sb; help sb
it's true (that)	used to admit that a fact or statement is correct, although you think sth else is more important
even so	despite that; used for introducing a new idea, fact, etc. SYN all the same / nevertheless
by and large	used when you are saying sth that is generally but not completely true SYN to a large extent / on the whole / broadly speaking
in any case	whatever happens or may have happened; often used to introduce the most important reason, argument etc. SYN <b>anyway</b> , <b>besides</b>
so as to do sth	with the intention of doing sth
as far as I'm concerned	used to give your opinion about sth

180 Spoken English

M	atch 1-10	with	a-j.							
1	mind		a	case		6	in any		f	speaking
2	by and		b	extent		7	broadly		g	I'm concerned
3	even	********	c	the way		8	by		h	SO
4	as far as		d	you		9	to a large		i	same
5	on the		e	large		10	all the		j	whole
C	orrect the	mista	ke i	n each senten	ce.					
1				as very interestin						
2		-		me. All same, I w	-	et home.				
3				ch as to avoid th	-					
4		e her g	joing	in the sea beca		er is dirty. In	every case,			
5				, the neighbour	s can have a	street party	if they want	to.		
6				terview for the jo					ick.	
7	-	-		gs organized for						
8	She seem	s very	tirec	; I think a holida	y would mak	e her good	1.			
9				dents did well. B		-		d?		
10	I got som	e help	fron	n my father. Ever	n, it was a ver	y difficult t	ask.			
Re	place the	unde	erlin	ed word(s) wit	h a word or	phrase th	nat keeps th	e sa	me	meaning. More than
	ne answer									
1			-	he Czech Reput	olic. By the w	av. do vou	know Michae	la		
	from Prag									
2	-		t, yo	u can get by wit	hout speakin	g the lang	uage.			
3				h my broadban		-		fore.		
4		give Fe	ergus	s a lift – he lives i						
5	it's a good	d dictio	onar							
6		-		ce long walk. ~ !			re and chat.			
7				will have a posit						
8				in advance in or						
9	If you ask	me, th	e go	vernment has go	ot its policy or	n health car	re completely	wro	ng.	
10	We thoug we decide		-	etting a cat but,	, after conside	ering it for	some time,			
C	omnlete ti	ne ser	iten	ces and dialog	ues with a	suitable v	ord or phra	Se		
1				kely to rain.					Imh	orella.
2										, we could just
-	stay in a B		.g	e might buy u te	int and go to	a camping	5100.	*********		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
3			t rou	te home		avoid	seeina Mr Pe	edde	er: h	e never stops talking.
4				hat home? ~ Ye						
5				mpers so I'm pre						
				them.				plan	ne le	eave?
6	I've been	told th	nere's	s a very good Ch I'm afraid I can't	ninese restaur					
	You won't	t want	to cl	limb that hill - it	's very steep.	And,				it's too far away.
7										was more sensible to
78	stay here.									
	stay here. There are			olems in my neig that a lot o						's a good place to live.

# 88 Sayings

Sayings are well-known phrases that express things about life that most people believe are wise and true. They are more common in spoken English.



1	So far, no good.	6 No news is no no	ews.
2	Two brains are better than one.	7 The more the ha	appier.
3	It's a little world.	8 Don't judge a bo	ook by the
4	First come are served.	number of page	S.
5	Practice makes better.		
W	hich sayings are illustrated at the top of the op	site page?	
1		5	
2		6	
3		7	
4		8	
Co	mplete these sayings.	- The dia 15	
1	Better late than		
2	Better safe than		n't
3	No news is	Beggars cant	•
4	The more .		·
5	Practice makes	Don't judge a bo	ook
Us	e a suitable saying to respond to each of these		
1	I came down slowly – I didn't want to fall over.	~ Well,	······································
2	He works on his English for three hours every day.	~ Well,	
3	Shall we do the maths homework together?	~ Yes,	······································
4	My son has been away for two months but hardly ever phones.	~ Well,	
5	Do you think people should take revenge?	~ No, I don't believe	in
6	How are you getting on now you're in London?	~ Well,	
7	Gabi is never happy, is she?	~ No, I'm afraid with	her the
8	They finally got here, but they missed the first part.	~ Well,	
9	It's not a nice flat but it's all they can afford.	~ Well,	
10	Can anyone go the exhibition?	~ Yes, but be quick.	lt's
11	If he steals my bag, I'll keep his phone.		
12	If we stop giving a small number of people expensiv we can actually treat more people and save more live	lrugs,	
_			
1	BOUT YOU Write answers to these questions, of Are there any sayings on page 184 that you think are		dent.
2	Are there any sayings that you do not think are true?		
He	ere are six more sayings in English. Can you gue	what they mean?	See page 184 for answers
1	Beauty is only skin-deep.		
2	Love is blind.		
3	Charity begins at home.		
4	Put all your eggs in one basket.		
5	Once bitten, twice shy.		
-	Absence makes the heart grow fonder.		

# 89 Vague language

e are	n't able to be precise, or don't want or need to be.	GLOSSARY vague	not clear or detailed		
	ong will you be away? ee weeks <b>or so</b> .	or so	You add <b>or so</b> after a number, quantity, etc. to show that it is approximate. SYN <b>or thereabouts</b>		
e ear	rns loads of money, doesn't he?	loads (of sth) inf	a large quantity of sth SYN tons/piles (of sth) inf		
	bably, somewhere in the region of £100,000.	in the region of	used when you are giving a number, price etc. to show that it is not exact: <i>He paid somewhere</i> <i>in the region of £500</i> . SYN <b>approximately</b>		
	something like that.	something to do with sth	in some way connected with sth		
Ido	besn't look well. Is she ill <b>or something</b> ? n't know. I am <b>sort of</b> worried about her. buy that car <b>somehow or other</b> .		f used when you are not exactly sure about a thing, person or place ALSO or somebody/ somewhere; SYN something/ somebody/ somewhere or other		
	, I've got £1000, <b>give or take</b> a bit. It loads of <b>stuff</b> to prepare. How many are coming?	sort of inf	to some extent, but in a way that is hard to explain SYN <b>kind of</b>		
Oh, f	fifty odd, I think.	somehow	in some way or by some means, although you don't know exactly how: somehow or other		
	LIGHT something like that, etc.	give or take sth	used for talking about numbers which are not exact: We'll have 100 guests, <b>give or take ten</b> .		
She's	n use can use these phrases when we are being vague. s a doctor <b>or something like that</b> . vorks in publishing I think. ~ Yeah, <b>something along</b>	stuff inf	used to refer in a general way to things people say, do, or think, etc: <i>They played</i> <b>some</b> great stuff. I don't believe all that stuff.		
thos	aid they advise importers. Something of that sort.	odd (after a number) inf	approximately or a little more than the number mentioned: <b>30 odd</b> students		
R	eplace the underlined word(s) with a word or p	hrase that kee	eps the same meaning.		
1	We've got loads of food.		egion of 400 miles.		
2	It cost £200 or <u>so</u> .	7 I'll get then	by some means.		
3	I am sort of glad she went.	8 He was not	clear about how to get there.		
4	She's an optician or something <u>like that</u> . I think he's 50 <u>or just over</u> .		book to Susana or other girls.		
0	ne word is missing in each sentence. What is it		pes it go?		
1	She was just sort pretending to be ill; I don't think s	he actually was.			
2	We seem to have of rice, so I might make a paella.				
3	He's a chief executive something; I'm not too sure.				
4	We'll leave at seven, give take a few minutes, so don				
6	I've got a meeting tonight but I'll finish my essay by The whole trip cost somewhere the region of £400		her		
	ewrite the sentences using the word in capitals				
R	We invited a hundred to the wedding.		50		
1 1	He looks depressed	SO			
1 2	He looks depressed. Her job is in marketing				
1 2 3	Her job is in marketing.		EE		
8 R 1 2 3 4	Her job is in marketing. There were a lot of good groups and comedians at	the festival. STU			
R 1 2 3 4 5 6	Her job is in marketing. There were a lot of good groups and comedians at It's 300 miles.	the festival. STU REGIC	DN		
R 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	Her job is in marketing. There were a lot of good groups and comedians at It's 300 miles. We could go to France.	the festival. STU REGIC SOMEWHE	DN		
R 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	Her job is in marketing. There were a lot of good groups and comedians at It's 300 miles.	the festival. STU REGIC	DN RE		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	Her job is in marketing. There were a lot of good groups and comedians at It's 300 miles. We could go to France. I've got £500.	the festival. STU REGIC SOMEWHE GI SOMETHIM	DN		

184 Spoken English

# 90) The passive

A number of verbs are commonly used in the passive, especially in certain contexts (see the spotlight).

The man is said to be carrying a weapon. The boat is reported to be a mile from shore. The teenager is known as a troublemaker. She is known for her work as a therapist. They were meant to stay together. The meeting is scheduled for next week. Four have been short-listed for the prize. Residents are empowered by the new law. The body will be cremated, not buried. The man has been jailed for the robbery. I was overcome with grief. Two girls have been suspended from school. We were caught up in a traffic jam.

GLOSSARY	
be known as sth/sb OR for sth	have a reputation as sth/sb or for sth
be meant (for sth / to do sth)	be intended for sth / to do sth
be scheduled (for sth)	be arranged to happen at a particular time
be short-listed (for sth)	be part of a small list for a prize, award, etc, chosen from all the people who applied for it. The winner is sb from that list.
be empowered (to do sth) formal	have or be given the power or authority to do sth SYN be authorized (to do sth)
be cremated	(of a dead body) be burnt, especially as part of a funeral ceremony
be jailed	be sent to prison
be overcome (with sth)	be strongly affected by sth, especially sth emotional
be suspended sb (from sth)	be officially stopped from doing your job, going to school, etc.
be caught up (in sth)	be involved in sth, especially when you do not want to be

### SPOTLIGHT using passives

The use of the passive is more impersonal and commonly found in news reports, etc, where these passive phrases are common.
 The minister is said to be considering resignation.
 Food supplies are reported to be arriving in the country.

### Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.

- 1 The helicopter carrying the prince is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to be nearing the country.
- 2 Most of the survivors were \_\_\_\_\_\_ with emotion when they greeted their families.
- 3 The civil servants were \_\_\_\_\_\_ for giving secret information to journalists.
- 4 When I die, I want to be \_\_\_\_\_, not buried.
- 5 The courts are \_\_\_\_\_\_ to give longer prison sentences if they wish.
- 6 She is \_\_\_\_\_\_ as a rather difficult boss.
- 7 The meeting is not \_\_\_\_\_\_ to start until 2 p.m.
- 8 Sorry I'm late. I was \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the debate about education and couldn't leave.

### 2 Rewrite the sentences in the passive, using a suitable verb from the top of the page.

- 1 People tell me he is dangerous.
- 2 The judge sent him to prison for five years.
- 3 They're going to put the film on at 9.00 p.m.
- 4 They considered four people from the nominations. Four people were
- 5 We spent ages in a traffic jam.
- 6 The school told the girls to leave.
- 7 People know her because of her charity work.
- 8 It wasn't my plan to join the army.
- 9 He was very emotional when he saw her.

### Other verbs, taught elsewhere in the book, are also commonly used in the passive. Use the Word List if you don't know these verbs or can't remember what they mean.

be charged (with sth) be wounded be entitled to sth be stranded

be surrounded (by sth) be convicted (of sth) be accused of sth be trapped

He is \_\_\_\_\_

The film is

He was

We were \_\_\_\_\_. The girls were \_\_\_\_\_.

She is \_\_\_\_\_.

I wasn't

He was\_\_\_\_\_.



# 91) Prefixes

### **A** With adjectives

Un-, in- and dis- are some of the prefixes used with adjectives, usually to give a negative meaning.

You will already know some of these adjectives when they are used without negative prefixes. The glossary explains the words you are less likely to know.

un-	He's unqualified to drive that car. They chose an unknown actor for the part. I'm unfamiliar with this keyboard. It was an uncharacteristic mistake. The workers have called an unofficial strike. The project is still unfinished.
in-	Ben is <b>incapable of</b> making a decision. I'm afraid this passport is <b>invalid</b> . The food was <b>insufficient</b> for our needs. They got divorced because they were <b>incompatible</b> . The treatment of some refugees is <b>inhuman</b> .
dis-	The Prime Minister will fire any <b>disloyal</b> ministers. One <b>disobedient</b> child was removed from the class.

### GLOSSARY

u

u

u

in

in

in

in

d

d

LOSSANT	
nqualified	not having the right knowledge, experience or qualifications to do sth OPP <b>qualified</b>
ncharacteristic (of sb/sth)	not typical of sb; not the way they usually behave OPP <b>characteristic</b>
nofficial	does not have permission or approval from sb in authority OPP official
nvalid	not legally or officially acceptable OPP valid
nsufficient	not enough for a particular purpose OPP sufficient
ncompatible	Two people who are <b>incompatible</b> are very different from each other and not able to work or live happily together. OPP <b>compatible</b>
nhuman	lacking the qualities of kindness and pity
isloyal (of sb) (to sb/sth)	not loyal or faithful to your friends, country, etc. OPP <b>loyal</b>
isobedient	failing or refusing to obey OPP <b>obedient</b>

### SPOTLIGHT un- and under-

There is a difference between **un**- and **under**-. An **unemployed** person doesn't have a job; an **underemployed** person doesn't have enough work to do, or not all of their skills are not made use of. Other examples are **uncooked** and **undercooked**, or **unpaid** and **underpaid**.

~ I know, it was \_\_\_\_\_.

~ No, she's \_\_\_\_\_. ~ OK, but a bit \_\_\_\_\_.

~ No, they're still \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_. ~ Yes, very \_\_\_\_\_.

a decision.

~ No, she's \_\_\_\_\_ of making

~ No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ with the area.

~ No, they were all \_\_\_\_\_.

### 1) Un-, in-, or dis-? Cover the table and complete the words.

1	known	4	obedient	7	finished	10	familiar
2	capable	5	characteristic	8	loyal	11	compatible
3	human	6	valid	9	employed	12	sufficient

### 2 Match the adjectives on the left with the nouns on the right.

an unofficial an incompatible an invalid insufficient	ticket conditions	money	dog	couple
an unqualified a disobedient inhuman an unfamiliar		name	strike	teacher

### 3 Complete the dialogues using a word beginning with un-, in-, dis-, or under-.

.....

- The family were cruel and treated him like a slave.
- 2 Did you know the performers?
- 3 Has she got a job?
- 4 What were the vegetables like?
- 5 Have they completed the roadworks?
- 6 Does she know what she's going to do?
- 7 Is it voluntary work?
- 8 It's very unusual for Moira to make that mistake
- 9 Do you know the town?

10 It was awful of Teri just to walk out and leave us with no support. ~ Yes, it was very \_\_\_\_\_.

TEST YOURSELF

Aspects of language

### **B** With verbs

These prefixes can be used with some verbs, with particular meanings. You will already know some of these verbs when used without a prefix.

mis-	= badly; incorrectly	misunderstand miscalculate mislead	mistreat misjudge
re-	= again	rewrite reassess (e.g. the cost of	redo (e.g. a piece of work) sth, an exam candidate)
un-	= doing the opposite of sth	unwrap (e.g. a present). undo (e.g. your jacket) unwind (e.g. a bandage)	unpack (e.g. a suitcase) untie (e.g. your shoelaces)
over-	= too much	overcharge (e.g. in a sho overestimate (e.g the an oversleep (= sleep longe overdo it (= work too ha	nount of food you need) er than you want)

GLOSSARY	
mistreat misjudge	treat a person or animal in a cruel, unkind or unfair way form a wrong opinion about a person or situation, especially in a way that creates a problem
mislead unwind	give sb the wrong impression and make them believe sth that is not true open up/out sth that has been wrapped into a ball or around sth

1	I think he was mis		a) treate	d	b) advised	c) led	
2	Could you un	this for me?	a) charg	e	b) wrap	c) tie	
3	I think I over		a) estim	ated	b) charged	<) calculated	
4		what I have done.	a) write		b) judge	c) assess	
5	l overth	is morning.	a) boug	ht	b) did it	c) slept	
6	She completely mis	me.	a) judge	d	b) understood	c) believed	
Ci	ircle the correct form(s)	Sometimes both words	are pos	sible.			
1	He miscalculated / mistred the room.		4 1th		completely <i>misled / n</i> I.	nisunderstood	
2	I'm going to redo / rewrit	e my essay.	5 I'm trying to untie / unwind the string from				
3	When I get to the hotel, I		ard	ound thi	s post.		
	my suitcase.			worn o	ged / overdid it this mo out.	orning, and nov	
C	omplete the sentences.						
1	I'm going back to that sh	op: I think they	me	for thos	e earrings.		
2	Theym	e when they said they wou	ld help; t	hey've d	one nothing really.		
3		their pres					
4		my shirt a					
5		o this job but I was wrong;					
6		animal					
7	We the	time it would take, and so w	we arrive	d an hou	ur early.		
		the policy because it clea					

TEST YOURSELF

N

The suffixes -ion, -ment and -al can be added to verbs to form related nouns with the same basic meaning. You will notice there are sometimes small spelling changes.

The words in bold are the forms which have not been taught elsewhere in the book or series.

Suffix	Verb → Noun	Meaning
	accommodate → accommodation	v provide sb with a room or place to sleep
	create → creation	n the act or process of making sth that is new, or of causing sth to exist that didn't exist before
	appreciate	n the feeling of being grateful for sth
15.4	$collaborate \rightarrow collaboration$	v work together with sb to produce or achieve sth
1.11	complete → completion	n the act or process of finishing sth
-ion	hesitate $\rightarrow$ hesitation	<ul> <li>v be slow to speak or act because you are uncertain or nervous</li> </ul>
	inspect → inspection	v look at sth closely, especially to check it is correct
	detect $\rightarrow$ detection	<ul> <li>v discover or notice sth, especially sth that is not easy to see, hear, etc.</li> </ul>
	object $\rightarrow$ objection	v say that you disagree with or oppose sth
	resign → resignation	n the act of giving up your job
	accomplish → accomplishment	n an impressive thing that is done or achieved after a lot of work
	acknowledge $\rightarrow$ acknowledgement	v accept that sth is true
-ment	encourage → encouragement	n the act of encouraging sb to do sth
	measure	n the size, length or amount of sth
	settle → settlement	<i>n</i> an official agreement that ends an argument
	deny $\rightarrow$ denial	v say that sth is not true
	dismiss → dismissal	n the act of dismissing sb from their job
-al	propose	n a formal suggestion or plan
	refuse → <b>refusal</b>	n an act of saying or showing that you will not do, give or accept sth

### SPOTLIGHT different meanings

The addition of a suffix to a verb sometimes creates a noun with a meaning that is further from that of the verb.

- I edit the magazine. (= prepare it for publication by correcting mistakes, making changes, etc.)
- We now have an online edition of the magazine. (= the form in which a book is published)

1	settle /			5	measure /	1		9	denv/		******************
2	refuse /			6	resign /						
3	acknowledge	1		7	propose /						
4	complete /			8	object /						
01	rganize the w	ords u	inder the t	wo he	eadings b	elow.					
	encourageme collaboration	nt	dismissal accomplis	hment	refu der		apprecia		objecti	on	
PC	DSITIVE MEAN	IING					IEGATIVE		G		
						·					
Co	omplete the s	enten	ces with a	suital	ole verb.						
1	1										
2	The civil serva				-					ət.	
3	Several neigh										
•	The paper							-		an apol	ogy.
>	We should be								cessary.		
2	The gas comp							leaks.			
	How long have							(C	a sector a	3	
5	The two com	panies i	have decide							n.	
	1A/la at/a the a me		Esta second			1				Sec. 5 10	
Fir	What's the pu Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal	of word	mind you b ds in the b	uilding	g an extens at have a	sion? ~ Y	es, one pe	rson has fly expla	in the c		to it.
	Do your neigl	nbours of word inspe	mind you b	ox tha	g an extens	sion? ~ Y connect der	es, one pe	rson has	in the c		to it.
	Do your neigl nd five pairs o refusal	nbours of word inspe	mind you b ds in the ba ection	ox tha	g an extens at have a coperation	sion? ~ Y connect der	'es, one pe <b>tion. Brie</b> nial	fly expla agreen	in the c		to it.
	Do your neigl nd five pairs o refusal	nbours of word inspe	mind you b ds in the ba ection	ox tha	g an extens at have a coperation	sion? ~ Y connect der	'es, one pe <b>tion. Brie</b> nial	fly expla agreen	in the c		to it.
	Do your neigl nd five pairs o refusal	nbours of word inspe	mind you b ds in the ba ection	ox tha	g an extens at have a coperation	sion? ~ Y connect der	'es, one pe <b>tion. Brie</b> nial	fly expla agreen	in the c		to it.
Fir	Do your neigl nd five pairs o refusal	nbours of word inspe collal	mind you b ds in the b ection boration	uilding ox tha coo res	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set	es, one pe tion. Brie nial tlement	agreen examin	in the c nent ation	onnec	to it.
ir Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage	hbours of word collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the b ection boration	uilding ox tha coo res	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga	ves, one pe tion. Brie nial tlement	fly expla agreen examin / . Keep t	in the c nent ation	onnec e mear	to it.
Fir Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal write the ser We encourag We finally set	hbours of word collal / / tences ed him. tled the	mind you b ds in the b ection boration	uilding ox tha coo res	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir	rds giver	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t	in the contraction	onnec e mear	to it.
ir Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal write the ser We encourage We finally sett They will insp	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / 	mind you b ds in the be ection boration s on the lef matter. ext week.	uilding ox tha coo res	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There	rds giver ave will be	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
ir Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal write the ser We encourage We finally set They will insp She hesitated	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the based ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning.	uilding ox tha coo res	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b	rds giver ave nally reach will be egan after	fly expla agreen examin / . Keep t ed some	in the c nent ation	onnec e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal write the ser We encourage We finally set They will insp She hesitated Do you know	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me	uilding ox tha coo res	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo	rds giver ave mally reacher will be egan after bu know th	fly expla agreen examin / . Keep t ed some	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourag We finally sett They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the based ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day.	uilding ox tha coo res ft star	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I	rds giver ave ally reache will be egan after bu know th handed in	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage We finally sett They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accon	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. te three mot	uilding ox tha coo res ft star	g an extens at have a coperation ignation	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca	rds giver ave ave ave ally reacher will be egan after bu know th handed in an provide	rson has fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage We finally sette They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accom I left after the	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. te three mon day.	tilding ox that coor res ft star	g an extens at have a coperation ignation rting with	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca	rds giver ave ally reache will be egan after bu know th handed in	rson has fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourag We finally sett They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accond I left after the perplete the d	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the lef matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. the three mon day. the three mon day.	tilding ox that coor res ft star ft star re. compa suitab	g an extens at have a coperation ignation rting with s? any. ole noun.	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca I left a	rds giver ave ave ave ave ave ave ave ave ave ave	rson has fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
ir Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourag We finally set They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accom I left after the mplete the d Were there str	hbours of word inspe collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. te three more day. te three more day. te three more day.	tilding ox that coor res ft star ft star re. compa suitab	at have a coperation ignation of the second	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th	rds giver ave mally reacher will be egan after bu know th handed in an provide after the	rson has fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some e e	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage We finally sette They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accom I left after the mplete the d Were there str Has anyone p	hbours of word inspe collal / 	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. the three more day. the three more day. the new of the new of les with a s agreements ard a plan?	tilding ox that coor res ft star ft star res res compa suitab with t	g an extense at have a coperation ignation rting with s? any. ble noun. the policy?	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th	rds giver ave hally reache will be egan after bu know th handed in an provide after the here were so	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some e e some e e	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourag We finally sett They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accond I left after they omplete the d Were there str Has anyone p Does the com	hbours of word inspe- collal / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / / /	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. the three more day. the three more day.	tilding ox that coor res ft star ft star res res compa suitab with t	g an extense at have a coperation ignation rting with s? any. ble noun. the policy?	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ I hope	rds giver ave ave ave ave ave ave ave ave ave ave	rson has fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some ed some een some een one ere has be	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neigh nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage We finally set They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accom I left after the mplete the d Were there str Has anyone p Does the com When will the	hbours of word inspe collal / / ntences ed him. iled the ect it ne at the b what the what the yesters nmodat y create lialogu ong disa ut forwa builder	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. te three more day. te three three more day. te three three so	uilding ox tha coo res ft star easures re. compa suitab with t true?	at have a coperation ignation of the policy?	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Next F	rds giver ave anally reacher will be egan after bu know th handed in an provide after the here were so here has be so, but th Friday is th	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some e e several een one ere has be e earliest	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
Re	Do your neight nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage We finally sette They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accom I left after the Were there stre Has anyone p Does the com When will the I hear a couple	hbours of word inspection collal / inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal inspection collal col	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. te three more day. te three more this is three finish?	uilding ox tha coo res ft star ft star easures re. compa suitab with t true? red.	at have a coperation ignation of the policy?	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th	rds giver ave mally reacher will be egan after bu know th handed in an provide after the fiere were so here has be eso, but th Friday is th actual fac	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee examin	in the contraction	e mear ublic	to it.
Re	Do your neight nd five pairs of refusal dismissal write the ser We encourag We finally sett They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accord I left after the Were there str Has anyone p Does the cord When will the I hear a couple He claimed he	hbours of word inspe- collal / / ntences ed him. tled the ect it ne at the t what the tyesters inspe- collal / / / ntences ed him. tled the at the t what the tyesters ong disa ut forwa builder e didn't	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. the three more day. the three more the three three three three three the three three three the three the three three three three thre	uilding ox tha coo res ft star ft star easures re. compa suitab with t true? red. ke.	at have a coperation ignation of the policy?	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, in ~ I hope ~ Next I ~ Yes, in ~ I knov	rds giver and all tement and teme	rson has fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some ed some ee several een one een one eere has be e earliest ct, there w ody believ	in the contraction	e mear	to it.
ir Re	Do your neight nd five pairs of refusal dismissal ewrite the ser We encourage We finally sette They will insp She hesitated Do you know Marc resigned We can accom I left after the Were there stre Has anyone p Does the com When will the I hear a couple	hbours of word inspection collal / / ntences ed him. iled the ect it ne at the bi- what the bi- y create lialogu ong disa ut forwa pany ac builder e didn't e didn't	mind you b ds in the base ection boration s on the left matter. ext week. beginning. he room me day. te three more day. te three three more day. te three more day. te three more the new of the new of the new of the new of the new of the	uilding ox tha coo res ft star ft star easures re. compa suitab with t true? red. ke.	at have a coperation ignation of the policy?	sion? ~ Y connect der set the wo We ga We fir There She b Do yo Marc I We ca I left a ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Yes, th ~ Next F ~ Yes, th ~ Next F	rds giver ave mally reacher will be egan after bu know th handed in an provide after the fiere were so here has be eso, but th Friday is th actual fac	fly expla agreen examin / / . Keep t ed some ed some ee some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee ed some ee examin several ee ere has be ee earliest it, there wo ody believ wed their	in the contraction	e mear ublic	to it.

### Suffixes that form adjectives and verbs 93

### A Suffixes that form adjectives

The suffixes -able, -al and -ive can be added to some nouns and verbs to form adjectives. There are sometimes minor spelling changes.

The new agricultural scheme is a cooperative venture among farmers in South Wales, but it would be logical to extend it to the whole of Wales.

The company has become increasingly profitable in recent years. It makes very simple functional clothes which are hard-wearing and affordable.

The army worked throughout the night to put up protective barriers, but the destructive force of the storm has still caused considerable structural damage to the town.

The school is proud of its progressive educational policy, but some parents still believe they are being too selective regarding entry requirements.

connected with the practice of farming doing sth together or working together with others towards a shared aim cooperation n
seeming natural, reasonable or sensible logic n
that makes or is likely to make money
(of clothes, furniture, etc.) practical and useful; with little or no decoration
cheap enough that people can afford it
providing or intended to provide protection
causing destruction or damage
connected with the way in which sth is built
in favour of new ideas and modern methods
connected with education
careful about what or who you choose

### Underline the stress on these words. Use the 20 to help you.

agricultural	cooperative	affordable	profitable
progressive	structural	destructive	cooperation

### Rewrite the sentences using suitable adjectives. Keep the same meaning.

- They have the means to buy these houses.
- He's given us his full cooperation.
- 3 The company is making a lot of money.
- 4 The earthquake caused massive damage.
- 5 Parts of the building are damaged.
- 6 Do they have a policy on farming?
- 8 Did it seem a sensible thing to do?
- He's been very The company is very \_\_\_\_\_. The earthquake was very There was some \_\_\_\_\_ damage. Do they have an \_\_\_\_\_ policy? 7 Is the army careful about who they choose? Is the army \_\_\_\_\_? Did it seem very

Complete the sentences.

- 1 As a father he has always been very \_\_\_\_\_\_ towards his children.
- 2 It's a very forward-thinking company with lots of \_\_\_\_\_\_ ideas.
- 3 When we asked for their help, the children were all very
- 4 Their furniture is not beautiful, but it's
- 5 We have to consider the \_\_\_\_\_\_ needs of all the children, not just the clever ones.
- 6 Hundreds applied for places, but the company are very
- 7 I fail to see the \_\_\_\_\_\_ behind his argument. It didn't make any sense at all.
- 8 I can't organize the talks alone. I need their \_\_\_\_\_\_ to get everything done.

### 4 Do you know or can you guess the adjectives formed from these nouns and verbs?

architecture	innovation	believe	experiment	administration
clinic	accept	constitution	communication	excuse

### **B** Suffixes that form verbs

The suffixes -en, -ize and -ify can be added to some nouns and adjectives to form verbs. In most cases, the meaning is easy to guess if you already know the nouns and adjectives.

Verb	Meaning
They need to strengthen the bridge	make sth/sb stronger
This story will weaken the President's position.	make sb/sth less strong or powerful
I'm going to shorten this dress.	make sth shorter
He is authorized to make the payments.	give official permision for sth, or for sb to do sth
We need to maximize our efficiency.	increase sth as much as possible OPP minimize
They specialize in computer technology.	be or become an expert in a particular area of work or study
The government must <b>stabilize</b> the currency.	become or make sth become firm and steady; become or make sth stable
We have to clarify the situation.	make sth clearer and easier to understand
This story will intensify speculation.	increase or make sth increase in degree and strength SYN heighten
We need to simplify the rules.	make sth easier to do or understand
You must specify your name in full.	state sth giving an exact measurement, time, instruction, etc.

5 The stress on the verbs above is on the first syllable, with one exception. What is the verb that has the stress on the second syllable? Use the exception.

### 6 Write the verbs related to these nouns and adjectives.

1	maximum	 6	specific	
2	strength	 7	weak	
3	simple	 8	stable	
4	authority	 9	clear	
5	short	 10	specialist	

### Replace the underlined words with a verb ending in -en, -ize or -ify, and make any other necessary changes in word order. Keep the same meaning.

- 1 The builder said he would make the wall stronger.
- We need to make our position on this issue clearer.
- 3 He is an expert in this field of medicine.

4 The presence of the police <u>heightened</u> the concern in the crowd.

- 5 Do you have the authority to replace the tickets?
- 6 I need to increase the time available to us as much as possible.
- 7 This is too complicated. We need to make the instructions much easier for students.
- 8 You must give the exact details on the form.
- 9 Engineers are trying to make the bridge more stable.
- 10 This result makes her position less strong.

		related to these adjectives	and nouns? Check the	
meanings in th	ne 🐢.			
tight /	legal /	modern /	visual /	

tight /	 legal /	modern /	visual /
oure /	 economy /	equal /	peace /

-				
	-	 110		
		 YL.	) [ ] ]	I F
		 YC		 

......

### Verbs and nouns with the same form 94

Many words can be used as a noun or verb with the same base form, and often with a closely related meaning. You will already know many of these words in one or other form.



1 in the shade



2 a bad tackle

VERBS	NOUNS
He leads the race by five seconds.	He has a lead of five seconds in the race.
I'm drafting a letter.	I'm writing the first draft of a letter.
I was shaded by the trees.	We sat in the shade <sup>1</sup> of the trees.
Our luggage is being transported by sea.	They are using sea transport for our luggage.
Everyone cheered loudly.	There was a loud cheer from everyone.
We use a device to filter water.	We use a water filter.
He tackled the player badly.	It was a bad tackle <sup>2</sup> .
I paused for a moment, then continued.	There was a pause for a moment, then I continued.
They tortured some of the men.	Some of the men suffered torture.
We really had to battle to win the game.	It was a real battle to win the game.
n some cases, the meanings of a noun and verb wi	th the same base form are further apart.
I deposited the money in the bank.	I have to leave a deposit of £200.

rdeposited the money in the bank.	Thate to leave a deposit of 2200.
We must combat this threat to the environment.	The weapons are used in combat.
We need to extract as much information as possible.	He asked me to read an extract.
I hope to mate the two dogs.	Bryn has lots of good mates.
We traced him to an address in York.	They found no trace of the money.
The shareholders have <b>disputed</b> the figures.	The countries have had a long dispute.

### GLOSSARY

GLOSSANI			
lead draft	the position ahead of others in a race, competition or contest <b>lead</b> v write the first version of sth such as a letter,	combat n combat v	fighting, especially during a time of war stop sth harmful or unplesant from happening, or from getting worse
transport	speech or book <b>draft</b> <i>n</i> take sth/sb from one place to another in a vehicle <b>transport</b> <i>n</i>	extract n	a short piece from a book, piece of music etc, that gives you an idea what the whole is like obtain money, information, etc, often by taking
cheer	a shout of joy, support or praise cheer v		it from sb who is unwilling to give it
filter	a device containing paper, chemicals, etc. that a liquid or gas is passed through in order to remove unwanted material <b>filter</b> v	mate n inf mate v	a friend (of two animals or birds) have sex in order to produce young
pause	stop talking or doing sth for a short time before continuing <b>pause</b> <i>n</i> the act of causing sb severe pain in order to	trace n trace v	a mark or sign that sth existed or happened find sb/sth by looking carefully for them/it SYN <b>track sb/sth down</b>
battle (with/for/	punish them or make them say sth <b>torture</b> v a big effort that sb makes to solve a problem	dispute n	an argument or a disagreement between two people, groups or countries
against sth) deposit n	or succeed in a difficult situation <b>battle</b> v a sum of money that is given as the first part of a larger payment	dispute v	question whether sth is true and valid
deposit v	put money into a bank account		

transport n	transp	ort v	combat n,	v extract n
extract v	deposi	it n, v	dispute n, v	v torture n, v
Match 1–8	with a-h			
1 He tackle	ed		а	for a moment, then carried on.
2 She draft	ted		b	loudly when they scored.
3 He pause			c	the player without the ball.
4 She sat			d	some distant members of her family.
5 He depo			e	with alcoholism for years.
6 She's trac			f	a couple of emails.
7 He battle			g	in the shade to stay cool.
8 She chee			h	most of the money in a bank account.
Rewrite the	ese sentenc	es using t	the noun in	nstead of the underlined verb.
	ker paused, t	_		There
and the second sec	was comple			The table
	a device to f			We have
	rals are leading			The Liberals
	hear the cro			We could
	ured two of			Two of the prisoners
	they transpo			What
	a battle to ge	-		They will
<ol> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> </ol>	u to meet a		from his new	ne. His name is Patrick.
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The land</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reco</li> <li>Doctors a</li> </ul>	u to meet a to meet a to more a ord wants a oldiers were a covered the r are looking fo	killed or wo money but or a way to	from his new of min family who of one ounded in there was new	w play.
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The land</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reco</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> </ul>	u to meet a to ord wants a oldiers were covered the r are looking fo	killed or wo noney but or a way to the	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no e money?	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease.
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The landle</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reco</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> </ul>	u to meet a u to meet a ord wants a oldiers were covered the r are looking fo in I	killed or wo noney but or a way to the e released t	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no e money? he figures, b	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. o used to live in our house. e month's rent. oof the stolen jewellery.
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The landle</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reco</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> <li>ABOUT YOU</li> <li>Who is yo</li> </ul>	u to meet a u to meet a to ord wants a oldiers were covered the r are looking fo in I mment have er was <b>Write an</b> our best mate	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no e money? he figures, b just outside	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b>
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The landle</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reconstruction</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> </ul>	a short u to meet a ord wants a oldiers were l covered the r are looking for an I rnment have er was <b>Write an</b> our best mate ever been in	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t	from his new of min family who of one ounded in there was no there was no e money? he figures, b just outside the questio	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b>
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The land</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police rec</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> <li>ABOUT YOU</li> <li>Who is you</li> <li>Have you</li> </ul>	u to meet a u to meet a to ord wants a oldiers were covered the r are looking for in I mment have er was <b>Write an</b> our best mate ever been in ever tried to	the killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no e money? he figures, b just outside the questio	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. out the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b> hization. If so, what was it about?
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The landle</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reco</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> </ul> ABOUT YOU Have you Have you Have you	a short u to meet a ord wants a oldiers were l covered the r are looking for in I wrnment have er was	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t swers to t dispute w trace your battle really	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no there was no e money? he figures, b just outside the questio with an organ family histo y hard to ach	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b> hization. If so, what was it about? bry?
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The land</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police rec</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> <li>ABOUT YOI</li> <li>Who is you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>When wa</li> </ul>	a short u to meet a ord wants a oldiers were f covered the r are looking for an I for ment have er was <b>Write an</b> our best mate ever been in ever tried to s the last time	the killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t swers to t dispute w trace your battle really e you depo	from his ner of min family who family who of one ounded in there was no emoney? he figures, b just outside the questio with an organ family histo y hard to ach osited mone	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b> nization. If so, what was it about? hieve something? If so, what? but he penalty area.
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The land</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police rec</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> <li>ABOUT YOU</li> <li>Who is you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>When wa</li> <li>Do you p</li> </ul>	a short u to meet a ord wants a oldiers were l covered the r are looking for in I write and our best mate ever been in ever tried to s the last tim refer sitting in	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t swers to t dispute w trace your battle really he you depon n the sun of	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no e money? he figures, b just outside the questio the questio than organ family histo y hard to ach osited mone or in the shace	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b> hization. If so, what was it about? hieve something? If so, what? ey in a bank account? How much was it for? de? Why?
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The landle</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reconstruction</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> </ul> ABOUT YOI Who is you Have you <ul> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>When wa</li> <li>Do you played</li> </ul>	a short u to meet a ord wants a	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t of dispute w trace your battle really ne you depon the sun of sports eve	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no there was no emoney? he figures, b just outside the questio with an organ family histo y hard to ach osited mone or in the shad	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b> hization. If so, what was it about? hieve something? If so, what? ey in a bank account? How much was it for? de? Why? l events? If so, what particular events?
<ul> <li>He read a</li> <li>I'd like yo</li> <li>I'm trying</li> <li>The landle</li> <li>Several so</li> <li>Police reconstruction</li> <li>Doctors a</li> <li>Where ca</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The gove</li> <li>The playe</li> </ul> ABOUT YOI Who is you Have you <ul> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>Have you</li> <li>When wa</li> <li>Do you played</li> </ul>	a short u to meet a ord wants a	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t of dispute w trace your battle really ne you depon the sun of sports eve	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no there was no emoney? he figures, b just outside the questio with an organ family histo y hard to ach osited mone or in the shad	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. to used to live in our house. e month's rent. o of the stolen jewellery. the spread of the disease. but the opposition are them. the penalty area. <b>ons, or talk to another student.</b> hization. If so, what was it about? hieve something? If so, what? ey in a bank account? How much was it for? de? Why?
He read a l'd like yo l'm trying The landl Several so Police rec Doctors a Where ca The gove The playe ABOUT YO Who is yo Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you	a short u to meet a ord wants a oldiers were l covered the r are looking for in I write and our best mate ever been in ever tried to s the last tim refer sitting in ften cheer at ever had to s the last tim	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t a dispute w trace your battle really be you depon the sun of sports eve pay a depon	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no emoney? he figures, b just outside the questio with an organ family histo y hard to ach osited mone or in the shad ents or social osit for some ones can al	w play. ne. His name is Patrick. o used to live in our house. e month's rent. o
He read a l'd like yo l'm trying The landl Several so Police rec Doctors a Where ca The gove The playe ABOUT YO Who is yo Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you Have you	a short u to meet a ord wants a ord wants a oldiers were l covered the r are looking for in I rnment have er was <b>Write an</b> our best mate ever been in ever tried to s the last tim refer sitting in ften cheer at ever had to p	killed or wo money but or a way to the released t swers to t a dispute w trace your battle really be you depon the sun of sports eve pay a depon	from his ner of min family who of one ounded in there was no emoney? he figures, b just outside the questio with an organ family histo y hard to ach osited mone or in the shad ents or social osit for some ones can al	<pre>w play. ne. His name is Patrick. o used to live in our house. e month's rent. </pre>

# 95 Verbs with prepositions

cater compens substitut		FOR		differ distinguish sth distract sb	FROM
				exclude sb	
		The restaurant can ca You can substitute we this recipe. I can't distinguish one She distracted me fro	ater <b>for</b> milk in e twin <b>from</b> the other.		
	-	I want to exclude fat i			
congratulate sb embark		I congratulated him of She insisted on going	on his result.	accuse sb	
insist		They <b>deprived</b> the an	imals of food for days.	- deprive sb	OF
/		<ul> <li>We must adhere to the</li> </ul>	The second se	dispose	
(		I had to <b>cling</b> to the si I <b>devote</b> an hour a da			
		We'll confer with the			
		postponing the meeti			
		My account of the inc			-
		correspond with here	s. <b>ile</b> his career ambitions	confer	
adhere		with the needs of his of		coincide	
cling devote sth	то			correspond	WITH
surrender (sth)				interact	
Surrender (Still)				proceed	
				reconcile sth	
GLOSSARY					
GLOSSARY	discuss sth	with sb in order to	accuse sb (of sth)	say that sb has done sth v	wrong or is
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal	exchange o	with sb in order to opinions or get advice	accuse sb (of sth)	say that sb has done sth v guilty of sth	
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal	exchange of communication you are with	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them	distinguish sth (from sth)	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things	between
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb)	exchange of communica you are with continue de	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has		guilty of sth recognize the difference	between
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth)	exchange of communica you are with continue de already star (of two or n	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb)	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb	between sth in what
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth)	exchange of communica you are with continue do already star (of two or n the same til	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth)	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do	between th in what from what
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth)	exchange of communication you are with continue de already star (of two or no the same the be the same find an acce	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime he as or match sth eptable way of dealing with	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb)	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen	between th in what from what
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth) reconcile sth (with sth)	exchange of communication you are with continue de already star (of two or in the same the be the same the be the same the find an access two or more seem to be	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime te as or match sth eptable way of dealing with re ideas, needs, etc. that e opposed to each other	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb) distract sb/sth (from sth) insist (on sth / doing sth) embark on sth formal	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen do something start to do sth new or diff	between ith in what from what is or that sb ficult
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth) reconcile sth (with sth)	exchange of communicat you are with continue de already star (of two or n the same till be the same find an acce two or mor seem to be behave acc	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime the as or match sth eptable way of dealing with re ideas, needs, etc. that	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb) distract sb/sth (from sth) insist (on sth / doing sth)	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen do something	between ith in what from what is or that sb ficult
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth) reconcile sth (with sth) adhere to sth formal	exchange of communica you are with continue de already star (of two or in the same the be the same find an acce two or mor seem to be behave acce rule, set of it admit you	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime te as or match sth eptable way of dealing with re ideas, needs, etc. that e opposed to each other cording to a particular law, instructions, etc. have been defeated and	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb) distract sb/sth (from sth) insist (on sth / doing sth) embark on sth formal	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen do something start to do sth new or diff tell sb you are pleased ab success provide food and drinks f	between of in what from what is or that sb ficult bout their
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth) reconcile sth (with sth) reconcile sth formal surrender (to sb) cling (on) to sth/sb	exchange of communicat you are with continue de already star (of two or n the same till be the same find an acce two or mor seem to be behave acce rule, set of ill admit you lill want to sto hold on tig	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime the as or match sth eptable way of dealing with re ideas, needs, etc. that e opposed to each other cording to a particular law, instructions, etc. have been defeated and op fighting htly to sth/sb	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb) distract sb/sth (from sth) insist (on sth / doing sth) embark on sth <i>formal</i> congratulate sb (on sth)	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen do something start to do sth new or diff tell sb you are pleased ab success provide food and drinks f social event provide sth good to balan	between sth in what from what s or that sb ficult bout their for a nce or
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth) reconcile sth (with sth) adhere to sth formal surrender (to sb)	exchange of communicat you are with continue de already star (of two or n the same till be the same find an acce two or mor seem to be behave acce rule, set of ill admit you lill want to sto hold on tig	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime he as or match sth eptable way of dealing with re ideas, needs, etc. that e opposed to each other cording to a particular law, instructions, etc. have been defeated and op fighting	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb) distract sb/sth (from sth) insist (on sth / doing sth) embark on sth <i>formal</i> congratulate sb (on sth) cater for sth/sb	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen do something start to do sth new or diff tell sb you are pleased ab success provide food and drinks f social event	between sth in what from what s or that sb ficult bout their for a nce or f damage,
confer (with sb) (on/about sth) formal interact (with sb) proceed (with sth) coincide (with sth) correspond (with sth) reconcile sth (with sth) reconcile sth formal surrender (to sb) cling (on) to sth/sb	exchange of communicat you are with continue de already star (of two or n the same till be the same find an acco two or mor seem to be behave acco rule, set of i admit you h want to sto hold on tig give an ame to sth prevent sb	opinions or get advice ate with sb, especially when th them oing sth that has rted more events) take place at ime the as or match sth eptable way of dealing with re ideas, needs, etc. that e opposed to each other cording to a particular law, instructions, etc. have been defeated and op fighting htly to sth/sb	distinguish sth (from sth) exclude (sth from sth) differ (from sth/sb) distract sb/sth (from sth) insist (on sth / doing sth) embark on sth <i>formal</i> congratulate sb (on sth) cater for sth/sb	guilty of sth recognize the difference two people or things deliberately not include s you are doing be different from sth/sb take sb's attention away f they are trying to do demand that sth happen do something start to do sth new or diff tell sb you are pleased ab success provide food and drinks f social event provide sth good to balan reduce the bad effects of	between sth in what from what s or that sb ficult bout their for a nce or f damage, <b>r sth</b>

	concile	interact congratula		ude inguish	correspond adhere	embark substitute
					ave a positive se suggest that som	nse or suggest movi nething is being
re	deprive	embark	interact	dispose	exclude	
	congratulate	proceed	surrender	dispose confer	reconcile	
	ORE POSITIVE		ORE NEGATIV			
C	omplete the sen	tences with	the correct p	reposition.		
1	It wasn't necessa	ary but he insi	sted	helping u	5.	
2	Their views diffe					
3	The children we	re deprived		adequate food a	nd clothing.	
4	This letter corres	sponds	what	they said in the	ir email.	
5	The party will co	pincide	my b	irthday.		
6	I couldn't disting			another.		
7	They accused m	e	lying.			
8	When are the te	am planning t	o embark	their	polar expedition?	
R	eplace the unde	rlined word	(s) with anoth	er word that k	eeps the same m	eaning
1	I will have to disc					eannig.
2	My aunt has for		-			
3	I can't tell an Am				C1.	
4	We can <u>carry on</u>			in one.		
5	It's difficult to co			Idren at the sam	e time	***********************
6	We are going to				e unie.	
7	I can't provide fo			eople.		*****************************
8	We must stick fir				mmittee.	
9			-		bes we had to throw	away.
10	The little boy ha					
c.	malata the con	ton cor with	the correct use			
1	Most of the rehe					
2					nd are now prisoned to protect the en	
-					ne from working.	wironment?
4	It was my treat, a					
5					eventually suffer.	
6	I			-		
7	Nothing can real					
					akes me feel very lo	onely.
					heddar for parmes	
9	Both parents					
9			ually follow t	hese verbs. The	ey are not only th	e prepositions used
w			an taught else	where in thic b		rd list it nococcore
Wab	rite the preposition ove, but the vertice over the preposition of the	rbs have bee		where in this t		sth

# Nouns with prepositions

Do you usually have confidence in your ability to do things?

Should you always take advantage of opportunities to earn more money?

Is it true that any exposure to radiation can be harmful?

Do you need reminders of people's birthdays, or do you always remember them?

Would you like greater involvement in politics or charity work?

Is it true there is no substitute for hard work if you want to be successful?

With the exception of a flat or car, what is the most expensive thing you've ever bought?

If the government imposed limitations on air travel for environmental reasons, would you support that? Do you think society is better since the emergence of social media?

Is there anyone that you feel contempt for?

### Circle the correct preposition.

- 1 the emergence of / for democracy
- 2 restraints of / on the use of alcohol
- 3 my involvement on / in the project
- 4 take advantage of / for the sun

### GLOSSARY

confidence (in sth/sb)	the feeling that you can trust, believe in and be sure about the abilities or good qualities of sb/sth
take advantage of sth	make use of sth well; make use of an opportunity
exposure (to sth)	the state of being in a place or situation where there is usually no protection from sth harmful or unpleasant
reminder (of sth)	sth that makes you think about or remember sb/sth that you have forgotten, would like to forget or might accidentally forget
involvement (in sth)	the act of participating in sth and giving time to it
substitute for sth	a person or thing that you use or have instead of one you normally use or have
with the exception of	sth except; not including
limitation (on sth)	a rule, fact or condition that limits sth SYN restraint (on sth)
emergence (of sth)	the fact of starting to exist or become known for the first time
contempt (for sb/sth)	the feeling that sb/sth is without value and deserves no respect

- 5 no substitute in / for love
- limitations on / in the use of cars
- 7 a reminder to / of how dangerous cars are
- confidence on / in the justice system 8

### Complete the dialogues with a suitable noun.

1	Can they work 12 hours a day?	~ No, there are permitted to work.	on the number of hours they are
2	Did everyone do their homework?	~ Yes, with the	. of Reuben, as usual.
3	Clara's very well qualified.	~ I agree, but there's no	for practical experience.
4	There are still guards outside.	~ Indeed. It's a	
5	Luca thinks he's going to fail the test.	~ That boy has no	
6	Do you use sunblock?	~ Yes, I'm worried about	
7	Jonas doesn't respect even his own MP.	~ I agree. He shows complete	for Parliament.
8	They've given me a great opportunity.	~ Yes, make sure you take	of it.
C	omplete the sentences with the corre	ect noun and preposition.	
1	Living near the nuclear plant, I'm worried	d about	radiation.
2	Teachers generally encourage parents'		
3	We are seeing the	new democracies	around the world.
1	The second		aublic monding during the cricis

- 4 The government have imposed serious \_\_\_\_\_\_ public spending during the crisis. 5 We enjoyed the meal, with the \_\_\_\_\_ Carla, who hated every mouthful.
- 6 The critic was very rude and showed \_\_\_\_\_\_ the director's new ideas.
- 7 The smashed car on the side of the road is a \_\_\_\_\_\_ the dangers of drinking
- and driving. 8 I'm planning to take \_\_\_\_\_\_ of our neighbours' absence to hold a big party.

#### ABOUT YOU What are your answers to the questions at the top of the page? Write them down, 4 or ask another student.

You are more <b>liabl</b> before exercise.	e to injury if you don't warm up	Some of the workers remain resistant to change, but they are no longer representative of the majority.
The air traffic controllers appear intent on causing maximum disruption, and most flights will be		Jasmina is <b>dedicated to</b> her husband; he is totally <b>dependent on</b> her.
subject to long delays. Some of the new computers are no longer compatible with existing software and, as a result, technological problems are now inherent in the system.		I am very sceptical of the claim that a single vaccination could make people immune to a wide range of diseases.
		Eight kilometres is roughly equivalent to five miles.
GLOSSARY		
liable (to sth) intent (on/upon sth / doing sth) subject (to sth)	likely to be affected by sth determined to do sth likely to be affected by sth, especially	representative of sth/sbtypical of a particular group or thingdedicated (to sb/sth)working hard at sth because it is very important to you
compatible (with sth) inherent (in sth/sb)	sth bad able to be used or exist with sth without causing problems that is a basic or permanent part of sth/sb	
resistant (to sth)	and that cannot be removed opposed to sth and not wanting it to happen	immune (to sth)that cannot catch or be affected by a particular illness or diseaseequivalent to sthequal in number amount etc, to sth else
Underline the intent representative	subject compatible dedicated dependent	to help you. inherent resistant liable sceptical immune
<ol> <li>I'm sceptical</li> <li>Is he represe</li> <li>Why is he so</li> <li>The timetable</li> </ol>	prepositions. tedher job. this article. the group? dependentthem? le is subjectchange completing this task.	
<ol> <li>Someone with</li> <li>A feature whith</li> <li>Software whith</li> <li>Software whith</li> <li>Someone with</li> <li>If an agreem</li> <li>If someone in</li> <li>A qualification</li> </ol>	Write T or F. If false, say why. ho is immune to a disease has a good ich is inherent in a system can be rea- ich is compatible with a computer can ho is dedicated to their work usually ent is subject to approval, it is definit s dependent on you, they need you on that is equivalent to a degree is his th is liable to flooding is very likely to	moved from it. n easily be used with it. leaves the office early. rely going to happen. to help them survive. gher than a degree.
<ul> <li>are necessary.</li> <li>1 Transport in disruption be</li> <li>2 Some of the system broughting the sys</li></ul>		<ul> <li>re and preposition. Make any other changes that</li> <li>The manager is <u>determined to</u> ensure that the players are well looked after.</li> <li>I'm rather <u>doubtful about</u> conspiracy theories: the world just isn't that well organized.</li> <li>Do you think the results of the survey are <u>typica</u> <u>of</u> the population as a whole?</li> </ul>

## 98 Prepositional phrases

### A Phrases with at, in, on and by

I wrote out the paragraph in full. Really? You didn't do that by choice, did you? Certainly not. I was made to do it.

I can normally get theatre work on the basis of my experience, but at present there's absolutely nothing, so I've been helping out behind the bar at my local pub. I'm hoping something will come up in the near future, but it's by no means certain.

Do you have to travel **at short notice**? Yes, I get a call and have to leave **at once**.

You didn't ignore Suki on purpose, did you? No, Suki and I are on good terms, but I just didn't see her.

### GLOSSARY

i

b

C

C

n full	including the whole of sth
by choice	because you have chosen (to do sth)
on the basis of sth	because of sth
t present	now; at the moment
n the near future	soon
by no means	not at all
at short notice	with very little warning ALSO at a moment's notice
at once	immediately SYN right away, straight away
on purpose	not by accident; deliberately
bad, etc. terms (with sb)	have a good/friendly/bad, etc. relationship (with sb)

### Circle the correct word.

- 1 He came *in / at* a moment's notice.
- 2 I'm sure she did it by / on purpose.
- 3 She's busy at / in present.
- 4 I completed the application *in / by* full.
- 5 I got the job on / in the basis of my qualifications.
- 6 We have to leave right way / away.
- 7 They're not on / in friendly terms.
- 8 The solution is *at / by* no means clear.

### 2 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase. Keep the same meaning.

- 1 We can give you an appointment with very little warning.
- 2 The doctor is very busy right now, but he'll ring you later.
- 3 They gave me the job because of my qualifications.
- 4 The papers think that Ellis will win the election, but it is not at all certain.
- 5 Call the emergency services immediately if you think you are in danger.
- 6 It is believed that the fire was started <u>deliberately</u> in order to claim insurance.
- 7 Louise is moving to the countryside because she wants to, not because she has to.
- 8 Are the brothers getting on well these days, or are they still arguing?

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable prepositional phrase.

- 1 I drive to work, but I'd never do it \_\_\_\_\_\_ if I could avoid it.
- 2 When it is ready, take the pie out of the oven and serve it
- 3 I may need more teachers soon, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ we're OK.
- We haven't made a profit yet, but we're hoping to do so
  I left the money on the table to see if Kia would steal it, but she didn't.
- Luke and Dan aren't speaking to each other. I don't know why they're \_\_\_\_\_\_ with each other.
- 7 It may be difficult to find someone to do the job \_\_\_\_\_\_, but we'll try.
- 8 You can't just put your initials. You have to write your name
- 9 I finally managed to calm them down, but it was \_\_\_\_\_\_ easy.
- 10 The products were all very similar so I just chose one \_\_\_\_\_ price.



# 99 Adjectives

### A Synonyms and opposites

Marcus Campion was a man of exceptional talent, who had been one of the most eminent lawyers of his generation. He was not a conventional lawyer, though, and had a reputation for defending men and women accused of the most brutal crimes. However, even he felt uneasy as he considered his latest case. 'This Mabbutt is a bizarre character, and I admit I haven't formed a wholly favourable impression of him,' remarked Campion to his colleagues. "But I'm still reluctant to accept he might've killed his own children just to take revenge on their mother." Campion had defended wicked men in the past, but this was a most disturbing case, and he sat down to start preparing his case with a heavy heart.

exceptional	unusually good SYN outstanding
conventional	tending to follow what is done or considered acceptable by society in general OPP <b>unconventional</b>
brutal	violent and cruel SYN vicious; brutality n
bizarre	very strange and unusual SYN <b>weird, peculiar</b>
favourable	making people have a good opinion of sb/sth OPP unfavourable
reluctant	hesitating before doing sth because you don't want to do it or you are not sure it is the right thing to do SYN <b>unwilling</b> OPP <b>willing</b>
wicked	bad and morally wrong SYN evil
disturbing	making you feel anxious and upset or shocked SYN upsetting

Someone who is **eminent** is famous and respected, often for being good at a profession. If someone or something is **notorious**, they are / it is famous for being bad. SYN **infamous a notorious criminal** 

### Underline the stress on these words. Use the 🜚 to help you.

brutal reluctant	bizarre vicious	favourable outstanding	upsetting eminent	peculiar notorious	conventional infamous

### Circle the words which have a positive meaning.

outstanding	brutal	notorious	favourable	wicked	weird	
disturbing	upsetting	eminent	evil	exceptional	vicious	infamous

### Find seven pairs of synonyms in the box.

evil	exceptional infamous	brutal	reluctant	wicked	notorious	bizarre
disturbing		unwilling	outstanding	vicious	upsetting	weird
	1,					

### Complete the sentences.

- He was an \_\_\_\_\_ man and responsible for the deaths of many innocent people.
- 2 There's a \_\_\_\_\_\_ story in the paper about a man who lives underwater.
- 3 She's an \_\_\_\_\_\_ scientist as well as being a well-known writer.
- 4 It's become a/an \_\_\_\_\_ road because of the number of fatal accidents on it.
- 5 To see my sister shouting and screaming at me like that was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 He lives in a wooden hut without any electricity; it's a very \_\_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle.
- 7 He had an \_\_\_\_\_\_ game, and was easily the best player on the pitch.
- 8 It was a \_\_\_\_\_\_attack, and the man needed 12 stitches for a head wound.
- 9 I was \_\_\_\_\_\_ to help, but I wish they'd made clear how big the job was.
- 10 It's a fairly \_\_\_\_\_\_ family: husband, wife and two children.

### **B** Adjectives easily confused

Adjective	Examples	Meaning
comparable	The economic situation in this country is not really comparable to China.	similar to another thing, situation or person, and able to be compared to it
comparative	I've produced a <b>comparative</b> analysis of the two social care systems.	connected with studying things to find out how similar or different they are
naked	The child was almost naked.	not wearing clothes
bare	They walked in <b>bare</b> feet along the beach.	(of a part of the body) not covered by clothes: bare arms/legs
deadly	It's a deadly snake.	causing or likely to cause death
deathly	There was a deathly silence in the room.	like a dead person; suggesting death
comprehensive	I need a comprehensive list of the hotels.	full, and including all necessary details
comprehensible	It's a comprehensible story.	able to be understood OPP incomprehensible
super superb superior	We had a <b>super</b> meal at Gino's. Kaufmann's performance was <b>superb</b> . This model is <b>superior to</b> the others.	<i>inf, becoming old-fashioned</i> extremely good excellent; of very high quality greater or better in quality than sth/sb else
childlike childish	My brother has a <b>childlike</b> enthusiasm. My sister's behaviour is very <b>childish</b> .	approving having qualities typical of a child disapproving behaving in a silly way
tasty tasteful	The dish was really <b>tasty</b> . It's a very <b>tasteful</b> room.	(of food) full of flavour OPP tasteless (of clothes, furniture, etc.) attractive and of
lasterui	n savery lasterar room.	good quality OPP tasteless

### **5** Correct the mistakes. Two sentences have no mistakes.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
8

### 6 Complete the sentences. The words in capitals at the end will give you some help.

omplete the sentences. The words in capitals at the end will give you so	me neip.	
I've done some research on the subject, but we'll have to wait for a more	study	. COMPLETI
She still has a quality about her, which is lovely.		INNOCEN <sup>®</sup>
I really enjoyed the orchestra, and the soloist was		EXCELLEN
The woman was pale and looked extremely unwell.	LIKE	A DEAD PERSON
Anyone could follow her instructions: they were entirely	EASYT	OUNDERSTAND
The soup was awful: very thin and	WI	TH NO FLAVOUR
What type of place are you forbidden to enter with arms or leg	gs?	
	7	
	*******	
Why do you think adults sometimes suddenly behave in a way	2	
Why do some people believe that a vegetarian diet is to a mea	at diet?	
Why do some people believe that a vegetarian diet is to a mea Where might it be acceptable for someone to swim in the sea	at diet? ?	
	She still has aquality about her, which is lovely. I really enjoyed the orchestra, and the soloist was The woman waspale and looked extremely unwell. Anyone could follow her instructions: they were entirely The soup was awful: very thin and <b>omplete the questions, then write your answers, or talk to another stud</b> Why do you think people might study religion? What type of place are you forbidden to enter with arms or leg Why do some people find the instructions for electronic gadgets?	She still has aquality about her, which is lovely. I really enjoyed the orchestra, and the soloist was The woman waspale and looked extremely unwell. LIKE Anyone could follow her instructions: they were entirely EASY T The soup was awful: very thin and WI omplete the questions, then write your answers, or talk to another student. Why do you think people might study religion? What type of place are you forbidden to enter with arms or legs? Why do some people find the instructions for electronic gadgets?



# 100 Adverbs

### A Commenting

- A I can't believe that Maurice still commutes to London every day – it's an awful journey.
- B I know. But apparently he really likes his job. And presumably he earns a lot more working in London.
- A True. Ultimately though, I think he does it more for his career than the money.
- B Fair enough.
- A Frankly, I think he's mad.
- B I don't entirely agree with you.
- A Basically that is where we are different. For us family life is more important, but for Maurice, his career means practically everything to him.
- B Yes, I know. Strangely, he wasn't all that ambitious when we were at school.

### Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be possible.

- 1 He promised to come, so apparently / presumably he'll turn up later.
- 2 The boys are coming home basically / essentially because they've run out of money
- 3 The class are consulted but ultimately / curiously the teacher makes the final decision.
- 4 Others disagree, but entirely / frankly I thought it was an excellent idea.
- 5 We're expecting virtually / practically everyone to be there.
- 6 I don't know if the books will help us but practically / apparently we have to read them.

2 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word or phrase that keeps the same meaning.

- 1 Sian rang a couple of minutes ago. <u>Apparently</u>, the others missed the train.
- 2 They said the restaurant was always busy, but <u>surprisingly</u> it was almost empty.
  3 <u>Virtually</u> all the shops were closed when I got into town.
- 4 There are various options, but in the end we will have to see what is most practical.
- 5 We got there early essentially because we weren't sure when it started.
- 6 I got her a ticket but frankly, I don't think she's interested.
- 7 I thought Will's comments were guite reasonable.
- 8 Entry is free, so it's likely they will all be here.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- 1 we can't get tickets until tomorrow. That's what he told me.
- 2 Max wanted to talk about salaries as well, but that's an \_\_\_\_\_\_ different matter.
- She said she'd come if she can finish work early. ~ OK, that's
- I know he won't be happy, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ I don't care what he thinks.
   I usually feel pervous before Laive a talk but \_\_\_\_\_\_ I don't care what he thinks.
- I usually feel nervous before I give a talk, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ I felt fine today.
  I know they missed yesterday's class but \_\_\_\_\_\_ they'll be here today.
- 7 The bar is usually very busy, but today it was \_\_\_\_\_\_ empty.
- 8 I try to help the boys but \_\_\_\_\_\_ they are responsible for their actions.

ABOUT YOU Would you be prepared to spend more than two hours a day commuting to work if it gave you the opportunity for a better job and more money? Write your answer, or talk to another student.

GLOSSARY	
commute	travel regularly by train, car, etc. between your home and your place of work <b>commuting</b> <i>n</i>
apparently	according to what you have heard or read SYN evidently
presumably	used to say that you think sth is probably true
ultimately	finally; when everything has been considered
fair enough inf	used to say that an idea or suggestion seems reasonable
frankly	used to show that you are saying what you really think about sth SYN <b>to be (perfectly) honest</b>
entirely	in every way possible; completely: / entirely agree. It's entirely different.
basically	used when giving the most important fact SYN <b>essentially</b>
practically	almost SYN virtually
strangely (enough)	used to show that sth is surprising SYN oddly (enough), curiously (enough)



## Answer key

### Unit 1

### 1 1 accurate

- 2 synonym
- 3 sy<u>no</u>nymous
- 4 ambiguous
- 2 1 D
  - 2 S (Pupils are usually at primary school.)
  - 3 D 4 S
  - 5 5
  - 6 D
  - 7 S
  - 8

з

- D
- 5 interpretation
- 1 ambiguity 2 precision 3
- synonymous 4 accuracy
- 6 self-explanatory

5 ambiguity 6 interpret

7

interpretation

8 self-explanatory

- 4 1 Huge means 'very big/large'.
  - 2 Acquire is much more restricted because it has one main sense. Get has many different meanings.
  - Yes, it is self-explanatory: a waiting room is a room 3 where people wait, e.g. in a railway station or a doctor's surgery.
  - 4 The two words are not exactly synonymous because slim means 'thin in a positive way', whereas thin is often used to suggest that someone needs to put on more weight, so it is not used positively.
  - It's not entirely accurate because a pupil could be at a 5 secondary school or a primary school, and it's actually more common to use the word about children at primary school.
  - 6 Pick up has different senses, so the sentence could mean: 1) I physically picked up the bag from the ground, a chair, etc, or 2) I collected the bag from somewhere.
- 5 Negative words: insulting, disapproving, offensive, inappropriate, swearing

Some slang words may also have a negative meaning, but most slang is not negative.

Irony may also be used with a negative intention, but not usually.

6	1	literal	5	inappropriate
	2	Both are possible.	6	ironic
	3	Irony	7	an insult
	4	gold	8	offensive
7	1	disapproving	5	golden
	2	figuratively/	6	metaphor
		metaphorically	7	swore

- 3 insulting/offensive
- 4 slang

### Unit 2

3

- You're not gonna believe this but I lost.
  - 2 How can I get out of doing this homework?
  - 3 I'm in two minds about going to Greece.
  - 4 University is the last thing on my mind. 5 It was sweet of him to take us.

  - 1 second thoughts
  - 2 on my mind get out of
  - 4 believe this
  - 5 sweet
- 7 struck 8 tied up 9 crawling

6 two minds

8 literally

10 thick

3	1	crawling		5	striking		
	2	thick		6	get out of		
	3	sweet		7	thought		
	4	tied up		8	mind		
4	1	How did you	get him				
	2						
	3	that will make	e it				
	4	fishing that b	rings m	ost people			
	5	I'll see what t					
	6	it won't keep					
	7	to put them i					
	8	that will do fo					
5	1	brings	5	see	9	see	
	2	get	6	do	10	get	

- 3 come 7 make 11 push 4 leave 8 leave
- Unit 3
  - 1 problematic likelihood requirement benefit beneficial worthwhile recognition comparable apologize irreplaceable apologetic household humanity humanitarian possess
  - **2** 1 irreplaceable

4 comparable

- 2 inclusive 3 noticeable
- 6 worthwhile

mistook

comparable

uncertainty

6

7

8

5 humanitarian

- apologetic 7
- 8 housing
- He was a worthy winner. 3 1
  - 2 What is the likelihood (that) we'll win? (also possible: How likely is it (that) ...?)
  - 3 Most households earn more than in the past.
  - 4 Is it noticeable that he's lost a lot of weight?
  - 5 It's an interesting vase but it's worthless.
  - 6 There is no recognition of the importance of the measures.
  - 7 It was a very worthwhile conference.
  - The tablets were beneficial. 8
  - 1 housing
    - 5 problematic
  - 2 guidelines 6 humanity apologetic 7 replacement
  - 3 4 inclusive handling 8 5 possesses
- 5 1 guidance

- 2 humanitarian
- 3 certainty
- 4 inclusion
- 6 possible answers, from somebody in the UK:
  - In England they do, and should make it clear if they 1 don't.
  - 2 Yes, we haven't built enough new homes for many years, and there is now a shortage in some parts of the country.
  - 3 They are fairly comparable with prices in other European countries, though some countries are cheaper, e.g. Portugal, and some are more expensive, e.g. Norway.
  - Yes, you normally have to achieve certain grades in your A level examinations. The grades will often depend on the university you want to go to, and the subject you want to study.
  - Though there have been some improvements over the 5 last forty years, unfortunately, racism is still a problem.
  - I don't really have any degree of certainty about my future career, but I'm optimistic.

- 7 virtually

### Unit 4

		Ver	2				-	Mar
1	2	Yes	3	No Yes	5	No	7	Yes
	2	res	4	res	0	NO	8	No
2	1	treats th	em with	n respect				
	2	keep it a	secret					
	3	spreading		nour				
	4	3						
	5							
		set a go		nple; mak	te an eff	ort		
	7				100 C			
		passes t			blame			
	9	take res	ponsibil	ity				
3	at	ke: contro sth ake: an in t: a limit;	npressio	n, a profi	it, an off			ook
4	1	c	3	f	5	b	7	d
	2	-	4	e		g	8	a
5								
2	1	perfect strong a		5	4 5		escription	0
	2	principa		-	6		pposite R nonse	010
	2	principa	Concer		0	chaos	in nonse	lise
6	1	utter no	nsense					
	2	complet		site				
	3	narrow						
	4	main co						
	5							
	6			escription	n			
	7							
	8							
	9							
	10	utter ch	aos					
Uni	t 5							

1	1	cut	5	expectancy
	2	polish/varnish	6	pin
	3	self-	7	clips
	4	barbed	8	spare
2	1	tongue	5	cuts
	2	licence	6	model
	3	certificate	7	nail
	4	loyalty	8	junk

3 possible answers, for a British person:

My mother tongue is English. I also speak reasonable 1 Spanish and some French.

- 2 Yes, just over ten years.
- 3 I think it's in one of the drawers of my bedside table.

4 Yes, I have a loyalty card for one department store and also one for a café I use a lot.

- 5 Yes, I often take a shortcut when I'm walking into town, and another one when I'm driving towards the motorway about ten miles from where I live.
- 6 I think my older brother has been the most influential role model in my life so far.
- 7 No, I don't.

4

8 I try not to eat junk food. I don't buy it to eat at home, but I sometimes eat junk food when I'm out and I'm hungry, such as fish and chips or a hamburger.

greetings card (= a card with a picture on the front and a message inside that you send to sb on a particular occasion such as a birthday); identity card; credit card; railcard; postcard; debit card; SIM card (= a plastic card inside a mobile phone that stores information to identify the phone and person using it); gift card (= a card that is worth a particular amount of money that can be exchanged for goods and services, usually given to sb as a gift)

bus pass

boarding pass/card

- 5 1 no use
  - 2 at the last possible
    - moment

3 determined

6 long-standing, worn out, well behaved, narrow-minded, self-righteous, bad-tempered

4 last a long time 5 exhausted

6 forgetful

- 7 1 self-righteous
  - 2 last-minute
  - 3 long-standing
  - single-minded 4 bad-tempered 5
  - 6 broad-minded/open-minded
- well known; well behaved; well dressed (= wearing 8 attractive clothes); well informed (= knowing a lot about a particular subject) self-confident; self-conscious (= worrying about what

others think of you); self-service (of restaurants); self-employed

### Unit 6

- 1 1 counting (3)
  - 2 reflect (4)
  - 3 absorbed (1)
  - 4 counted (2)
  - 5 absorb (4)
  - 6 counts (1)
  - 7 reflected (1)

2 1 do

2 count

4 favour

3 take

- - 6 circumstances 7 favour

5 comment

4 reflected

6 counts

- 8 owes
- 3 1 We could see our faces reflected in the water. 2 She proposed that we leave the children behind. OR She proposed leaving the children behind.
  - 3 You can take dogs into shops in certain circumstances.
  - There were ten people there, not counting the two of us. 4
  - 5 I'll need to reflect on what he said.
  - He proposed that we take the car. OR He proposed taking the car.

4 1 count

- 2 in favour of 5 comment
- circumstances 3
- 5 1 You inform sb of sth or about sth: e.g. Please inform us of any changes of address. The boss has informed us about the new guidelines.
  - 2 Observe is formal in four of the five senses: e.g. Have you observed any changes lately?
  - 3 Finding is usually plural: e.g. Our research findings
  - indicate that pregnant women benefit from this treatment. 4 Immune is followed by the preposition to: e.g. Adults are immune to German measles.

#### 6 possible answers:

face: bury your face in your hands, red in the face, sb's face fits / doesn't fit, sb's face is like thunder, face to face (with sb/sth), face up/down, etc.

head: nod your head, shake you head, hang your head in shame, turn your head, head injuries, per head, etc.

take: sb can take it or leave it, have (got) what it takes, take sb aback, take after sb, take against sb/sth, take sb/sth apart, etc.

### Unit 7

 You would probably be happy to be described as: glamorous (especially if you are a woman), gorgeous, slim, stunning.

You would probably be unhappy to be described as: bald (especially if you are a woman or young man), full of wrinkles, hideous, overweight.

You might be unsure if you were described as: chubby, cute or skinny.

- 2 Cheeks are often described as chubby. Gorgeous and stunning are synonyms. Overweight is similar to fat. Wrinkles affect your skin. Babies are often cute. People wear make-up.
- 3 1 tattoo 6 cute hideous OR gorgeous 2 getting on for; figure 7 cheeks 8 glamorous 3 slim/slender stunning/gorgeous 9 4 wrinkles 10 wear 5
- 4 conceal, create, enhance, exaggerate, exaggeration, guidelines, horizontal, illusion, vertical

5	1	true	5	more
	2	help you	6	wide
	3	positive	7	better
	4	vertical	8	can't
6	1	features	6	exaggeration
	2	hips	7	conceal
	3	stripes; heels	8	unflattering
	4	key	9	broad; waist
	5	draw	10	guidelines

### Unit 8

1	1	в	3	G	5	в	7	G
	2	В	4	G	6	G	8	В
2	1	jumping			6	necessarily		
	2 look		7	gestures				
	3	observe		8	combination			
	4	fingernails	s		9	sweat		
	5 interpret			10	) constantly			

**3** possible answers:

1 I think British people use gestures less than some nationalities, but I make some gestures a lot: put my head to one side when I'm thinking; avoid eye contact if I'm not telling the truth; move about a lot if I'm bored or restless, etc.

2 Generally, yes.

3 No, I'm not and I hardly ever notice what people are wearing.

- 4 No, I don't bite my fingernails. I think I scratch my head when I'm nervous.
- 5 I don't blush easily, but I do go red if I think I've said something embarrassing.
- 6 Yes, I do that quite a lot. It's interesting to wonder what kind of lives other people have.

5

6

7

towards

arms

signal

8 someone

5 fist; anger

generalizations

6 signal

8 display

- These words are correct:
- 1 with
- 2 make
- 3 fist
- 4 legs
- 5 1 flirting
  - 2 leant/leaned; fancied/ fancies
  - 3 defensive
  - 4 fold; cross

### 6 possible answers:

- 1 I often fold my arms, sometimes when I'm being defensive and sometimes when I'm bored. I think I cross my legs mostly out of habit. I'm not sure what it means.
- 2 Yes, that's definitely true. But I also lean back sometimes when I'm thinking about something they've said.
- 3 Yes, I think I do flirt quite a lot with members of the opposite sex. It's fun and is sometimes quite exciting.
- 4 I think I hold eye contact longer than is normal, stroke my lips with my thumb and forefinger, and move closer to them.

#### Unit 9

D	9	5	7	s	5	D	3	D	1	1
5 0	10	S	8	D	6	D	4	S	2	
						ged	d; beg	begge	1	2
								swept;	2	
								tore; to	3	
						n	shake	shook;	4	
						Ided	d; nod	nodde	5	
				elt	led/kr	It; knee	d/kne	kneele	6	
						d	; sewe	sewed	7	
							It	put; pu	8	
				t	d/lean	; leaned			9	
					illed	spilt/sp	oilled;	spilt/sp	10	
			in	5				in	1	3
		i.	down	6			t	agains	2	
			on	7				in/into	3	
			for	8				on	4	
		et	blank	6				door	1	4
			water	7				towel	2	
		5	drinks	8				body	3	
		ders	should	9			c	lipstick	4	
		t	carpet	10			r	toaster	5	
		ed/knelt	kneele	6			ng	beggin	1	5
			tore	7			-	pray	2	
			fold	8				shook	3	
			drag	9			ng	crawlin	4	
		ing	noddi	10				plug; s	5	
		s ders t ed/knelt	drinks should carped kneele tore fold drag	8 9 10 6 7 8 9			ng	body lipstick toaster beggin pray shook crawlin	345 1234	5

- 6 possible answers:
  - I have spilt things but not often.
  - 2 Never. I just run my hands through my hair and that's it.
  - 3 No, I don't. I prefer a natural look.4 I can sew buttons on quite well, but that is the limit of
  - my sewing talents!
  - 5 No, I don't I'm not religious.
  - 6 I'm not bad at diving, but I haven't actually tried for a long time.
  - 7 Yes, it does.
  - 8 There are quite a lot, especially in big cities.
  - 9 Yes, kettles are the most common way of boiling water for hot drinks.

### Unit 10

- 1 1 soldiers
  - 2 thieves
  - 3 the police
  - 4 possible answers: a bull, an elephant, a rhinoceros, etc.
- 5 Usually because they are in a hurry and need to be
  - somewhere quickly. 6 Because they don't see something in their way, or
- perhaps they aren't looking. 7 Usually because they have nothing particular they want
- to do.
- 8 in the countryside, in the mountains, etc.

2	1	hiking	5	ran	Unit 1
		charged/marched		chase	
	3	rush	7		11
	4	Correct.	8	Correct.	23
3	1	rushed	4	ran off	
	2	stumbled/	5	chasing	2 ba
		tripped over	6	flat out	ou
	3	stroll	7	wandered	3 1
4	G	roup 1: stiff, agility, motivat	ted, der	manding	2
		roup 2: agile, devise, widen	, vital		3
	G	roup 3: crucial, essential			4 5
5	1	stiff	5	Both are possible.	5
	2	bend	6	stretch	4 nc
	3	Both are possible.	7	workout	ar
	4	down	8	agile	al
6	1	constant	6	strengthen	cra
	2	think up / devise	7	works out	5 1
	3	bend	8	motivation	6 1
	4	press-ups; motivated	9	demanding	2
	5	bent	10	agility	3
					4
Uni	+ 1	1			7 1
	• •				2
1		e four that are different are	e: visjor	n, optician, strain and	3
	ey	esight.			4
2	1	Both are possible.	5	ease	
	2	adjust	6	tear	Unit 1
	3	eliminate	7	Both are possible.	Unit
	4	concentrate	8	optician's	1 1
3	1	eye strain.			2
	2	to ease the pain.			2 1
	3	a small adjustment.		he he fabric farmer	2
	4	you can't completely elim	ninate. (	or you can't eliminate	3
	5	completely.			4
		The optician said can irritate your eyes.			5
	7	a bit blurred if			67
	8	tears in her eyes			8
	9	a lot of people blink.			
	10	powers of concentration.			3 1
4	po	ssible answer:			23
		I once had a problem with	n tear p	roduction.	4
		My eyes became very dry	, and th	at caused irritation.	
		vent to the optician's and s			4 ge
		y eye. It solved the problem	n within	and I haven't	us A r
	na	d it since.			-
5	1	spectacular	4	still; invisible	5 1
	2	suspiciously	5	glimpse	2 3
	3	barely	6	glanced	
	1	invisible, misty	5	stand, keep	6 1
6		visible, spectacular	6	glanced at	2 3
6	2	suspicious	7	only just, barely	4
6	3				5
6		caught a glimpse of,			5
	3 4	caught a glimpse of, spotted			
6	3 4 1	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi		ab a barting	6
	3 4 1 2	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the	boat or		67
	3 4 1 2 3	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at	boat on me; I d	on't know why.	6 7 8
	3 4 1 2 3 4	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at Those stars are invisible w	boat on me; I d vithout	on't know why. a telescope.	67
	3 4 1 2 3	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at	boat on me; I d vithout trees th	on't know why. a telescope. prough the mist.	6 7 8
	3 4 1 2 3 4 5	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at Those stars are invisible w We could only just see the After a while I spotted Lee The thief ran out of the bu	boat on me; I d vithout trees th o in the	on't know why. a telescope. arough the mist. crowd.	6 7 8
	3 4 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at Those stars are invisible w We could only just see the After a while I spotted Lee The thief ran out of the bu thin air.	boat on me; I d vithout trees th o in the uilding	on't know why. a telescope. prough the mist. crowd. and vanished into	6 7 8
	3 4 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at Those stars are invisible w We could only just see the After a while I spotted Lee The thief ran out of the but thin air. I caught a glimpse of Bland	boat on me; I d vithout trees th o in the uilding	on't know why. a telescope. prough the mist. crowd. and vanished into	6 7 8
7	3 4 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	caught a glimpse of, spotted He sat still while I drew hi I could just make out the They were both gazing at Those stars are invisible w We could only just see the After a while I spotted Lee The thief ran out of the bu thin air.	boat on me; I d vithout trees th o in the uilding ca as sh	on't know why. a telescope. brough the mist. crowd. and vanished into e left the shop.	6 7 8

Jni	τι	2	

Uni	t 1	2												
1	1 2 3	noise laughing in tears							4 5 6		pering			
2	ba	ackground at laughing		ise,	in tea	ars,	ca	tcl				sper	bu	rs
3		sneeze blind deaf							7	snor sight over	heard	ooed	1	
4	ai	o noise: sile noise: crac loud noise ack)	k, s	igh								poss	ible	
5	1	c	2	e			3	a		4	b		5	0
6		silence yelling nightmar footsteps							5 6 7 8	crash crack		ne de	noc	
7	1 2 3 4	yelling	1						5 6 7		tmare f			
Uni	t 1	3												
1	1 2	No Yes		34	No No					Yes Yes		7 8	No	
2	6	No Yes No Yes No Yes No (if it's	ag	lass	bott	le) /	/Y	es	(if it	's a pla	astic bo	ottle	)	
3	1	squeezed	-						5	slapp				
	234	gave; tap							6 7 8	rubb	ed hed			
4	us	entle: strok wally vigo massage ca	e, s	IS: a	pply	pre					e			
5	1 2 3								4 5	jaw eyeb	rows			
6	12345 6789	stroking pressure scalp; vig energetic applied fingertips tension	oroally	usl	y/				10 11 12		ly (also ly)	pos	sible	

### U

Ini	t 1	4						
1	1 2	D S	34	S D		s s		D S
2	23	allergic; rash commonly cancer; pote allergy fever; minor	ntia	ally	6 7 8	potentia attack fatal inability		
3	br	Hay fever is Diabetes is to ood. Asthma cau Breast cance east. An allergy so ody.	ses er is	inability breathir an illne	to contro ng difficu ss in whic	lties. ch a lump	grows i	n the
4	7	F – You can o T F – A disordo used about F – It contine T	er is ma ues	an illne chines.	one, you a	ask them		is not
5	1 2 3	dose term date			4 5 6	effects	d	
6	-	leaflet disorder enclosed			5	dose/do persist date	osage	
7		dissolves persistent; c discard	ons	sult	5	short-te exceed consult		

### Unit 15

1	1	Yes	3	Yes	5	No	7	Yes
	2	No	4	No	6	Yes	8	No

2 possible answers:

A fractured skull is very serious, and the person could 1 die.

2 A dislocated elbow requires hospital treatment.

A twisted ankle is painful, and it may be difficult to walk 3 on it for a couple of days.

- A black eye is not serious but looks bad and may last for a few days or even a week.
- A bruise on the arm may be quite painful and last a few 5 days.
- A blister can be painful, but you can put a special plaster 6 on it so it doesn't hurt.

8 wrist, ankle

3	1	hundreds/masses	5	bruises
	2	unconscious	6	blisters

- 4 dislocated
- 4 possible answers:

3 e

- 1 I've had a black eye once or twice, bruised myself hundreds of times, twisted/sprained my ankle once or twice, and been stung by a wasp a few times. That's it! I've never fractured or dislocated anything, and luckily I've never been unconscious from an illness or injury.
- 2 You would have to go to hospital for a fractured skull and a dislocated shoulder. You might go and see a doctor for one or two of the other injuries.

5	1 2	D S	3	D S	5 6	DD		7 8	S D	9 10	S D	
6	1	aid					6	place				
	2	swollen					7	bacteria; virus				
	3	bleeds					8	8 wounded				
	4	heal					9	bleed	ing			
	5	thorough	y	10 wrap; swelling								

- 7 1 To give simple medical treatment to somebody, often before a doctor comes or before the person can be taken to a hospital.
  - 2 Bathe it thoroughly.
  - 3 A plaster
  - 4 To prevent infection
  - 5 It holds a dressing in place, and provides protection / helps keep the wound clean.
  - 6 A few days to a week.
  - 7 To reduce the swelling in a part of your body.
  - 8 It can travel easily from person to person.

### Unit 16

1	1	D	3	S	5	S	7	D
	2	D	4	S	6	S	8	D
2	1	passionate	abo	ut				
	2	not very d	ecisiv	/e				
	3	assert him						
	4	great enth	usias	m				
	5	has a lively						
	6	dynamic						
	7	a passion f	or					
	8	truly passi		e				
3	1	passionate			6	talkative		
	2	introvert			7	decisive		
	3	dynamic			8	lively		
	4	assertive			9	extrovert		
	5	enthusiast	ic					

4 possible answers:

> My brother is an extrovert, which is quite strange because his twin brother is an introvert. They get on quite well, though.

> My mum is very talkative, and dynamic too. She never sits still.

My friend Caren is truly passionate about horses - she spends all her free time riding and looking after her horse, Romeo.

My cousin Philip is very assertive.

My brother-in-law Jack is very enthusiastic about cars: old cars, new cars - any cars!

5	1	P 3	Ρ		5	Ρ		7	Ρ	9	N
	2	P 4	N		6	N		8	N	10	Ρ
6	1	showing of	f				5	Dece	nt		
	2	affectionate					6	ethic			
	3	sensible					7	saint			
	4	sincere									
7	1	considerate					5	Dece	nt		
	2	affection					6	incon	sidera	te	
	3	show					7	genu	ine/sin	cere	
	4	boast					8	integ	rity		
8	po	ssible answe	rs, fr	om Arg	enti	ina:					

In my country, you are expected to give your seat to the elderly, pregnant women and people with special needs. The front seats on buses and trains are designated for that purpose, and drivers and conductors can enforce the rule if necessary. I think everybody would agree that it's considerate to give your seat to someone who needs it, but the regulation exists so that even those who are unwilling to give up their seat must do it.

- 2 In general terms, showing affection for your partner in public is acceptable in our society, although of course some people are more reserved than others and prefer not to show their feelings so openly.
- 3 Many people would agree that if you need to show off, you are seeking attention because you lack confidence.
- 4 Nowadays, travelling to far-off places is much more common than in the past, particularly for the young. People share those experiences – mostly on social media – but it's not considered boastful. In fact, most people are eager to hear about expensive holidays!
- 5 I think we used to be kinder and more friendly towards strangers and foreigners in the past. Nowadays, because of the rise in crime rates, most people are wary of strangers.
- 6 I'm afraid that in my country we are notorious for not being punctual! Therefore, we are used to being kept waiting.
- 7 Not all shop assistants are genuinely friendly, but some customers can be really rude and tiresome.
- 8 Most politicians are perceived as lacking integrity, so they are not trusted.

### Unit 17

NOUN	ADJECTIVE
arrogance	arrogant
confidence	confident
efficiency	efficient
charm	charming
motivation	motivated
potential	potential
knowledge	knowledgeable
idiot	idiotic

2	1	S	3	S	5	S	7	D
	2	S	4	D	6	D	8	S
3	1	well inform	ned		5	struggle		

	in an in or in a d		Judggie
2	straightforward ·	6	ridiculous
3	immature	7	timid
4	efficient	8	capable

- 4 1 What did you make of Aaron?
  - 2 Josie struggled to explain what she meant.
  - 3 Lawrence was lacking in charm.
  - 4 I didn't take to Rollo at first.
  - 5 Parminder came over/across very well in the interview.
  - 6 Rupert struck me as capable.
  - 7 I think that Ariana has potential.
  - 8 Vicky didn't seem (to be) very motivated.

#### **5** possible answers:

- I'm well informed about politics and economics.
   I think that people who are conscientious are very important, and we need people like that in our schools,
- health service and industry. If people are charming towards me, I'm usually
- charming back to them. 4 I feel confident when I am in control and know
- 4 I feel confident when I am in control and know what I want to say.
- 5 It's sometimes a struggle for me to remember people's names when I first meet them, so I can seem rude when I meet them again.
- 6 If I meet someone who is arrogant, I spend as little time with them as possible.
- 7 If someone doesn't take me seriously, I don't worry too much. It's their problem, not mine.
- 8 I don't take to people who are arrogant and immature.
- 9 In an interview situation, I think I probably come across as quite well informed, but perhaps a bit shy and lacking in confidence.

10 If someone says something ridiculous in an interview, I think it could be because they're nervous or don't know what they're talking about.

### Unit 18

1	1	P	4	P	7	N	10	N	
	-		7		1		10		
	2	N	5	N	8	P	11	Ρ	
	3	N	6	P	9	P/N	12	Ν	
2	1	astounded			5	ecstatic			
	2	over the m	oon		6	in tears			
	3	heartbroke	n		7	delighted	t		
	4	disgusted			8	desperat			
3	1	astounded	/asto	nished	6	delighted	d/ecsta	tic/	
	2	shocked				thrilled			
	3	desperate			7	tears			
	4	devastated			8	disgusted	t		
	5	ashamed							
4		veal; vulnera vere; disclos				nse; anxiou	IS;		

- severe; disclose; psychological; intense; anxious; psychology; psychologist; suppress
- 5 1 psychology 5 severe 2 reveal handling б 3 vulnerable 7 intense 4 worsened anxiety 8 6 1 handle 6 depression 2 vulnerable anxious 7 3 psychologists 8 bottle up suppress 9 reveal 5 intense 10 psychology
- 7 possible answers:
  - The best ones handle stress well. Some athletes try to handle stress by taking drugs, and that's a terrible idea.
  - 2 I don't think they should show that they're vulnerable, but I do think they should apologize for mistakes and be prepared to change their ideas where necessary.
  - 3 I think psychologists have been looking at the effects of social media on how we feel about ourselves and communicate with each other, as well as the effects of internet porn (pornography) on young people.
  - 4 I think at work, it's sensible to suppress your emotions sometimes. You can't say how you feel all the time.
  - 5 They need to reach out and try to meet people join a club or talk to their neighbours, for instance. It's not easy to solve, though.
  - 6 I think doctors often suffer from depression, as well as people on low wages whose lives are difficult.
  - 7 Breathe deeply; sit quietly and relax; do yoga or go for a run.
  - 8 Yes, I think it does: your heart and blood pressure can suffer.
  - 9 Yes, to friends or family.
  - 10 No, I haven't ever studied psychology.

### Unit 19

1	N	3	N	5	N	7	Ρ	9	P
2	P	4	P	6	N	8	N	10	N
12	regret dislike								
	1	2 P 1 regret	2 P 4 1 regret	2 P 4 P 1 regret	2 P 4 P 6 1 regret	2 P 4 P 6 N 1 regret	2 P 4 P 6 N 8 1 regret	2 P 4 P 6 N 8 N 1 regret	2 P 4 P 6 N 8 N 10 1 regret

- 3 blame
- 4 strain
- 5 respect
- 6 stare
- 7 forgave
- 8 stuck

I've been having a tough time at work recently. A young 3 man joined the department and for some reason took an instant dislike to me. His desk was close to mine, and he just sat and stared at me without saying a word, which made me feel uncomfortable. Over time, he started to shout at me and became more and more aggressive until I felt quite nervous being near him. It put a big strain on me, and my work began to suffer. One day, I decided it was time to stick up for myself, so I told him his behaviour was terrible. I was shocked when he suddenly started crying and of course, I regretted what I had said to him. He thought that I blamed him for the poor results in the department, when in fact, that wasn't the case. Eventually, things settled down, and we got on much better.

4	1	S	3	D		5 S
	2	S	4	D		6 S
5	1	reluctance			5	fault
	2	initial			6	strict
	3	sensitive			7	looking up
	4	caring				
6	1	fault			6	patience
	2	reluctant			7	accepted
	3	is strict			8	looking up
	4	Initially			9	nasty/mean
	5	accepts			10	bond

### Unit 20

1	1	D	3	D	5	S	7	D	
	2	D	4	S	6	D	8	s	
2 1	courageous			5	dignity				
	2	heroine			6	heroic			
	3 bravery				7	7 inspirational			

3	bravery	7	inspiratio
4	inspires/inspired	8	spiritual

3 1 inspiration/heroine; courageous look/looked; captain; inspired; hero

3 heroine; courage; dignity

possible answers:

- When I was growing up, my hero was Ronaldo because I'm a great Manchester United fan, and he played for them when I was in my teens.
- 2 I now look up to my boss at the charity where I work. She has always been very calm and dignified, even when difficult decisions have had to be made.
- My mother was very courageous, especially at the end 3 of her life when she died from cancer at the relatively young age of 50.
- 5 rebel, detest, despise, lose (your temper), disapprove, loathe, bully

1	disapproval	6	greedy
	loathe	7	can't bear
3	despicable	8	of

- rebellious misery
- 9 fame 10 principles
- against б

7

8

9

disapprove

10 despise; villain

values

greedy

- temper
- can't bear

principle

bully

- rebel; rebellious 5
- possible answers:
- 1 I think both are possible, but I certainly saw my brother bully my sister when we were young. They're great friends now, though.
- I won't eat rabbit or small birds. 2
- No, not very often. 3
- I can't bear drivers who drive too close behind me. 4
- Yes, I was. As a man, I had long hair, wore strange 5 clothes, and often went on political demonstrations.
- 6 No, it isn't, but I've never done it.

- 7 Yes. I disapprove of my sister's boyfriend. He drinks too much and doesn't treat her well. I hope she leaves him soon.
- Yes, they often do. My parents have a different way of 8 living: more serious, more religious than I am, but we agree on basic values such as honesty, integrity and loyalty.
- Yes, some of them are, but there are also some like Bill 9 and Melinda Gates who are very generous and have spent many millions trying to eradicate malaria.
- I won't name names, but there are one or two 10 politicians, in this country and abroad, that I despise because I think they are responsible for causing a great deal of harm to society.

### Unit 21

2

3

5

б

1 peer pressure, nature or nurture? play a part, a broken home, a deprived childhood, a beneficial effect

2	1	P	3	N	5	P	7	Ν	
	2	Ρ	4	N	6	Ρ	8	N	
3	1	home			5	impact			
	2	deprived			6	model			
	3	pressure			7	crucial			
	4	nature			8	incentive			

possible answers:

I'm sure parents play a very important role, but sometimes teenagers are very influenced by their friends, which can be a good or bad thing. I know my aunt and uncle played a crucial role in my childhood.

Peer pressure is very significant, I agree, particularly with social networking. It can be dangerous, too.

In general, I think positive incentives, such as praise or the possibility of more freedom, are better for young people.

I know two or three people who either came from a broken home or had a deprived childhood. One has done brilliantly in life, and one has had a few problems, but is doing his best to deal with them. So I agree, these factors don't necessarily have a damaging effect.

1	sympathetic	5	pace
2	teenager	6	consistent
3	through	7	adulthood
4	adolescence	8	grown-up
1	wise	7	wisdom
2	cope	8	time; pace
3	phase	9	adult
4	supportive	10	sympathy
5	transition	11	conduct
6	consistent		

- 7 Yes, that's always true. 1
  - No, I think the best way to cope with problems is to 2 think about solutions in a positive way.
  - I don't think so. I think middle age is a difficult phase. 3 Yes, that's crucial.
  - No, it's very difficult. Adolescents have so much to learn 5 and so many pressures.
  - I think that's true.
  - 7 On the whole, I agree.
  - 8 I'm not sure about this. Sometimes you have to take time to think, but occasionally it's not possible. Making mistakes isn't bad if you learn from them.
  - 9 Yes, I agree. 10 lagree. Life can be difficult for them, but in the end, things get better.
  - 11 I think that's true, but it doesn't mean we should always accept bad conduct from teenagers. They must also take some responsibility for their actions.

6

7 1

4

5

2

### Unit 22

1	w pe	tendency (3) widower (3) personally (3, or 4 if you pronounce the 'a'			ike (2)	ance (3) ristic (5)	criticism (4) apparent (3)		
2	1	D	3	D		5	s		
	2	S	4	S			S		
3	1	in her teens			6	case			
	2 (very) alike				7	passed away / passed			
	3	3 resembles / takes after				on			
	4	siblings			8	character	istics		
	5								
4	1	widow			6	criticized			
	2	personally			7	takes			
	3	resemblance; a	like		8	presence			
	4	However			9	picked			
	5	apparent/obvio		10	tendency				
5	1	1 remind you of				hard to say			
	2					stepfather			
	3	in her father's f	ps	7	personall	У			
	4	brought up / ra	ised		8	late			
6	n	ssible answers							

- possible answers:
  - 1 I think I resemble my father more than my mother.
- 2 No, not really. I can see characteristics in both my
- mother and father which | share. 3 I have a sister, and we are alike in that we both have brown hair, brown eyes and fair skin. Our characters are completely different, though.
- All the members of my family are very punctual and get 4 very impatient if anyone else is late.
- 5 I think there is perhaps some truth in the idea that daughters become more like their mothers and sons become more like their fathers. However, living in different times also makes us different from our parents in terms of our attitudes to things.
- 6 If we're honest, I don't think anyone likes being criticized, but I it's something people learn to accept a bit more as they get older. That has been my case, I think.

### Unit 23

1	1	unsophisticated	4	discourteous
	2	inoffensive	5	unacceptable
	3	downwards	6	bad manners
2	1	sophistication	4	unacceptable
	2	offend	5	courteous
	3	customary	6	inoffensive
3	1	customary	6	rude
	2	manners	7	sophisticated

- 3 considered 8 split
- viewed 4
- 5 discourteous
- 4 possible answers, from India:
  - Yes, it is quite customary to eat chicken legs or wings with your fingers at home in India. However, when eating outside, at a restaurant or somebody else's home, we use cutlery.

9 lick; stick

- Yes, Indian parents think it's important for children to 2 have good table manners.
- 3 No, in India it is not considered bad manners to eat everything you are given. Usually, we are encouraged to take as much food as we can eat. Wasting food is considered bad manners.
- 4 Yes, it is viewed as polite to offer food to the elderly first.
- Yes, it is discourteous to start eating your food before 5 others have been served.

- 6 Yes, as a guest, it would be offensive to criticize the host's food.
- 7 Talking with your mouth full might not be considered very sophisticated in India.
- It is customary among young people, especially among 8 friends, to split the bill in restaurants in India.
- Yes, it is viewed as rude to lick your knife, fork or spoon 9 when you have finished eating, or stick your own knife, fork or spoon into dishes of food for the whole table.

1	н	3	U	5	н	7	н		
2	U	4	U	6	U	8	н		
1	outstand		n his	5					
2	best beh		ath la		outstanding offensive/upsetting				
2	All three		ssible.	6					
3	poor/goo	bd		7	All three	e are pos	ssible.		
4	exception to / offence at			8	impressed me / was exceptional				
1	impress			6	deeply				
2	good/ex	ception	al	7	remark/comment				
3	behaviou	ur		8	exception				
4	foot			9	judgement				
5	offence			10	humoro	ous			

### Unit 24

5

6

7

	1	D	3	5	5	5	1	5	
	2	D	4	S	6	D	8	S	
2	1	mango			7	watermelon			
	2	aubergine			8	courgette			
	3	beetroot			9	grapefruit			
	4	avocado			10	spinach			
	5	raspberry			11				
	6	asparagus			12	broccoli			
3	1	vegetable			4	dried			
	2	herb			5	spice			
	3	nut			6	pulse			

1 avocado, mango, apricot

- 2 All the vegetables can be eaten cooked. Celery and spinach are also eaten raw in the UK in salads. Courgette and broccoli can be eaten raw, but that is rare in the UK. 3 To add flavour.
- 4 They are both considered to be healthy.
- 5 possible answers, from Argentina:
- 1 All of these are usually grown in my country, Argentina:

	All of these are usually grown	rinning country, Arge
	mangoes	grapefruit
	aubergines	spinach
	beetroot	apricots
	avocados	broccoli
	raspberries	lentils
	asparagus	basil
	watermelons	nuts
	courgettes	almonds
2	I have tried everything!	

- 3 fruit: tangerines, oranges, apples, quinces, grapes, pears
  - vegetables: Brussels sprouts, carrots, onions, cauliflower, cabbages, leeks nuts: hazelnuts herbs: bay leaves dried fruit: dried figs
- spice: saffron
- 6 frying pan; lemon squeezer; kitchen scales; food processor; carving knife; deep-fat fryer
- 1 colander 7

corkscrew

3

- 2 casserole
- 6 (kitchen) scales 7 carving knife

5 whisk

- 8 frying pan
- food processor (OR a 4 sharp knife)
- Answer key 211

- 8 1 lemon/orange/lime
  - 2 cheese
  - 3 potatoes (for chips / French fries), fish, other vegetables
  - 4 flour, sugar, sometimes rice or large pieces of meat
  - 5 bread, ham, other meat, some vegetables
  - 6 meat
  - 7 meat
  - 8 some vegetables and some fruit, e.g. carrots, potatoes, apples, pears
- 9 possible answers, from Argentina:

I have a casserole, a food processor, a whisk, a colander, a grater, a peeler, a lemon squeezer, a corkscrew, kitchen scales and a carving knife.

I don't have a frying pan or a deep-fat fryer, but they wouldn't be useful because I don't like fried food!!

### Unit 25

1	lean, tender		5	salty		
2	sweet, rich		6	rare, well o	done, tough	ſ
3	tasteless, bland		7	greasy		
4	fresh, stale		8	tasteless,	sweet, ripe	
1	stale		4	bitter		
2	ripe		5	fattening	/rich	
3	tough		6			
1	appetite	4	lean	7	bland	
2	spicy	5	raw	8	greasy	
3	salty	6	rare	9	rich	
1	opener	3	up	5	less	
2	service	4	yourself	6	lunch	
1	treating		5	care		
2	Instant		6	takeaway		
3	mug		7	popped		
4	tray		8		e	
1	instant	4	packed	7	takeaway	
2	mug	5	canteen	8	treat	
3	cereal	6	heat up	9	lap	
	234 123 123 12 1234 12	<ul> <li>2 sweet, rich</li> <li>3 tasteless, bland</li> <li>4 fresh, stale</li> <li>1 stale</li> <li>2 ripe</li> <li>3 tough</li> <li>1 appetite</li> <li>2 spicy</li> <li>3 salty</li> <li>1 opener</li> <li>2 service</li> <li>1 treating</li> <li>2 Instant</li> <li>3 mug</li> <li>4 tray</li> <li>1 instant</li> <li>2 mug</li> </ul>	2sweet, rich3tasteless, bland4fresh, stale1stale2ripe3tough1appetite42spicy53salty61opener32service41treating2Instant3mug4tray1instant42mug5	2sweet, rich63tasteless, bland74fresh, stale81stale42ripe53tough61appetite42spicy53salty61opener32service41treating52Instant63mug74tray81instant42mug52nate43appetite44tray81instant42mug54packed5canteen	2sweet, rich6rare, well of3tasteless, bland7greasy4fresh, stale8tasteless, stateless, s	2sweet, rich6rare, well done, tough3tasteless, bland7greasy4fresh, stale8tasteless, sweet, ripe1stale4bitter2ripe5fattening /rich3tough6appetizing1appetite4lean72spicy5raw83salty6rare91opener3up52service4yourself61treating5care2Instant6takeaway3mug7popped4tray8self-service1instant4packed71instant4packed74mug5canteen85canteen8treat

- 7 possible answers:
  - Always real coffee.
  - 2 Usually a cup, but sometimes a mug.
  - 3 I hardly ever eat cereal. I usually have toast and coffee for breakfast.
  - 4 I sometimes take a packed lunch if I'm travelling.
  - 5 I work from home so I never eat in a canteen now but I used to.
  - 6 I usually eat fresh food, but I probably heat up prepared food once or twice a week.
  - 7 No, hardly ever.
  - 8 I go to one of two or three of my favourite restaurants in town.
  - 9 No, never. I always eat at the table, but I used to eat on my lap a lot when I was a teenager and a student at university.

### Unit 26

steering wheel pedestrian crossing windscreen wiper road sign number plate wing mirror parking meter traffic warden

- 2 1 tyre
  - 2 windscreen
  - 3 pavement

2 boot

- 4 kerb / pay and display machine
- 5 number plate
- 6 pedestrian/zebra crossing
- 3 1 steering wheel

4 headlights 5 wing mirror

- 3 windscreen wipers 6 road sign
- 4 possible answers, from China:
  - There are some zebra crossings in my city, Hong Kong. Motorists always stop for pedestrians.
  - 2 I don't drive, so I don't use pay and display machines. My friends who drive usually pay by a stored-value smart-card. Some people still pay with coins if the machine allows.
  - 3 There are very few traffic wardens in Hong Kong. If there is one to direct the traffic due to special conditions, drivers and pedestrians must follow their instructions.
  - 4 We do not fit special tyres on our car in the winter because it does not snow here.
  - 5 Automatic headlights and windscreen wipers are helpful, especially windscreen wipers as it rains quite often here.
  - 6 Some people park on the pavement here, though it is not allowed.
- 5 1 moving 4 suddenly
  - hand 5 direction
  - attention 6 lost
- 6 1 accelerate 5 overtake
  - reverse 6 lookout
    - 7 swerved
      - 8 pull away
- 7 1 overtake

hazard

potential

2 steer

2

3

2

3

4

- down; brake / put on the brakes / put the brakes on
   alert / on the alert
- 4 alert/ont
- 5 potential 6 gear
- 7 automatic
- 8 possible answers:
   1 Yes, I agree and I don't try to overtake on a bridge.
  - 2 No, you shouldn't, but sometimes I do.
  - 3 Yes, I agree and, where possible, I always do.
  - 4 Of course you should, but I think many motorists carry
    - on driving when they are tired.
  - 5 That's true.
  - 6 That sounds like good advice. Fortunately, I've never been in that situation. I have skidded, but only for a moment, and I've never lost control of the car.
  - 7 Personally lagree, but people who like driving often prefer manual cars.

### Unit 27

- The four that are different are: collide, collision, pile-up and via.
- 2 blocked (1), casualty (3), via (2), exit (2), scattered (2), chaos (2), ambulance (3), helicopter (4)
- 3 transport: lorry, ambulance, helicopter people: eyewitness, casualties roads: lane, exit, junction accidents: collide, pile-up, casualties, ambulance (also possible: eyewitness)

212

- 1
- F There were eyewitnesses.
- 2 3 т

т

- F The lorry spilled a load of wood (logs).
- 4 F - One person died at the scene of the accident. 5
- F A helicopter took the driver to hospital. 6
- F There were six or seven other casualties. 7
- F Two lanes of the motorway are now blocked. 8
- 9 т
- 10 F Police are advising motorists to exit via Junction 12.
- 5 1 If you pull out in a car, you drive away from the side of the road.
  - A junction is a place where two roads meet. 2
  - 3 Correct
  - 4 A lane is a section of the road that is marked by white lines to keep traffic separate.
  - Casualties are people who are killed or injured in 5 accident (or war).
  - Correct 6
  - 7 If you collide with sth, you do hit it.
  - 8 Correct
  - 9 Correct
  - If you block somebody, you do not let them pass. 10
- 1 service station
- 6 junction 7 extensive

8

9

10 exit

logs

pile-up; critical

- 2 lane 3 load
  - blocked; incident
- 4 via; chaotic/chaos 5
- Unit 28

1	1	bitterly cold	1		6	a dull day
	2			me.	7	scattered showers
	3	hot and hun			8	quite wet, to say the
	4	a chilly day				least
	5	They are the	sa	me.		
2	1	scattered			5	thick/dense
	2	spell			6	chilly
	3	bitterly			7	mild
	4	torrential			8	odd
3	1	downpour (	pos	sible	5	humidity
		but less likely	: sh	lower)	6	bitterly
	2	flashes			7	chilly
	3	least			8	dull
	4	rainbow			9	showers
4	1	D	3	s	5	D
	2	S	4	D	6	D
5	1	too much			5	strong winds
	2	light			6	large
	3	causes			7	future
	4	need			8	period
6	1	forecast			7	drought
	2	standstill			8	shortages
	3	disruption			9	gales
	4	closely			10	significant
	5	dependent			11	widespread
	6	heatwave				

- 7 possible answers, from Australia:
  - 1 The weather in Australia varies enormously depending on what part of the country you live in. In Sydney, where I live, winters are mostly mild. The summers are generally long and hot, and can be guite humid. Torrential rain and thunderstorms with lots of lightning are quite common.
  - The long summers and mild winters make it easy to 2 spend a lot of time outdoors, and I think make people more relaxed than in cold countries.
  - It's never bitterly cold in Sydney, and thick fogs are rare. 3 It can be cloudy and dull, but is more often sunny.

### Unit 29

- 1 probable answers:
- men 1
- 2 both
  - 3 women
- 4 both

both

7

8

- more women, but 5
- some men, too
- 6 both women
- 8 cap

2 1 waistcoat

plain

6 sandals

7 sleeved

9 straps

10 tight

5 check(ed)

2

3

4

loose-fitting

high-heeled

- 9 men
- 3 possible answers (for a man):
  - Nothing in silk, but I have a brown suede jacket and a pair of black suede shoes.
  - I do wear sandals if it is hot, but I don't like them very 2 much.
  - 3 the sleeves on my long-sleeved shirts.
  - used to when he was alive.
  - I've got a couple of check shirts and a couple of striped 5 shirts, but the majority are plain.
  - I don't wear V-neck jumpers much, but I've got a woollen sleeveless cardigan and a black and grey waistcoat.

4	1	S	3	S	5	S	7	D	
	2	D	4	D	6	D	8	S	
5	1	a wig			7	flip-flops			
	2	an apron			8	a badge			
	3	a fancy-dres	ss pa	arty	9	dress up			
	4	a bucket of	wate	er	10	a barbecue			
	5	kilts			11	glamorous			
	6	shiver			12	an outfit			

6 possible answers (for a woman):

- 1 I went to one hen party. I was the oldest person there and I felt a bit embarrassed because they all made a lot of noise and drank a bit too much.
- 2 I went to one fancy-dress party dressed as a soldier. People thought that was a bit strange because I'm more of a pacifist.
- 3 I don't get that many chances to dress up nowadays, so when I do, I really enjoy it.
- I tend to buy outfits for special occasions, like weddings or parties, but most of the time I just buy individual items of clothing.
- Yes, I do. I generally wear a top and maybe a jumper, 5 jeans and trainers.
- I like barbecues because they are usually very casual 6 affairs, and you can wear what you like.

### Unit 30

1	1	D	3	D	5	S	7	D
		S	4	S	6	S	8	D

- 2 bunk beds, vacuum cleaner, bookcase, central heating, dustbin, smoke alarm, doorbell, ironing board, chest of drawers, letter box
- 3 suggested answers (others may be possible): one hand: doorbell, plug two hands: broom, dustbin (one hand to open the lid and one to put the rubbish into it) one or two hands: hoover / vacuum cleaner no hands: doormat, radiator, socket (using one hand to put a plug in the socket)
- 4 1 broom
  - 6 dustbin 7 drawers
    - 8 hoover

      - 9 bunk 10 box
  - 5 (door)mat

2 radiator

3 stool

4 socket

- I don't wear short-sleeved shirts much. I usually just roll up
- Nobody in my family wears a cap, but my grandfather

#### 5 possible answers:

I've got all of those things in my house except for bunk beds. I've got two smoke alarms: one in the kitchen and one in the hall. I've got a letter box, but it isn't in the front door: it's on the wall next to the front door.

6	1	D	3	S	5	S
	2	D	4	D	6	D
7	1	half a dozen			5	plumber
	2	loo			6	estimate
	3	spare			7	greasy
	4	get hold of				
8	1	hold			5	porch
	2	outside/exter	io	r	6	dripping
	3	steps			7	dozen
	4	grease			8	blinds

### Unit 31

1	1	exhausted /	6	have a lie-in
		worn out	7	a sleeper
	2	nightie/nightdress	8	yawn
	3	sleeping pills	9	sleeping bag
	4	oversleep	10	snore
	5	nightmare		
2	1	exhausted /	5	get back to sleep
		worn out	6	went off
	2	fell asleep	7	overslept
	3	fast asleep	8	sleepy
	4	nightmare		
3	1	heavy; light	5	lie-in
		(OR light; heavy)	6	snore
	2	pyjamas / a nightie	7	pills
	3	alarm	8	bag
	4	wide		
4	n	ssible answers:		

- I'm a fairly heavy sleeper.
- 2 I own a pair of pyjamas, but I usually wear shorts and a T-shirt in bed.
- 3 I hardly ever set an alarm because I always wake up about the same time.
- It's quite unusual, but yes I do. I usually wake up and get 4 up almost immediately.
- 5 No, I never have a lie-in.
- Yes, my wife tells me I snore sometimes. 6 I have taken sleeping pills to help me on long plane or 7
- train journeys. I never go camping so I don't own a sleeping bag.
- 5 The pronunciation is different in: provided and insomnia.
- 6 The pronunciation is different in: as long as.
- 7 have a nap, sleep like a log, suffer from insomnia, have a restless night, in total darkness, have something on my mind

8	1	irritable	5	restless
	2	as long as / provided	6	my mind
		that	7	establish
	3	like a log	8	restricted
	4	stick	9	disturbed

- 9 possible answers:
  - I usually sleep like a log, but not in different beds, e.g. on holiday.
  - 2 That's true for me - I often have a restless night if I eat very late.
  - I don't work late so that doesn't restrict the amount of 3 time I sleep.
  - I don't get irritable after just one bad night, but I'm not 4 nice to be around after two!

- 5 I think it is important to establish a good routine for sleep.
- No, that's not true for me I don't need to be in total 6 darkness to sleep.
- I don't suffer from insomnia, but I feel sorry for those 7 who do.
- I used to have a nap in the afternoon, but not any 8 longer.
- Yes, I don't sleep as well if I have things on my mind. 9

#### Unit 32

1	1	D	3	D	5	S
				D	6	S

- 2 1 unaware; debit; statements; transactions 2 sum; credit; promptly
  - 3 outgoings/expenditure; overdrawn; debts
  - 4 ignores; put money into
- 3 1 withdrew
- 2 overdrawn
  - 3 outgoings/expenditure/transactions
  - mount/build
  - cautious 5
  - 6 prompt 7
  - income 8 awareness
- 4 possible answers:

I don't keep a record of my outgoings, but I check my bank statements online a couple of times a week so I know more or less what I spend.

- I always keep my account in credit; I'm never overdrawn. I have an arrangement with my bank so that my credit
- card bills are paid automatically at the end of the month.
- I do check my bank statements but I don't always look carefully at all the different transactions.

I wouldn't say I was cautious with money, and I do waste money on food that I buy and don't always eat. However, I don't think I waste large sums of money.

5 money: budget, owe, economize, subsidize, pay sth off, deficit

numbers: calculate, work something out, subtract, take sth away

- 6 1 D 3 S 5 S 6 D 4 D 2 S
- 7 1 Surplus is different; shortfall and deficit mean an amount that is less than you need.
  - Calculation is different; shortfall and shortage both mean not having enough of something.
  - Economize is different; take away and subtract mean to 3 take one number from another.
  - Subsidize is different; economize and make cutbacks mean to reduce the amount you spend.
  - Budget is different; deficit and shortage both mean you don't have enough of something.
  - Pay sth off is different: work out and calculate mean to find the total number/amount of something.
- 1 shortages 8
- 8 owing 9 subsidized
- shortfall 2 subsidy 3
- work out / calculate
- deficit/shortfall 5
- 6 economize / make cutbacks
- 7 budget/economize

### Unit 33

- 1 suggested answers: involves violence: manslaughter, rape may involve violence: mugging, kidnapping, arson (if people are killed or injured in the fire) doesn't involve violence: shoplifting, bribery, fraud
- 2 usually involved with money: fraud, mugging, bribery, blackmail, kidnapping, shoplifting (stealing goods which are worth money)

3	1	shoplifter	4	kidnapper
	2	blackmailer	5	rapist
	3	arsonist	6	mugger
4	1	mugged	6	raping
	2	manslaughter	7	bribed

- 8 deliberate/intentional 3 kidnapped
- 4 shoplifters 9 blackmailed
- 5 threatened 10 fraud

#### 5 suggested answers:

a negative meaning: slum, gang, abuse, neglect, penalty, harsh

6	1	slum	5	abuse
	2	neglected	6	offenders
	3	discipline	7	morals
	4	gang	8	attraction

- 7 1 parental responsibility
  - 2 suffered abuse (also possible: been abused) 3 discipline
  - 4 moral issue
  - 5 harsher penalties
  - 6 drifted into crime
  - neglect 7
  - 8 attraction
- 8 possible answers, from Kenya:

I disagree. Crime rates are high in estates where the middle class live as well as in slum areas. Gadgets such as mobile phones, tablets and laptops are easy targets for criminals. Many criminals blame parental neglect, yet it is a lack of discipline on their part. There have been instances of pickpockets making away with gadgets such as mobile phones on busy streets and laptops stolen from public offices.

Crimes are also committed by people who aren't poor because they offer an easy way to make money and live a good life. People who abuse alcohol and drugs often drift into crime because they steal to get money to buy their next dose. What is needed are harsh penalties for offenders which will discourage others and prove that crime does not pay.

### Unit 34

1 suggested answers:

usually negative: regret, filthy, litter, depressing, homeless These words can be negative, but it depends on the context: abandon, damp, hang around, graffiti, concerned

- 2 1 dirty 5 wet 2 poor
  - 6 worried
  - 3 sorry
  - 4 ground
- 3 1 homeless 2 passage
  - concern 3
  - youths 4
  - 5 graffiti
- 7 sad writing and/or drawing
  - 6 depressing
  - 7 hanging
  - 8 regretted

#### 4 possible answers, from Poland:

litter on the ground: Interestingly, I often see litter on the ground near dustbins in a park near my home during weekends. I suppose the park cleaning service doesn't work at weekends and this is the reason why there is so much abandoned litter. And obviously, such a sight is a drawback of walking in the park on Sunday. A real shame. But on the whole, I don't think we have much litter in the street, not compared to some other countries.

graffiti: Yes, quite a lot. Some of it falls under the category of murals. They are a nice artistic expression. But actually there are quite a lot of spray 'signatures', not representing anything - just lines, not meaning anything - a rather depressing sight. Another category is often linked with supporting e.g. a football team or degrading/disrespecting it. Some texts on walls are political statements.

homeless people sleeping in the street: One can see homeless people in the streets but not sleeping. They sleep in parks or deserted houses but not really in the streets. You can sometimes see homeless people sitting in passages in the city centre.

filthy pavements: Yes, where filth is created by unfavourable weather conditions such as melting snow, or mud because of torrential rain.

gangs of youths: I suppose in some very specific districts of a bigger city, but on the whole gangs of youths hanging around are not a big problem in Poland.

- 5 1 5
- D 2
- D 3
- 4 S
- 5 D
- 6 s
- 7 D
- D (In the UK, a district can be in any part of a town, but a 8 suburb is only outside the centre of a town.)

#### 6 1 built-up

- 2 suburb/district
- 3 surrounded; drawback/disadvantage/shame/pity
- 4 handy/convenient; surrounding
- district; nearby; go on 5
- 6 lively; drawback/disadvantage/shame/pity; decent
- 7 on the whole/in general
- 8 desirable

#### 7 possible answers:

- It's guite built-up because it's not far from the centre, but many houses have a garden, and there are two parks, so there is still a feeling of space.
- 2 It's surrounded by garden on three sides, with a road on the fourth side.
- We have quite a few shops nearby: a chemist's, a florist's, a small supermarket, a deli, and one or two others.
- It's very convenient for me because I can walk into town 4 in ten minutes.
- I suppose the main drawbacks are that it is on a hill 5 so the walk home is all uphill, and many residents complain about the shortage of parking.
- As time goes on I think the district will improve because councils are more aware of the environment than they used to be, and I've noticed that the shops are gradually getting better.
|   |   | and a state of the |               | a secolar aller |
|---|---|--|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 | 1 | meadow   | 5             | occasionally    |
|   | 2 | frequent   | 6             | nevertheless    |
|   | 3 | outskirts  | 7             | swap            |
|   | 4 | shallow  | 8             | stream          |
| 2 | 1 | swap   | 6             | meadow          |
|   | 2 | stream   | 7             | beyond          |
|   | 3 | spot   | 8             | occasionally    |
| 1 | 4 | isolated   | 9             | nevertheless    |
|   | 5 | infrequent   | 10            | outskirts       |
| 3 | 1 | shallow  | 6             | outskirts       |
|   | 2 | isolation  | 7             | frequency       |
|   | 3 | frequent   | 8             | beyond          |
|   | 4 | Nevertheless   | 9             | spot            |
|   | 5 | rural  | 10            | deep            |
| 4 | - | able farm careal crop  | mixed feeling |                 |

arable farm; cereal crop; mixed feelings; physical labour; earn a living; herd of cows

5	1	grow crops	6	does he do for a
	2	herd of cows		living?
	3	mixed farm	7	pass on the farm to
	4	arable farm		my son
	5	dairy farm	8	crops
6	1	combination	6	pass
	2	increasingly	7	labourers/labour;
	3	keep		labourers/labour
	4	crops	8	mixed

5 earn

7 possible answers, from China:

- 1 There are very few farms in Hong Kong, where I live. Since the farms here are not very large, they usually grow a small range of crops.
- 2 They only use machines to do some work. Most of the work is done by hand.
- 3 Farmers here keep cows, pigs, chickens, ducks and fish.
- Most farms here grow vegetables, such as Chinese kale, 4 Tientsin cabbage and green cucumber. Some grow fruit, such as guava, green papaya and red dragon fruit. Very few of them grow cereals.
- 5 Very few people here earn a living from farming.
- 6 There is no shortage of labour here, but not many people want to do farming work.

#### Unit 36

- 1 1 undergone
- 2 flourishing
- 3 remarkably 4 unique
- 2 1 thriving
- 2 stunning
- 3 diverse
- unique 4
- 3 1 easy
  - 2 beaten track
  - 3 restoration
  - resort 4
- beautiful views stunning 4 unusual and surprising city remarkable keep so much retain varied architecture diverse flourishing European thriving managed to repair restore casually walk around wander exciting nightlife vibrant you can relax unwind

- 5 possible answers:
  - No. I like city breaks but I'm not looking for anything 1 particularly vibrant or exciting.
  - 2 I like to unwind, but not on a beach: it's usually too hot for me.
  - 3 Sometimes I do; at other times I like to be in a busy city.
  - No, I'm not a very adventurous person. 4
  - Yes, that's my idea of a perfect holiday, along with good 5 weather and good food.

6 B

8 Probably B,

6 vacancy;

7 impressed

8 luxury

fully-booked

but could be either.

7 G

#### Unit 37

- 1 justify vacancy luxury in advance miserable guarantee luxurious exclusive preferably fully-booked
- 2 suggested answers:
  - 1 G
  - 2 B
  - 3 G
  - 4 G
  - 5 either
- 3 1 Having said that
  - preferably 2
  - in advance 3
  - guaranteed 4
  - 5 justify
- 4 possible answers:
  - Yes, well in advance. I'm very organized.
  - No, not luxurious hotels, but I like something reasonably 2 comfortable.
  - I haven't ever used Airbnb, but have stayed in a B&B on 3 a few occasions.
  - No, I much prefer city breaks where I can visit museums, 4 art galleries, etc.
  - No, I don't think they do. 5
  - 6 Convenience, reasonable comfort and good value.
- 5 1 flexibility given

2

3

4

- 6 youth hostel or a
- caravan
  - 7 appeal 8 strict
- going away
- 5 expense

generous

- 1 He's (very) mean. 6
  - 2 If it's a cheap place, it enables us to stay a bit longer.
  - 3 We have a limited budget.
  - 4 The date is (very) flexible.
  - 5 We opted for something guite simple.
  - 6 I want to live in comfort.
  - A room with a balcony is an extra expense. 7
  - 8 A caravan isn't (very) appealing to/for me.
- 7 possible answers:
  - 1 I stayed in a caravan when I was a child. I remember they were very small but quite exciting for children. I have never stayed in a youth hostel but have friends. who use them all the time.
  - 2 I think I prefer to have a bit of comfort.
  - 3 I don't go on holiday much so I'm prepared to spend guite a lot, though there is still a limit on what I can afford.
  - Yes, I do. I try to forget about work completely unless 4 there's something urgent.
  - Flexibility is quite nice. 5
  - Yes, they always wanted us to do things together as a 6 family, and not go off on our own.

216

5 remote

8

5 laze

6 wander 7 remarkably

6

7

remarkable 6 7 unwind/take it easy

restored

8 away from it

5 unspoilt

remote

resort

8 delight

- 1 1 spacious-late 2 detached-flat 3 staircase-care
- 2 1 basically
  - 2 staircase
  - 3 exterior; interior
  - 4 largely
  - 5 mortgage
- 3 1 terraced;
- semi-detached 2 hall
  - 3 plan
- - Yes, especially terraced houses. They've been here for centuries: the old ones are usually single-storey buildings forming a line along the main street in a village and having a large garden or even an orchard behind the house; the modern ones are higher, often two-storey buildings, sometimes with an attic and a tiny front and a small back garden where the families relax and enjoy barbecues and meals in the summer. Semidetached houses are less common, but we do have them, especially on the outskirts of cities. Their bonus is more privacy than in the terraced houses but, of course, the prices are usually higher.
  - 2 No, not really. The entrance hall is mostly small, even tiny, with a lot of doors and is simply furnished with a wall rack and a shoe rack or cupboard.
  - 3 Open-plan design is not very popular in our homes. In most homes, there's one large room, which serves as a living-room, dining-room and a kitchen, and a number of smaller rooms which provide privacy to the family members. Open-plan flats are usually very modern and spacious and are often built in reconstructed areas of big cities. They are either offered for rent or for sale, but because of the high prices, the buyer normally applies for a mortgage.
  - Yes, a lot of people do, especially young people. But to get the mortgage you need to prove you have a permanent job and the amount of the mortgage depends on how much you earn.
  - Some people still do the decorating themselves -5 either because they enjoy doing things on their own, or because of the cost. But nowadays, more and more people have the decorating, and cleaning afterwords, done for them.
  - 6 It depends, of course. If a young couple buy a home, they often need to save before they can make some bigger changes. A lot of bathrooms and kitchens are installed in old high-rise blocks of flats, which are in a somewhat dilapidated condition. Sometimes the young people move into a home which used to be owned by their grandparents, so they refurbish the whole place. Also, a lot of people decide to replace their old kitchen or bathroom when their family situation changes, for example when they look after an old relative or their area because a child marries and/or has a baby.
- 5 rental, attic, landlord, extend, unfurnished, flatmate, contract, deposit
- 1 rental 6
- 2 Both
- 3 Both 4 flatmate
- 7 1 contract
  - 2 flatmates
  - 3 storage
  - 4 deposit
  - 5 extension

- 4 entrance-camera
- 5 mortgage-damage
- 6 overall-saw
- 6 bonus 7 overall
- 8 decorating
- 9 spacious
- 10 put in
- 4 take out
- 5 decorating 6 put in / install
- 4 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

  - children leave home, or they decide to extend their living
  - - - 5 storage 6 lease
        - 7 sign
        - 8 extend
          - 6 furnished
          - 7 rental property
          - storey (also possible: 8
          - floor)

- 8 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:
  - 1 Yes, it is, especially in big cities. People usually want to buy a flat or house if they believe it's for a lifetime. If they come to the city to work or study, they usually rent a flat. Young people often live in rented flats until they start a family, then they look for a place to buy. And, of course, there are people who can never afford to buy a place of their own.
  - 2 In the past, almost all the flats offered for rent were unfurnished. But with the changing lifestyle, a lot of flats, especially in big cities, are offered furnished and with all modern conveniences.
  - 3 No, the length of contracts varies. It depends on the renter and landlord's agreement. The contract can be signed for a few months and for many years. But included in the contract, there are always conditions under which any of the parties can terminate the contract, and also a common condition is a deposit of three months' rent which can be used to cover the cost of any damage caused by the renter.
  - 4 Yes, usually they are, on condition the renter has caused no problems and and the landlord has no other plans with the flat, of course.

5 Both are possible.

6 nature

7 wildlife

8 countryside

#### Unit 39

- 1 1 pond
- 2 Both are possible.
  - 3 scenery
  - 4 tropical
- 2 Frogs live in ponds. You keep tools in a shed. Birds build nests. Nature consists of all kinds of wildlife. Trees have roots.

-						and a start of the			
3	1	scenery			6	species			
	2	roots			7	slope			
	3	woods			8	tropical			
	4	acquire			9	greenhouse			
	5	intended			10	hollow			
4	1	В	3	G	5	В	7	G	
	2	G	4	В	6	G	8	В	
5	1	spade			5	compost to	the	soil	

4

- 2 put my feet up 3 mow the lawn
  - 7 hedge round the field 8 some weeding cut back this bush (cut

6 lawnmower

- this bush back)
- 6 1 to make the soil more fertile
  - 2 It makes the ground wet and more difficult to dig.
  - Yes, because the weeds are not wanted and can make 3 the garden very untidy.
  - Perhaps once a week or once a fortnight, depending on 4 the season and the weather.
  - 5 Cut them back.
  - To sit on and relax/put your feet up. 6
  - Yes, otherwise it will probably get too big. 7
  - Cleaning tools, cleaning the shed, tidying the 8 garden, etc.

#### Unit 40

- 1 1 scroll
- 2 icon
- 3 launch browse 4
- 2 1 key sth (in) 2 tap
- 5 browser 6 storage 7 scroll up

5 install

6 prompt

7 settings

8 storage

- 3 switch 4 launch

217

3		installed browsing prompt tap			6	scroll settings launched icon	
4	1	D	3	S	5	D	
	2	S	4	S	6	S	

5 1 No, you can't. It's too badly damaged.

- You turn it off and then on again immediately.
   Yes, you are.
- 4 It has many components.
- 5 A mouse is an external component.
- 6 No, it's very unwise. Without a backup, you risk losing all of your data.
- 7 Yes, it does.
- 61freeze3damp5update7back up2antivirus4downwards6plug8unplug

7 possible answers:

- My old computer used to freeze a lot, so I got a new one which doesn't.
- 2 Yes, I have it's very important.
- Not very often. I know I should do it more often than I do.
   I don't think shout it liust wine it! I didn't know you
- 4 I don't think about it I just wipe it! I didn't know you had to wipe it downwards.
- 5 I update my software every time the device prompts me to do so.
- 6 I usually plug it in when I get home in the evening.
- 7 My data updates automatically all the time.
- 8 Very occasionally I shut it down, but I think I only unplug it when I go away on holiday.

#### Unit 41

1		max							ively		
		nder <u>es</u> tim	ate					prio	rity		
		ponent						opp	osition	1	
	co	n <u>ten</u> der							estima		
2	1	quite ea	sy				5	very	impor	tant	
	2	a difficu		ame			6	judg	e then	n well	
	3	a team y			ying		7	at th	e end		
		against			-		8	man	y team	IS.	
	4	No, a co somebo who mig	dy t	aking							
3	1	oppone	nts;	tough (	also		5	relat	ively		
		possible					6		ender	s	
	2	priority			5.		7	hom	e; awa	IV.	
	3		tim	ate			8		hing		
	4	League					9	title			
4	1	qualifica	ation	n			4	dom	inatio	n	
	2	victory					5	tran	sforma	ation	
	3	inconsis	tent	t			6	cons	istenc	у	
5	1	P	3	N	5	Ν		7	N	9	Ρ
	2	Ρ	4	Ρ	б	Ρ		8	N	10	P
6	1	chance					6	cons	istenc	у	
	2	pitch					7	qual	ify		
	3	boost					8	pres	sure; s	ort	
	4	row					9	defe	ats		
	5	throw					10	stan	dacha	ance	

7 possible answers:

I support Chelsea. They have done quite well this season, but there have been too many home defeats and draws against teams we really should dominate easily. We were a bit inconsistent, and the manager was under pressure for a lot of the time because Chelsea supporters always expect a lot. In the end, though, we qualified for the Champions League, so that's not bad.

#### Unit 42

1	1	D	3	S	5	S	7	D	9	D
	2	S	4	D	6	S	8	D	10	S

2 Rhythm, tune, catchy, sing along, melody, chorus, hit single and lyrics are associated with music. Genre can be used in connection with music, but also with the other arts, e.g. literature, painting.

- 3 1 determination 4 criterion
  - 2 complex

irrelevant

- 5 encounter 6 unforgettable
- 1 catchy (also possible: memorable)
- 2 tune (also possible: melody)
- 3 hit singles
- 4 chorus

3

- 5 lyrics
- 6 complicated/complex
- 7 relate to
- 8 rhythm
- 5 1 criteria

4

- 2 tune/melody (also
- possible: chorus)
- 3 genre

encountered

5 relevant; relate

- re
  - 9 determine

7

8

10 surface

6 engage

memorable (also possible:

unforgettable)

relevance

- 6 possible answers, from Argentina:
  - 1 I think that, as with all art forms, what matters is how we relate to the piece – what the song means to us personally. There are many reasons why a song might be considered great – it might be the rhythm, the lyrics, the melody, or a combination of all three.
  - 2 A great pop song should be relevant to the listeners, which means that audiences can personally engage with the feelings evoked in the song. That is why most hits deal with basic human emotions, like love in all its forms.
  - 3 As I'm not a musician myself I tend to focus on the lyrics.
  - 4 I'm always humming or singing along to my favourite songs.
  - 5 I think the sentiment behind a song is what can make a song truly popular. But of course there are exceptions to this – some very repetitive and simple songs have become hits.

6 I would say most songs by The Beatles have stood the test of time. If I had to write a list, I would include: We can work it out (The Beatles) I guess that's why they call it the Blues (Elton John) Under my skin (Frank Sinatra) Suspicious Minds (Elvis) There must be an angel (Eurythmics) Land of Confusion (Genesis) Yesterday (The Beatles)

#### Unit 43

1	actor: fabulous, classic,
	unanimous
	play: sensational, praise
	far: cast
2	1 set

- 2 death
- 3 effects
- 4 Both are possible.5 classic
- 3 1 to death / stiff
  - 2 adaptation
  - 3 cast
  - 4 unanimous

hair: scare caught: applause, audience theatre: adapt

- rellere. Tembe
- 6 adaptation 7 ghost
- 8 applaud
- 9 tension
- 5 praise
- 6 applause
- 7 classic
- 8 tense

4	bl co ex	pect ockbuster on <u>vinced</u> spec <u>ta</u> tion reenplay			<u>50</u>	quence o <u>me</u> what btitles ppre <u>dic</u> table
5	1	Yes	3	Yes	5	No
	2	No	4	Yes	6	No
6	1	predicta	ble		5	somewhat/rather
	2	convinci			6	screenplay
	3	expectat	-		7	dubbed
	4	sequenc			8	blockbusters
7	1	poor			5	subtitles
	2	exceede	d my		6	unpredictable
		expectat			7	originality

- 3 convinced (either)
- 4 aspect (either)

1 time-consuming, contribute (In British English, contribute is also possible.), contribution, disposable, beforehand, gatecrasher, get going, liven up

2	1	hosts	5	beforehand
	2	disposable	6	liven
	3	away	7	contribution
	4	time-consuming	8	prospect
3	1	preparation	5	going
	2	beforehand	6	livened up
	3	contributed	7	clear up

- 3 contributed 4 gatecrashers
- 4 possible answers, from Argentina:

I would say that in my country, sometimes parties are prepared beforehand, which of course gives the hosts the chance to enjoy the party more, but sometimes gatherings are kind of improvised.

Guests usually contribute with drinks or snacks. I have never seen bouncers in private parties, but it sounds like a good idea – now with people posting everything on social media, gatecrashing is a risk.

If people know one another, things get going quickly. Music can certainly liven up any event, particularly live music!

Of course, there is always a lot to clear up afterwards, but if you feel your guests have had a good time, it's really worth it.

- 5 1 in company
  - 2 you fancy doing?
  - 3 have a good/great time (also possible: have a laugh)

6 good of him

company

open arms

9 call/pop

4 reversal

5 evolution

10 be off

7

8

- 4 better be off (now)
- 5 awkward (with people)
- 6 warm welcome
- 7 own company
- 8 accompany you
- 9 welcome (at her place)
- 10 pop round/over/in / call round

6 1 good company

- 2 popped/called
- 3 welcome
- 4 own company
- 5 socialize
- 5 SOCIAILE

#### Unit 45

- 1 1 restoration
  - 2 amendment
  - 3 transformation

2 1 transform 2 restore/reverse 3 evolve **3** 1 transformed restore 2 evolution 3 4 reversal reform (also possible: 5 amend) 4 1 B 2 B 3 G 5 1 subtle sweeping/major/ 2 wholesale 3 refreshing 8 somewhat confusing 4 enforce 5 put into practice 6 1 pursue 2 sweeping/radical/ major/wholesale 3 resistance 4 enforce/impose 5 consulted Unit 46 1 2 3

5

ap	pliance						in	the lo	ng run			
be	etter still						or	stan	dby			
co	nserve						tu	mble	dryer			
di	sposal						co	nsery	ation			
er	ergy-savi	ng										
1	В	3	G		5	В		7	В	9	В	
2	В	4	G		6	G		8	G	10	G	
1	short-ter	rm					7	long	term			
2	labour-s	avir	ng				8	land	fill sites			
3	solar par	nels	1				9	batt	eries			
4	on stand	iby					10	swite	ch			
5	tumble						11	toxic				
6	eco (eco disaster	logi	ical)				12	disp	ose			
1	dryer					7	batt	teries;	still; cha	rger		
2	charge (	up)				8	savi					
3	monitor					9	con	sume	r			
4	consum	e			1	10	inve	estme	nt			
5	applianc	es			1	11	gen	erate	d			
6	conserve	e			1	12	savi	ings				
po	ssible ans	wer	s:									
1	No, I hav	en'	t, sol c	an o	b	/iou	isly r	nanag	ge withou	ut on	e.	
2	Occasion	nally	y, but r	not c	oft	en.						
3	We have use, but									icity	we	
4	No, I dor											
			Idea .		chi	100	-	hine	a dichura	char	-	

4 reform/amend

adapt/adjust

adjust) adapt/adjust

amend

alterations

bring about

an ongoing

resisted

facilitate

welcome

ongoing

consultation

9 implemented

10 obvious

5 G

implementation

6 G

transition

alter (also possible:

5

6 alter

6

7

8

9

10

4

B

б

7

8

9

10

6

7

8

- 5 an oven, a fridge, a washing machine, a dishwasher, a kettle, a toaster, a coffee machine, food mixer and radio.
- 6 Yes, I usually do.7 I use rechargeable batteries for a number of things: my
- laptop, phone, toothbrush and e-reader. 8 I use energy-saving light bulbs and rechargeable
- batteries. I've got solar panels (14 of them) and haven't got a tumble dryer.
- 9 I've no idea, but probably above average because I work from home a lot of the time.
- 10 I think they are a great investment.
- 11 In 2019, about 3% of electricity was generated by solar energy in the UK.
- 12 Keeping a car is expensive, but some public transport could be a lot cheaper – the trains in particular. I've made significant savings, though, in using my bike more.

1	1	5	3	5		5	D		7	S
	2	D	4	D		6	D		8	S
2	1	danger		3	natu	ral		5	verg	e
	2	out		4	in			6	spec	ies
3	1	out; extinc	t			6	enda	nger	ed; in:	stance
	2	cleared; de	fores	statio	n	7	cons	ervat	ion	
	3	extinction	; decl	ine		8	decli	ning;	die	
	4	regions				9	poin	ting		
	5	habitat				10		idere	d	
4	1	divested d	iverte	ed		6	over	after		
	2	feed breed	1			7	deco	ratio	nal	
	3	puts poses	5				deco	rative	9	
	4	civic civil				8	threa	ten t	hreat	
	5	kill wipe								
5	1	civil				5	up			
	2	horn				6	pose	s		
	3	divert				7	out			
	4	after				8	threa	at		
6	1	likelihood				5	territ	orial		
	2	territory				6	tiger	poad	her	
	3	poaching				7	bree			
	4	under thre	at			8	ende	dup		
	4	under thre	at			8	ende	d up		

#### Unit 48

1	1	DS	3 4	DD		5			78	D		9	D
2	re	volution striction rgical ccination		cin	ate			tra	ansplar	e; diagno: nt fectious	sti	c	
3	1	No		3	Yes			5	Yes	7		Yes	
	2	No		4	No			6	No	8	3	Yes	
4	1	theatre						6	proce	dure			
	2	advanc	es					7	dono	r/transpla	an	t	
	3	suppler	ment	s				8	mine	rals			
	4	era						9	cure				
	5	rate						10	medi	cine			
5	1	eradica	ted /	wig	bed ou	t; w	ipe	dou	ut/era	dicated			
	2	restrict											
	3	vaccina											
	4	conven				es							
	5	infectio											
	6	operate	; pro	ced	lure/o	pera	tion	n; co	onfined	d b			
	7	revolut											
	8	enabled				100							

1	1	S	3	s	5	D	7	s
	2	D	4	S	6	D	8	5
2	1	emigration seek			5	Both are	e possib	le.

	-	JUCK	0	116.01
	3	ethnic	7	Both are possible.
	4	refuge	8	Both are possible.
-		and the second	1	

- 3 1 There's no limit on the number of people given political asylum in this country.
  - 2 Racial and sexual discrimination is against the law in matters of employment.
  - Economic migration to richer countries has existed for centuries.
  - 4 There are over 2,000 refugees seeking political asylum in this country.

- 5 Nearly half a million people were forced to flee their homes during the civil war, and many of them took refuge in the mountains, away from the fighting.
- 6 My neighbour has always had a prejudice against people whose skin is a different colour.
- Asians only form a small minority within the population.
- 8 There has been a lot of **racial** tension between different ethnic groups.

4 stereoscope stereotype

5 integrity integration

integrate

hostile

10 peace 11 nostalgic

6 natural native

7 for

8

9

- 4 culture shock, live in peace, religious faith, have no desire to do sth, have a part to play, country of origin
- 5 1 for towards
  - 2 in part<del>ly</del>
  - 3 nostalgie nostalgia
- 6 1 native
  - 2 faith
  - 3 shock
  - 4 part
  - 5 stereotypical
  - 6 desire

#### Unit 50

- 1 ideology opposition ideological extremism capitalism associate conservative association status quo distribute distribution oppose 2 ideological liberalism; liberal conservative; association; associated
  - conservative; association; asso
- 3 1 F A communist economy ...
  - 2 T
  - 3 T
  - 4 F A liberal believes in economic freedom and gradual political change.
  - 5 F The Conservative party in Britain believes in capitalism.
  - 6 F Communists believe that everyone should own the means of production.

7

7

89

6 in the centre

extent prominent

partly

10 association/

connection

the opposition

possible: socialist)

8 communist (also

- 7 F Extremists tend to have extreme beliefs.
- 8 T
- 4 1 right-wing
  - 2 wealthy
  - 3 opposed to it
  - 4 status quo
  - 5 moderate
  - .....
- 5 1 distribution
- 2 favour 3 ownership
- 4 associate
  - maintain
- 5 maintain 6 wealthy

6 possible answers, from Hungary:

- We have many different parties showing the whole spectrum of political views from right-wing to left-wing. Fortunately, extremist parties are not among the major political players and do not have seats in the Parliament.
- 2 It depends on the particular issue we are talking about. If I find it necessary, I cannot refrain from calling/voting for radical change.
- 3 In many cases maintaining the status quo would be quite boring. When it comes to politics, I can imagine situations where radically changing the existing order is the only way out.

- 4 I am not that much into politics so I cannot really say. What I find unacceptable is when people criticize the existing government just because they are in power. I believe in studying a given issue from as many aspects as possible and forming an informed opinion based on facts rather than on my emotions.
- 5 Yes, I strongly believe in personal and economic freedom, and am quite tolerant towards people whose views differ from mine.
- 6 Absolutely, I always have my ID card and my driving licence on me.
- 7 I live in a big city Budapest so we have practically all types of public transport. The most common are bus, tram and the underground, but you can also take a suburban train or cycle around on the many newly-built cycle paths. The latest craze is the electric scooter but, personally, I find it rather dangerous.

1	1	resident	5	allocate
	2	ensure	6	manifesto
	3	voluntary	7	councillor
	4	council	8	volunteer
2	1	manifest manifesto	5	for of
	2	to in	6	out up
	3	make take	7	assure ensure
	4	volunteer voluntary	8	<del>grand</del> grant
3	1	councillors; behalf	6	resident; citizen
	2	volunteers; sector	7	green
	3	have	8	allocated
	4	stick/stand; take	9	ensure
	5	grant	10	council
4	1	budget / funding	4	profile
	2	committee /	5	
		authorities	6	All are possible.
	3	spokesperson /	7	mayor/head
		chairman	8	chairs / sits on
5	1	police	6	committees
	2	eligible OR ineligible	7	mayor
	3	chair	8	heads
	4	authority/authorities	9	profile
	5	budget	10	funding

6 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

- Yes. Each town has a mayor. In big cities they are called Lord Mayor. Elections take place every four years. In these local elections, people vote for the future members of the council. Then, at their first meeting, the elected councillors choose the mayor. He/She is usually the head of the party who won the majority of seats and his/her deputies are heads of the coalition parties.
- 2 Yes, it is. The bigger the town, the more influence the mayor has.
- 3 The mayor cannot decide much on their own. They always act in compliance with the decisions of the town council. They take decisions on the town's development, approve its budget, and establish and abolish organizations such as the local police, technical services which look after the cleaning of the town, collection and sorting of rubbish, parks and other green spaces, cultural centres, and sports centres and facilities. They are also responsible for kindergardens and basic schools, and a lot more. The mayor is the one to sign the most important documents and bears the responsibility for matters they refer to.

#### Unit 52

- free of charge, health care, clinical trial, strictly confidential, cosmetic surgery
- 2 1 specialist
- 2 confidential
- 2 surgery
- 4 prescribe

2 register

- 3 1 care
- 5 specialist

8

5 if; care

6 register; enrolled

participants; trial

7 refer; specialist

- 6 referred
- 7 confidential 8 suspect
- 4 of charge

3 prescription

4 possible answers, from Poland:

Yes, you do need to register with a GP.

Your GP refers you to a specialist You get a free prescription for some drugs but some are paid for. People who are insured get some discount. I also think you get some discount if you are a pensioner.

When you suspect that a doctor has made a mistake and it is too late to have it fixed by him/her, you can sue the doctor for negligence, damages, etc.

In order to become a participant in a clinical trial, you need to be referred by your GP or a specialist.

I think in certain cases you can have cosmetic surgery for free, e.g. when it is treatment after an accident or an operation.

Yes, all medical records are strictly confidential.

5 1 feet 6 kept 2 no Both are possible. 7 3 admitted 8 Both are possible. 4 old self 9 recuperation 5 Both are possible. 10 dedicated 6 1 no notice of me 5 recuperate/convalesce 2 me informed 6 miserable well-being 3 off my feet 7 4 real self 8 dedicated 7 1 admitted; ward 5 junior absolute 2 kept 6 3 rushed 7 convalescence 4 well-being; prime discharged 8 possible answers, from Poland: 8

### 1 Yes.

- 2 Yes, I think they are.
- 3 Yes, very much so.
- 4 Yes, according to the law.
- 5 That depends on the hospital, but probably on the whole it is true.
- 6 Yes, they do.
- 7 It may differ from case to case but, on the whole, that is the case, usually.
- 8 No, patients (or their families) will have to buy their medicines from a pharmacy.

#### Unit 53

1	su su	e <u>tain</u> Is <u>pect</u> v Ispect n Ifence	m	valid agistrat stody licitor	e	co	mand on <u>vict</u> o <u>quit</u> onstable
2	1	in	3	with		5	of
	2	for	4	of		6	to
3	1	constable/se	rgeant/		4	custody	
		inspector	-	5		grant	
	2	offence			6	acquit	

3 issue/grant/refuse

- 4 1 a magistrate OR a judge
  - 2 the police
  - 3 a solicitor
  - 4 a judge OR a magistrate
  - 5 the person awaiting trial / the prisoner
  - 6 the police officer who arrests the suspect
  - 7 a police constable
  - 8 an inspector 9 the chief consta
  - 9 the chief constable
     10 a judge
- .....
- 5 1 rank
  - 2 warrant
  - 3 remanded
- 6 1 about
  - 2 constable/officer
  - 3 detained
  - 4 custody
  - 5 suspect
  - 6 solicitor

- 1 abolish
   reoffender

   abolition
   occupational

   capital punishment
   hazard

   deterrent
   justify

   rehabilitate
   justification

   rehabilitation
   justifiable
- 2 1 up
  - 2 me as a friend
  - 3 capital punishment for some crimes
  - 4 justifiable (also possible: justified)
  - 5 imprisonment
  - 6 abolition of the law
  - 7 occupational hazard
  - 8 reoffenders
  - 9 revenge (on him)
  - 10 crisis
- 3 1 rehabilitate 5
- 2 reoffend
- 3 deterrent 4 capital
- 7 crisis 8 justice; justice

abolish

6 justification; revenge

- 4 possible answers:
  - I don't know the answer to that, but I think we could rehabilitate more offenders than we do at present.
  - 2 There are many possible reasons: not enough support from friends, family or the state; the person can't get a job and is short of money, mixing with the wrong kind of people; crime becomes a way of life, etc.
  - 3 Clearly it isn't a very effective deterrent if a significant number reoffend.
  - 4 No, I have never believed in capital punishment.
  - 5 I would like like to abolish solitary confinement.
  - 6 The answer is probably 'no', but I can understand people wanting revenge; it's human nature in some situations and circumstances.
  - 7 Yes, I believe it is. I think we currently lock up more people in the UK than any other European country. The prisons cannot cope with the numbers; they are overcrowded.
  - 8 I believe in the need for the criminal justice system, but justice – the fair treatment of people – is not easy to achieve.

5

6

7

8

Both are possible.

Both are possible.

Both are possible.

institution

- **5** 1 confinement
  - 2 Both are possible.
  - 3 assessment
  - 4 Both are possible.

- 4 procedure(s); valid 5 suspect; offence
- 6 caution
- 7 charged
- 8 offences
- 9 magistrate
- 10 granted
- 11 convicted
- 12 sentenced

- 1 therapy 2 segregation
- 3 catering
- 4 cells
- 5 consent
- 7 possible answer:

I think we should have more prisons based on these principles. It wouldn't work for everyone and perhaps not a majority, but it could be successful in rehabilitating a good proportion of offenders because it works on the principle that if you treat people like decent human beings, there is a good chance they will then behave like decent human beings.

6 proportion

mutual

principle

10 exclusively

confinement

serve your country

make a distinction

be in command

military aircraft

10 distinguish/ differentiate

11 encompasses

14 (a large military)

operation

12 compulsory

13 commands

diverse

branch

9 comprise/

weapons

consist of

6

7

8

9 deadly

7

8

9

#### Unit 55

- Encompass is different.
  - These three are pronounced like bit: civilian, encompass, enlisted.
    - These three are pronounced like bet: deadly, differentiate, weapon.
  - 3 The three that are different are: comprise, diverse, missile.
- 2 unarmed combat the vast majority the armed forces lethal weapon military service
- 3 1 vast
  - 2 military
  - 3 consists
  - 4 fundamental
  - 5 combat
  - 6 diverse
  - 7 guard
  - 8 enlisted
- 1 armed
- 2 made up
- 3 command
- 4 serve
- 5 reserves
- 5 possible answers, from India:

 Yes, India has got a professional military in place. The Indian Armed Forces consist of three uniformed services

 the Indian Army, the Indian Navy and the Indian Air Force.

- 2 Yes, India has a reserve army.
- 3 Yes, India has many institutions that provide military service.
- 4 Yes, the police are usually armed in India.
- 5 No, I have never stood next to a tank.
  - No, I have never owned or used a deadly weapon. No, I have never been in a professional army.
  - Yes, I have flown in a helicopter a few times.
  - No, I have never dropped from a parachute.
  - No, I have never enrolled for military service.

#### Unit 56

1	1	D	4	D	7	S
	2		5	D	8	S
	3	5	6	S		

- 2 1 B 2 B 3 G
- 4 B
  - 5 G
  - 6 G 7 G

8 G (for the army) B (for the criminals)

222

3	1	f	3	j	5	h	7	e	9	d	U
		c	4	a	6	a	8	b	10	1	-

- 4 1 New arms deal
  - 2 Government pledges/vows to back new hospital
  - 3 Go-ahead for rail scheme
  - 4 Company chief axed
  - 5 Boost for big banks (also possible: Backing for big banks)
  - 6 Latest statistics a blow for the economy
  - 7 Kidnappers demand ransom
  - 8 Ministers urge delay
  - 9 Motorcyclist cleared of child's death
    10 PM rules out further tax cuts
- 5 1 Blast wrecks new shopping centre
  - 2 Senators rule out more international aid
  - 3 Shareholders bid to axe chairman
  - 4 Officers foil prison escape plot
  - 5 Bid to change law on hunting (OR Bid to change hunting law)
    6 New food alert (OR New alert about certain foods)
- Unit 57
  - 1 mass; blank; precious; instant; specialist; opening

2	1	D	3	S	5	S	7	S
	2	S	4	D	6	S	8	D
3	1	blank			6	talk		
	2	opening			7	pace		
	3	tone			8	assumption		
	4	assume			9	part		
	5	quotina/citi	na					

- 5 quoting/citing
- 4 1 I went to the opening of the exhibition.
  - 2 You must grab the reader's attention.
  - 3 I can recognize his style instantly.
  - 4 It was a mistake on my part.
  - 5 We must leave now, otherwise we'll be late.
  - 6 There is mass unemployment
  - 7 Did you quote/cite her?
  - 8 Freedom is precious.

5	1	publication	4	commodity
	2	specialist	5	opening
	3	mass	6	Quotes

- **5** 1 It determines the style of writing.
- 2 You can assume a greater level of knowledge on the part of your readers.
- 3 Don't use difficult words and long sentences, but don't talk down to your readers.
- 4 The most precious commodity is space, and it is precious because it is always in short supply.
- 5 It has to engage the reader instantly; summarize the story, and state why you are writing it; set the tone for the rest of the story.
- 6 Quotes should be short, otherwise the story may lose pace and direction.

#### 7 possible answers for the UK:

The most specialist newspaper is The Financial Times. Specialist magazines include The Spectator and The New Statesman.

Mass-market papers include The Sun, The Mirror and The Daily Mail.

The Prime Minister of the United Kingdom, the President of the US, and famous celebrities such as sportsmen and women are commonly quoted in newspapers and on TV.

#### Unit 58

- concerning, debate, conflict, divide, contest
   (Note that the verb contest is stressed differently.), turnout, negotiate, referendum, electorate
- 2 1 concerning/regarding
- 2 a narrow majority
- 3 has divided
- 4 electorate

2 will

- 5 turnout
- 6 negotiate / take part in negotiations
- 3 1 referendum 4 debate
  - 5 closely; contest

7 S

8 D

6 conflict

6 D

6 multiple

7 coalition

9 consensus

8 dominance/dominant

- 3 negotiation(s)4 1 A referendum
  - 2 It was concerning Britain's continued membership of the EU.
  - 3 It deeply divided opinion in the nation.
  - 4 A narrow majority in favour of leaving the EU.
  - 5 72% of the total electorate
  - 6 There was a long period of negotiation.
  - 1 D 3 D 5 S
  - 2 D 4 S
- -

5

- 6 1 govern
  - 2 cooperate
- 3 advocate
- 4 compromise
- 5 philosophy
- 7 1 two or more political groups working together
  - 2 everyone
  - 3 a lot of control
  - 4 for it
  - 5 more powerful
  - 6 give up some of the things you wanted for a solution both sides can accept
- 8 1 multiple
  - 2 compromise
  - 3 govern
- 6 core; philosophy 7 advocate

5 cooperate

- 8 coalition
- dominant

#### Unit 59

4

- rebellion, minimise, protester, uphold, demonstrators, avert, erect, occupy, demonstration, meanwhile, protest, disobedience
- 2 demonstration, disruption, rebellion, disobedience, resistance, occupy
- 3 1 T
  - 2 F If someone upholds the law, they obey it.
  - 3 F If you avert an accident, you prevent it from happening.
  - 4 F If you tolerate something, you allow it to continue.
  - 5 F A building which is occupied contains protesters or people who are currently living or working in it.
  - 6 T
  - 7 F If you minimize something, you reduce it to the lowest possible level.
  - 8 F A rebellion is opposition to authority by an organized group.
- 4 1 barriers
- 2 disobedience 3 activists/

demonstrators/

protesters

- 6 movement 7 called on
- 8 staging
  - 9 entire

5 resistance

- 9 entire
- 4 disruption 10 tolerate

- 5 1 like human beings
  - 2 have called on activists
  - to minimize the disruption 3
  - 4 in connection with the events
  - have been occupied 5
  - to avert any potential danger 6 a group of activists/demonstrators/protesters
  - 7 avert disruption 8
  - no longer put up with 9
  - 10 who erected the barriers
- 6 1 movement
  - 2 mission
  - disobedience 3
  - 4 avert
  - occupying
  - 5 6
    - tolerated
  - 7 activists/ demonstrators/ protesters
- Unit 60
  - Evacuate is the exception.
  - 2 1 collapsed 6 death toll considerable 7 2 numerous rescued 8 evacuated 3 9 scale 4 trapped inside their homes 10 significantly 5 strike/hit 3 1 strikes/hits 7 tremors
    - 2 collapse 3 trapped
    - 4 evacuation 5 rescue/save
    - 6 maintain
- considerable/ 8 significant 9 scale 10 toll

6

7

6

7

5 devastation

precaution

casualties

5 assessment

suspicious

praise

8 intense

4 floated

estate

8 drowned

8 notify

fragments

assistance

8 tackling

8 demonstration/

demonstrators/

protest

activists/

10 calling

11 beings

12 stage

protesters

9

- 4 devastate firefighter casualty precaution deliberate suspect assessment courage courageous intensity intentional suspicion
- 5 1 suspect 2 intensity
  - 3 assessment
  - 4 courageous
- 6 1 blaze
- 2 deliberately 3 brigade
- 4 bravery (also possible: courage)
- 7 1 casualties
- 2 brigade
- 3 intense
- 4 praised
- 5 assess
- 6 suspicion

#### Unit 61

1	1	5	3	D	5	D
		D	4	S	6	S

- 2 1 formally (Note that the most natural word order is: They formally announced it.) confirmation 2 3 drowned
- 3 1 acre 2 fragments
- 3 formally
- 4 floating
- 5 notify 6 confirmation
  - lord 7

5

6

7

- 4 possible answers, from China:
  - Acre and hectare are commonly used to describe an area of land in our language. For smaller areas, we often use square foot and square metre.
  - We don't have any large estates in my city, Hong Kong.
  - There is no equivalent of a lord in our country. 3
  - Hong Kong is divided into districts. Our country is divided into provinces, and in each province there are many cities and counties.
  - We should call the emergency line if someone dies at 5 home of natural causes. Police then come to confirm the case. And an ambulance is sent to collect the body and provide all the necessary assistance.
- 5 regulator network edit distress in the public interest live stream commentator prejudice delicate balancing act
- 6 network, broadcaster, clip, edit, live stream (You can have a media regulator, but regulators also operate throughout other business and industries.)
- 7 a public library; a balancing act; a media regulator; in the public interest; a film clip; racial prejudice
- 8 1 clips
  - 2 broadcast
  - 3 distress
- edited 4
  - 5 live stream
    - (also possible: live broadcast)
- Unit 62
  - 1 1 revealing, exposing
    - 2 carried out,
    - conducted
    - pry into 3
    - 4 All three are possible. 5 contrasts with
  - 2 1 carried
  - 2 revealed
  - 3 findings
  - 4 deserve

  - 3 1 tabloid 2 prying; public

- 2 Yes, they do it all the time.
- 3 I think the families of celebrities deserve privacy, but it is difficult for people in the public eye to avoid publicity and keep their privacy. There are times when celebrities actually enjoy being in the public eye.
- The advantages are often wealth, status and being able 4 to enjoy privileges that ordinary people don't have. The disadvantages are the lack of privacy, and that is sometimes accompanied by stress.
- 3 S 5 D 7 S 4 1 D 4 D 8 D 6 D 2 D
- 5 1 Allegedly, he has lost all his money.
  - They acted in her defence. / They rallied to her defence. 2
  - They say she has a fortune / is worth a fortune. 3
  - 4 Jason has custody of his son.
  - He's been through hell recently.
  - 6 She's had support from (her) fellow workers.
- 1 rumour 9 custody
  - 10 fellow allegation 11 rally scandal 12 defend
  - rock
  - hell
  - alleging
  - 7 rehab

2

3

4

5

6

8 fortune

224

- 7 contrast 8 privacy
  - 3 privacy

6 eye

4 celebrity

6 public; delicate

8 commentator;

regulator

7 prejudice

6 emerge

8 Coverage

10 deserve

5 emerged

7 be revealed, emerge

9 findings, revelations

possible answers:

1 Yes, we do.

1	se	evere; direct; r	em	ain	ing	; myste	eriou	is; stuck; ra	pid; d	elicate		
2	1	tip					6	do				
	2	Both are pos	ssib	le.			7	Both are	possit	ole.		
	3	severe					8		remaining			
	4	mysterious					9	ever since				
	5	Both are pos	ssib	le.								
3	1	bear / put up	p w	ith	5	dare						
		(also possible in formal						mysterious				
		English: end	ure	)			7	rapid/spe		ecovery		
	2	delicate					8	dare		· · · · ·		
	3	dare					9	directly				
	4	(ever) since					10	stuck				
4	1	S	3	D			5	S	7	D		
	2	D	4	D			6	S	8	S		
5	1	kill you			3	see		5	fall			
	2	die			4	chanc	e	6	clea	rly		
6	1	panic					5	stay put				
	2	swamp					6	stranded				
	3	spotted					7	lower limi	t			
	4	tale					8	any chance				

#### Unit 64

- 1 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 D 9 S 2 D 4 D 6 D 8 D 10 D
- 2 apprentice handyman executive entrepreneur lucrative librarian electrician nowadays civil servant vacancy bodyguard self-employed

3	1	jeweller	8	plumber
	2	handyman	9	librarian
	3	civil servant	10	butcher
	4	barman/barmaid	11	accountant
	5	apprentice (plumber)	12	housewife/
	6	bodyguard		househusband
	7	carpenter		

4 (Answers may vary from country to country.)

In the UK, these jobs are generally quite well-paid: electrician, civil servant, accountant

- These jobs can be quite well paid but often they aren't: manual worker, librarian, casual work
- These jobs aren't well paid: barman/barmaid,

apprentice, housewife

5	1	seeking	7	vacancies
	2	senior	8	executive
	3	lucrative	9	tough
	4	nowadays	10	incentive
	5	manual	11	post/position; va

- 11 post/position; vacant
- 6 employed 12 civil service
- 6 possible answers:
  - 1 Yes, I used to do manual work in my holidays when I was at university, and I've been self-employed for a number of years.
  - 2 I think it would be fun to be a handyman: working for yourself, doing varied jobs, and often spending time solving problems for other people.
  - I am self-employed and prefer it that way. 3
  - I don't need an incentive to work hard if I enjoy what 4 I'm doing. If I didn't enjoy my job, then I would need incentives, such as a good salary or long holidays.
  - 5 No, I'm not very good at it, but I quite like it for short periods of time.
  - 6 Yes, I think it might be fun.
  - 7 I think they're a great idea, and it would help young people if there were more apprenticeship schemes in this country.

- 8 No, I don't think I would be happy only doing
- housework unless it was for a very short period of time. I wouldn't mind a low-status job if it was temporary, but 9 I would be less happy if I had a permanent job which had low status.

#### Unit 65

1		ualifi <u>ca</u> tions dministration		human re <u>sour</u> ces finance							
		anufacturing	recruitment								
		arket research		insurance							
		(also possible: market m	esearch)								
2	1	market research									
	2 human resources										
	3	retail									
	4 insurance										
	5 manufacturing										
	6	administration									
	7	finance									
	8	recruitment / HR / hum	an resour	ces							
3	1	registered	4	sector							
	2	qualification(s)	5	manufacturing							
	3	finance									
4	po	ssible answers:									
		My experience has been in retail. I've worked for Marks									
	8	Spencer now for 15 year									

ars. Initially, I was a shop-floor manager for a number of years, and then I retrained and now work in human resources, where I spend a lot of my time looking at ways for other staff members to move on in their careers and develop new skills. I find human resources a very rewarding sector to work in.

5	1	D	6	5
	2	S	7	D
	3	D	8	S
	4	D	9	S
	5	D (They might be	10	D
		the same, but not	11	D
		necessarily.)	12	S
6	1	challenging	8	resign/quit

- 2 department
- 3 prospects
  - promoted
- 4 5
  - elsewhere unemployed
- 10 promotion 11 redundant 12 quit (also possible:
- resign)

9 appointed

- 7 fire/sack
- 7 possible answers:
  - 1 True 2 Not true

6

- 3 True (I think, so but I'm not sure.)
- True
- 4 5 Not true (at the moment)
- 6
- Not true (I was once out of work for nearly six months.) 7
- True (I don't think I could do it.) 8 True (Probably, but again I'm not sure.)
- 9 Not true (I wasn't sure I would like the job when I was
- appointed.) 10 Sometimes true and sometimes not. (People are
  - sometimes promoted because they are talented, and sometimes promoted because they are the most senior member of staff.)
- 11 Not true. I have never been made redundant.
- 12 Not true. I have never resigned because I didn't like my job.

#### 1 freelance accountable insight

- 2 1 encountered
- 2 degree
  - accountable to no one 3
- 4 insight into
- **3** 1 freelance
  - 2 boss
  - 3 solely
  - encountered 4 5 degree
- possible answers:

I was a freelance illustrator for four years. I enjoyed similar advantages such as being able to choose what work to take on and being my own boss. Occasionally I encountered a degree of isolation as my work often got in the way of my social life. Over the years, I came to appreciate that my income was not guaranteed and that I had to take on extra work when it was available. I was able to take care of my family, open a restaurant, which my wife runs, and buy a car. I don't miss the additional benefits of a regular job because I have health insurance and I am enrolled in a pension scheme.

guarantee

additional

en<u>coun</u>ter

balance

an extent

in the way

additional

guaranteed

better

pros and cons

gets in the way of

5

6

7

8

6

7

8

9

- 7 N 5 1 P 3 N 5 P 8 P 4 P 6 N 2 N 4 away with it 1 fit in enterprise 5 2 use her initiative mutual respect 6 3 of collaboration 4 diverse 7 1 valued disruptive part; spirit 5 2 suppress; fulfilling/ 3 foster/promote/ 6 rewarding encourage
- 8 possible answers:

In general, I agree with the pros and cons above, although a good team shouldn't suppress individual enterprise and initiative.

- Other advantages of working in a group:
- It can improve your communication skills.
- Individuals can learn from other members of the group 2 and improve their skills.

Other disadvantages are:

- 1 Some individuals become very competitive with other individuals, and this can damage the effectiveness of the team.
- If members of the team do not agree on the goals, it can 2 be hard to make progress.

#### **Unit 67**

1 dispute, give in, break down, halt, closure

1	set	5	halt
2	settle	6	step up
3	ballot	7	give in
4	set	8	broken down
1	closures	5	have broken down /
2	stake		broke down
3	dispute	6	inclined
4		7	wages
1	F	8	ballot
	1 2 3	2 settle 3 ballot 4 set 1 closures 2 stake 3 dispute	2settle63ballot74set81closures52stake53dispute64precedent7

minimum wage; fringe benefit; maternity leave; state pension; dental treatment; go on strike; trade union

- 5 1 maternity
  - union 2 bonus 3
  - go on 4
  - 5 leave
- 6 possible answers: 1 In my job, I don't get a commission because I'm not a salesman, and I don't get health or dental insurance either. However, I get the other perks mentioned. The annual bonus varies from year to year, but we usually get one. The other benefit I get is the opportunity to eat in a subsidized canteen, where the food is quite good and very cheap. The most important benefit for me is the company pension because it's worth the most money.

7

8

9

6 entitled; pension

commission

10 minimum; leave

right

right; trade; strike

- I enjoy all the rights mentioned, and I believe everyone 2 should have those rights.
- (answer from a 17-year-old still at school) I like the sound 3 of an annual bonus, especially if it comes at Christmas when I need more money. I would also like paid sick leave if I was ill. I don't know much about pensions but my parents are always telling me they're important, so that would be good too.

#### Unit 68

- reminder, prioritize, accomplish, anticipate, deadline,
- 3 1 basis
  - 3
  - 4
  - delegate 5
- 4 possible answers:

I think it is a good idea to make a note of tasks you need to do, but I don't think it is necessary to put reminders everywhere. Prioritizing is also important, but setting deadlines for every task is very difficult. I think it's also difficult sometimes to stick to one thing at a time. Sometimes you just have to do two things at the same time. I try to stick to my priorities. That's important. And you should always delegate if you can. Anticipating problems is not easy.

- 5 1 prompt
- 5 Both are possible. 6 flood 7

frustrated

4 promptly

endless

8 Both are possible.

- overwhelming 2 Both are possible. 3
- stream 4
- Our spending has got out of control. 1 6
  - 2 My nerves are on edge.
  - 3 Fortunately, the situation is under control.
  - I was overwhelmed by the response. 4
  - There's so much work. I'm stressed out. 5
  - He keeps interrupting me when I'm working; it's 6 annoying.

interruptions 7 1

2

- 5 stressed productive
- 3 productivity
- possible answers:
  - Fortunately, I don't get a constant stream of interruptions, but I find that even one or two can be a bit frustrating.
  - 2 I'm usually quite productive in the morning, but less so in the afternoon.

226

- Both are possible.
- 2 sticks
- deadlines Q
  - 10 note it down

5 anticipated

priority

matter

achieved

Both are possible.

accomplished/

stick

6

7

8

7

8

- 11 at a time
- anticipate reminder
- 6 make a note
- remind 2 3 4

	de	legate
2		minsitia

-		
1	prioritized	

- prioritized

- basis: wherever

)	а	SI	s;	W	h	e	e	v	e

- 3 I think my productivity would be improved if we had air conditioning. In the summer it gets very hot where work, and it makes me feel a bit sleepy.
- 4 Personally, I like to reply to emails promptly, otherwise they build up and become overwhelming.
- 5 I don't think I get stressed out, but I do sometimes worry a bit that I don't have enough time.
- 6 No, I don't think so, but I know several friends who thin like that.

1 possible answers:

		1	SOC	n							5	CO	ntrol	
		2	res	ult							6	pa	st	
		3	sta	rt							7		oport	
		4	ow	ns							8		reement	
	2	1	stri	ke/r	nak	e/co	oncl	ude			5	im	minent	
		2	bid								6	tak	eover/acquisition	
		3	set								7		enda	
		4	mo	unt							8	-	porate	
3	3	1	for	mer	bos	s				6	outcome			
		2	his leadership								7 another bid / a hig			
		3	backing									bid		
		4	a deal								8	me	rger	
		5	sha	reh	olde	ers								
	4	1	D	2	s	3	S	4	s	5	D	6	S	
	5	1	soa	red	/roc	kete	ed				5	cou	a	
		2	plu	nge	d/p	lum	met	ted			6	clin		
		3	pea	-							7		he wake of	
		4	fres								8		rsuing	
	6	1	soa	red	/roc	kete	ed				5	floa	ated	
		-									-			

2 collapsed (also 6 to climb possible: plunged/ 7 coup 8 reached a peak plummeted) 3 issued 9 pursue it 4 hostile

#### Unit 70

- 1 1 A designer and manufacturer of safety helmets for use at sea.
  - 2 1993.
  - 3 Because surfing was a seasonal business.
  - 4 It had to be light, give protection and retain heat.
  - 5 No, he had to adapt them.
  - 6 He took out a bank loan.
  - 7 He launched the new safety helmets.
  - 8 Feedback from his customers.
  - 9 A good partnership with suppliers.
- 2 retention; investment; diversification; innovation; exploitation, launch

3	1	contract	5	innovative
	2	retain	6	diversify
	3	protection	7	partnership
	4	feedback	8	potential
4	1	Both are possible.	4	keep ahead of
	2	adapt	5	founded
	3	that case	6	Both are possible.
5	1	exploit	5	contract
	2	Innovation	6	potential
	3	refined	7	feedback
	4	invest	8	diversify
6	1	gap	7	cases
	2	took out; loan	8	keep; rivals/
	3	manufacture		competitors
	4	give	9	founder; firm
	5	investment	10	launch

- 6 crew

Uni	it 7	1			
1	1	G	7	G	
	2	-	8	G	
	3	-		B	
	_		0		use it's not considered
	5	В		good if you are s	atisfied too easily,
	6	В		especially in the of business.	competitive world
2	1	thrive/flouris	sh		dynamism
		passionate		7	boasting
		forward			dissatisfied
	4 5	aspire		9	secret breakthrough
3	po	ssible answers			
	1	to thrive for a			k (and probably both)
	2				nate about what you
					rder to be successful,
	3	-	nn	ing is certainly im	portant in business or
	4	I'd like to fee			ny potential. In other
	5	I had a moto	rb		I was 21 and couldn't
	6	I'm not sure o	dy		hs. portant, though it
	7	probably hel Yes, I think it		possible to talk ab	out your own
					but you need to be
		careful about			also how much you
	8	do it. Yes, I have pa	355	ed exams where I	still felt dissatisfied
		because I con	ulo	've done better.	
	9				and I think her secret ented with being very
	10		ce	kthroughs every ye	ear in the treatment of
4	1	came		5	failure
	2	interfere in		6	Both are possible.
	3	lasts		7	
	4	down		8	last
5	1			going downhill. ~ or a while now.	- Yeah, it's been
	2				got annoyed because
	3			ference in her pro	Yes, but Tom only just
	2	scraped thro			res, but fom only just
	4	Do you think	th	e relationship will	last long? ~ No, not if
	-			tting her down.	
	5			op out of the cour	se? ~ She told me it
	6	was hopeless Why did you		terfere in their co	oking? ~ I just felt they
				owhere with it.	oning. Hjust feit they
6		come		4	struggle
	2	scraped		5	
	3	dropped		6	nowhere
7		ssible answers:			and the second
	1				ms over the years.
	2			ed through an imp	portant maths exam
	3	when I was 10		ad out of a Casala	h course hereine hur
	2	too busy with			h course because I wa
	4				was a struggle becaus
	-	I failed the fir	st	time.	
	5				eone at work because
					ty to apply for a job
		that I wanted	v	ve have a hetter re	lationship now, but fo

- e a better relationship a long time we didn't. 6 Yes, I stopped doing yoga because I didn't think think I
- was getting any better.

- 1 1 escalating/growing 2 confront
  - 3 arise
  - 4 multiplied
- 2 1 escalating/growing
- 2 address (confront/ face up to are also
- possible)
- 3 urgent 4 raised
- 4 Tuiscu
- **3** possible answers:

Litter on the streets is not a major problem, but it's not an easy problem to resolve because some people will always drop litter. It's a question of education, I think.

Graffiti is a major problem in some places, but where I live they are tackling it quite successfully. If you see graffiti, you can call a number, and they will send a team to clean it off. It seems to work.

Household rubbish is a growing problem and will only be resolved when we stop using so much plastic and packaging around everything we buy.

Some cities are now serously starting to address the problem of pollution by introducing charges for vehicles with high pollution levels.

Parking is another growing problem as we increase the number of cars in society. Most cities in England are tackling it by increasing out of town parking areas to encourage people to get buses into the town centre.

Bullying has always been present, especially in schools. More schools are facing up to the problem now with both punishments for offenders and counselling for victims.

- 4 1 esteem
  - 2 get her down
  - 3 articulate
  - 4 regardless
  - 5 insignificant
- 5 1 damaged
- 2 get her down
- 3 perspective
- 4 behind
- 6 possible answers:

I think teenagers are often unhappy about their appearance (I was), and this is bad for their self-esteem. I also agree that it is difficult to accept any kind of failure, and equally difficult to keep things in perspective.

Another problem for teenagers now is the significance of social media. This causes massive peer pressure to do what others do. It is easy in these circumstances for teenagers to exaggerate the significance of various problems.

### Unit 73

- 1 1 modify
- 2 contemporary
- 2 1 unfortunate 2 splendid
  - 3 formerly
  - 4 well-preserved
  - 5 contemporary
- 3 1 former
- 2 preserving
- 3 conversion
- 4 estimates
- 5 modify

- 5 insoluble
- 6 exaggerate it
- 7 resolve
- 8 tackling
- 5 overcome
- 6 tackle/resolve
- 7 insoluble
- 8 tackling/confronting
- 9 minor 10 escalate
  - escalate

2 clip 4 date 6 hand

4 S

3 (as) good

5 D

6 packaging

7 reproduces

9 mechanism

10 clip

8 up; innovative

5 punctual; punctuality

flown

7 virtue; vices

8 for the time being

Both are possible.

slipped

lasting

6 Looking back

incredible

recall

extraordinary/

unforgettable

land

6

6 S

5 new

3 D

1 device

4 1 D

5 1 out

- 2 antique
- 3 Ancient;

2 5

- reproductions
- 4 reconditioned
- 5 genuine

#### Unit 74

- 1 leave sth to the last minute, in retrospect, with hindsight, at one time, from time to time, for the time being, time flies, day-to-day
- 2 1 In retrospect, I didn't enjoy it.
  - 2 He does things at the last minute.
  - 3 It was an ambition at one time.
  - 4 I go there from time to time.
  - 5 I live on a day-to-day basis.
  - 6 I'll be OK here for the time being.
- 3 1 back
  - 2 hindsight
  - 3 leaves everything till
  - the last minute
- 4 about/high
- 4 possible answers:

I think time definitely flies when you're older.

I wouldn't say I get depressed generally, but certain events make me depressed from time to time, such as political events, social issues or family isues.

That's not true for me because I started a pension some years ago. However, it's probably about time I increased the amount of money I put into my pension.

I never wanted to be a journalist, but at one time I wanted to be a professional rugby player.

No, that's not true. I do certain things at the last minute such as sending people birthday cards, but in general I'm quite organized.

That's not true for me because I went to university. In general that's true, though I sometimes think about how I might be happier.

I am very punctual but I'm not sure it's a great virtue. No, that's not true for me. I often plan for the future. I'm sure that's true. I can think of several times in my life when I didn't work as hard as I should've done.

5

6

7

8

7

8

- 5 1 vague
  - 2 Both are possible.
  - 3 Both are possible.
- 4 vivid
- 5 1 On the whole
- 2 extraordinary
- 3 recalling
- 4 recollection
- 5 landing
- 7 1 vivid/unforgettable
  - 2 slipped
  - 3 landed
- 4 inches
- 5 stuck
- 1 recollection
- 2 vivid/unforgettable
- 3 speaking; recall; vague
- 4 back

- significance articulate
- 5 reassuring

6 channel

7

8

9

10

8

accept

seriously

damaging

playing down

6 setback 7 significant

estimate v

formerly

modified

estimated

splendid

converting

it turned out to be

next to nothing

contemporary

domestic animals

3

4

6

7

8

9

10

6

7

8

possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 To be honest, I find it hard to recall true memories of my early childhood. My parents were keen photographers so they got a shot of practically every step my sister and I took. Whenever I try to look back on my childhood, I can mostly recall the photos I have seen many times since then. This feels sad because I will never know if the memory would have faded had it not been for the photo immortalizing the moment.
- 2 I would say it is the Christmas Eves we used to have when I was a child. We would wait outside the living room for my father to ring the bell, which meant we were allowed to go in and have a look at the glistening tree and the neatly wrapped presents underneath. We would step in and with my mother taking the lead we would start singing. It was pure magic for me back then.
- 3 It depends on the emotion attached to the event. I tend to avoid recalling embarassing situations or events that went particularly badly for me. What I remember most vividly is situations where I excelled in something or achieved my goals, however insignificant they appear now.
- I prefer looking ahead, but now and again certain smells or sights or people I happen to meet evoke some memories, and in those moments I do enjoy looking back and recalling things that I have experienced or places I have been to. It's also great to reminisce in the company of old friends and have a laugh about the past we shared. I'm obviously talking about good memories. As for the unpleasant ones, they're probably not worth dwelling on, so I just try to erase them from my memory.

5 Besides

7

6 Both are possible.

providing 8 thereby

4 you keep quiet.

6 I'm glad I saw it.

con<u>clusion</u>

inadequate

compensation

12 convenience

5 someone could get in.

#### Unit 75

2

- 1 1 Furthermore
  - Both are possible.
  - otherwise 3
  - 4 Both are possible.
- 2 1 while/whereas
  - 2 Furthermore/Moreover/Besides
  - 3 provided/providing
  - 4 Nevertheless/Nonetheless
  - Besides (Furthermore and Moreover have the same 5 meaning, but are too formal for this context.)
  - 6 thereby
  - 7 consequently
  - 8 otherwise

**3** possible answers:

- 1 I can't afford it.
- 2 I'm very punctual.
- 3 I was late for work.

4 considering incon<u>ve</u>nience adequate

- 5 1 thus/hence
  - 2 prior to
  - 3 in view of
  - With regard to the other climbers / Regarding the other 4 climbers
  - In conclusion 5
  - 6 were obliged

adequate 6 1

- 2 thus/hence
- 3 Prior to
- 4 With regard to /
- Regarding
- 5 In view of
- In conclusion 6
- 7 compensation
- 8 obliged
- 9 inconvenience 10 since
- 11 inadequate

#### Unit 76

- 1 argument evaluate evaluation criterion incoherent present v narrative narrator stylistic summarize
- 2 1 summarize
- 2 assessment
- 3 narrator
- 4 Both are possible.
- 3 1 narrative
  - 2 summary
  - 3 asessment/evaluation; incoherent
    - stylistic
  - 5 criteria

4

- 4 Justify is different.
- 5 The words which most clearly show a point of view are: condemn, condone, assert, justify, and adopt a stance.
- 1 condemnation
- 2 conclusion
- 3 illustration
- outlined 7 1
- 2 condemned
- 3 explored
- 4 condone
- 5 adopt; stance
- Unit 77

1

2

3

5

	x <u>pose</u> im <u>ply</u> de <u>fy</u> herit in <u>he</u> rent	convey p	or <u>tray</u> em <u>bo</u> dy
p	etrayal ortrayal nplication sheritance	defiant evil pregnant conventiona	al; unconventional
1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4	an explanation difficult strange beyond depicted pregnant conventions rage	5 6 7 8 5 6 7 8	the truth know an indirect refuse convey irrational embodies Ellen's companionshi
1 2 3 4 5	implied conventional alien feminist evil	6 7 8 9 10	inheritance inherent exposes pregnancy incident
1 2 3 4 5	portrayed embodies embodiment defies betrayed	6 7 8 9	Fate mercy tragedy conveyed

#### **Unit 78**

1 outstanding depending submit nominate nomination controversial alternate venue prestigious imaginative pretentious Controversy and controversy are both possible. 2 1 varies 5 prestigious 2 deserves Both are possible. 6 3 Both are possible. 7 Both are possible. 4 challenging 8 nominated

- 8 sat on the fence

- Answer key 229

# 7 illustrated

9 assert

6 justify

5 criterion

6

7

8

6

7

8

9

10

presentation

Both are possible.

present; extended

argument; coherent

argument

command

argument

register

4 exploration

6 justification

5 assertion

10 draw any conclusions

lip

- **3** 1 annually
  - 2 panel
  - 3 venue
  - 4 sponsor
  - 5 controversy
- artistic 1
- 2 submitted
- 3 nominations
- split 4
- 5 1 It alternates between Melbourne and Sydney.
  - 2 The quality of the work is variable.
  - Colours change depending on the season. 3
  - 4 The paintings are very imaginative.
  - Her work is very controversial. 5
  - 6 There were three nominees.

- 1 sit: experimental, empirical, objective, scrutiny, verify, conviction
- site: hypothesis, bjased, scrutinize
- 2 1 biased/subjective 2 scrutiny/inspection
- **3** hypothesis
- 3 1 phenomenon
  - 2 verify
  - 3 empirical
  - 4 confirm
- 4 1 subjective/biased
  - 2 phenomena
  - 3 objectivity
  - 4 unbiased
  - 5 hypothesis 6 verification
- 5 therapy hereditary abnormal
- molecule 6 1 defective
- 2 abnormal
- 3 unit
- 4 hereditary
- 5 short-lived
- 7 1 therapy; cells
- 2 mutation
- inserts/inserted 3
- 4 cells; rapidly

#### Unit 80

1	1	D	3	S	
	2	S	4	D	
2	1	g	3	d	
	2	f	4	b	
3	1	construction			
	2	reinforced			
	3	concrete			
	4	framework			
4	1	concrete			
	2	reinforced			
	3	in motion			
	4	(vertical) loa	d		
	5	constraints			

5 constraints

Answer key

230

- 4 unbiased
- conviction 5 conduct 6
- 5 biased/subjective

demonstrated (also

possible: displayed)

shortlist

8 challenging

bold

merit

pretentious

prestigious

6

7

5

6

7

8

- scrutinize 6 7 experimental
- experiment/survey 7 evidence/knowledge/ 8
- research
- formulate/confirm 9 10 political/moral

molecular immune

mutate defect

- 6 immune
- 7 processing 8
- rapid 9 long-lived
- immunity 10
- arise; defect 5 6 heredity
- 7 insertion
- 8 molecular; molecule
- · 7 S 5 S 6 D 8 D 7 a 5 h 6 c 8 e 5 law 6 comply 7 regulation
  - 8 concrete

  - panels 6 7
  - undergone 8
  - thorough 9 excessive
  - 10 skyscrapers

- 5 1 construction
  - 2 structurally 3 resistance

  - 1 climate and geology
  - 2 the aesthetic objectives of the owner and architect 3 because each one is unique

  - 4 to see if the building can resist/withstand the effects of strong winds

4 motion

5 aesthetic

5 a total disaster

6 at any minute

8 it's up to you

bound

went off

never know.

turned up yet?

short (of money).

made her change her

mind about the car?

make it

6 reckon

7

5 G

6 B

5

7

8

7

8

9

10

be reckoned be generally considered to be sth: He's

2 inf expect to do sth: We reckon to get there about seven.

push sth sharp into sth: The nurse stuck the needle in my

fix something to something else with glue, etc. I stuck

risk money on a race or an event by predicting the

result: I bet £50 on the result of the cup final.

short of money

7 G

8 G

- 5 steel or reinforced concrete columns
- concrete 6
- 7 by a crane
- girders 8
- by attaching panels of material, such as glass or metal, 9 to the framework

### **Unit 81**

6

- 1 1 no doubt
  - 2 whether or not
- 3 give me a lift
- 4 make it tonight
- 3 B 2 1 В 2 G 4 B
- 3 1 stick 2 bet
- make it 3
- 4 togo
- 1 me a lift? 4

RECKON

STICK

arm.

1

1

2

BET

1

**Unit 82** 

- 2 minute. not like Vicky.
- 3 up to you. 4
- he'll turn up. 5
- a mess of the task. 6
- 1 make; reckon; mean; bound; know; doubt 5

reckoned to be quite good on the piano.

4 disaster; bet/reckon; stuck; turn

the stamp on the envelope.

Look at the more.

compensate - make up for sth

communicate – get sth across

1 propose – put sth forward

postpone - put sth off

confess - own up to sth

overcome - get over sth

cancel - call sth off

deceive - take sb in

6 These are some other meanings:

- like; made; go; to; not 2
- lift; went off; any 3

- 2 1 I never expected him to own up to the crime.
  - 2 Nothing can make up for the loss of earnings.
  - Will someone bring the topic up at the meeting? 3
  - Who put forward the plan?/ put the plan forward? 4
  - 5 The inspector isn't easily taken in.
  - 6 Why did they call off the meeting? / call the meeting off?
  - 7 He has always looked up to his uncle.
  - 8 When did the new dictionary come out?
  - 9 The match has been put off for a week.
  - 10 We have to get our message across more clearly.
- 3 1 it come out?

4

- 5 taken in (by him). 6 put it off.
- 2 bring it up. we'll get over it. 3
- 7 owned up to it.
- 8 call it off.
- 4 1 reach somewhere

look up to them.

- 2 begin to have the responsibility for sth, especially in place of sb else
- 3 make equipment ready for use
- examine sth carefully, especially to find sth 4
- 5 make contact by phone
- 6 experience or suffer sth
- 7 gain control of a country, etc.
- 8 build sth or put sth somewhere

5	1	got through	5	getting through
	2	set up	6	go through
	3	going through	7	set up
	4	take over	8	take over
6	1	getting through	5	going through
	2	set up	6	setting up
	3	taken over	7	set up
	4	gone through	8	gets through

- 7 possible answers:
  - Yes. I was driving in the south of France near the border with Spain, and suddenly there was an incredible rainstorm. The road flooded and all the cars were stuck; the water came halfway up the door. We waited for about half an hour, and then the water started to go down, but it was quite frightening.
  - 2 No. I've only put up a tent in a hot country in summer.
  - 3 Yes, I took over from my husband once when he was
  - feeling very ill. No, I haven't, fortunately. 4
  - Yes, once. I was told my passport had nearly run out, and 5 I should make sure I renewed it when I got back home.
  - No, I'm pleased to say I haven't! 6 I've helped someone set up their phone, but not a 7
  - computer. I do. My cousin is hopeless with money and always 8 spends anything he gets immediately. It means by the

end of the month he always wants to borrow from me.

6 do with

as I know

minute

3 to my mind

and out the other

speak your mind

7

8

9

4

#### Unit 83

- 1 1 off the top of my head
  - 2 in one ear and out the other
  - 3 Let me see
  - When it comes to science 4
  - under the weather 5
  - no good worrying about it 6 7
  - my mind goes a complete blank 8 What do you have in mind?
- 2 1 mind
  - 2 as well 3 blank
  - 4 bet
  - 5 there
- 1 make up your mind 2 bear in mind

- 5 1 want to do sth
- 2 you don't know
- 3 not being serious
- 6 you're kidding; no way; how come; what for; you bet; don't ask me; hang on; best of luck
- 7 1 kidding
- 2 way/chance
- 3 knows
  - 9 faintest (idea)

#### Unit 84

#### 5 true 2 fact 6 happens true 7 only

8 resort 5 lose face 2 a good thing (that) 6 all else fails 7 but for a dream come true 8 as a matter of fact 6 as it happens/as a matter of fact 3 that's life a good thing (that) 7 8 a dream come true 5 Who on the earth

#### 5 1 Guess

- wonder 6 3 earth 7 chance 4 some 8 all
- 2 Do you know if it's open, by any chance? 3
- marry a famous pop star, believe it or not.

- He's been very ill, so no wonder he looks thin. 6 7 They have a large apartment here, not to mention a
- farm in Wales and a house on the coast.
- We said we were members but, for some reason, they wouldn't let us in ... / ... but, believe it or not, they wouldn't let us in.
- 9 It's by far his most violent film.
- 10 I'd like to know more about your background, if you don't mind. / If you don't mind, I'd like to know more about your background.

#### Unit 85

1	th ba	al and error ore or less e pros and cons ock and forth ck and tired	s odd d cons safe rth on a			ls id	
2	1	death	4	foremost	7	less	
	2	pieces	5	sound	8	order	
	3	cons	6	forwards			

- 3 1 sooner or later
  - 2 sick and tired / sick to death
  - (by) trial and error 3
  - 4 now and again / now and then
  - more or less 5
  - 6 bits and pieces / odds and ends

6 of luck 7 come

8 for

4 possible

5 I don't know

6 wait for you

- 4 your time
- 5 bet 10 contrary

# 1 1 fails

- 3 4 face 2 1 If only
  - 3
  - 4 that's life
- 3 1 too good to be true
  - 2 a last/final resort
  - 4 if only
  - 5 but for

#### 1 by very far

- 2 Believe it or believe 6 if that you don't mind 7 not to be mention not The only bad thing 8 I wouldn't really mind Guess you what 4
- 5 wouldn't 2 thing
- 6 1 It didn't work at all. / Believe it or not, it didn't work. Guess what! Melinda's going to ... / Melinda's going to
  - Why on earth are you wearing gloves in the summer? 4
  - Jacob looks about 20, but believe it or not, he's only 13. 5

1	1	post	5	log	9	bat
	2	cakes	6	sieve	10	sheet
	3	bone	7	beetroot		
	4	feather	8	dream		

- 2 1 He's deaf as a post.
  - 2 She's blind as a bat.
  - 3 She's thin as a rake.
  - 4 It worked like a dream.
  - 5 She went/was as white as a sheet.
  - 6 They were as good as gold.
  - She went as red as a beetroot. 7
  - 8 He's got a mind like a sieve.
  - 9 The little girl was as light as a feather.
  - 10 The new phone is selling like hot cakes.

#### Unit 87

1	1	d	3	h	5	i		7	f	9	b	
	2	e	4	9	6	a		8	с	10	i	
2	1	broad	lly spe	aking			6	in the	end			
	2		same				7	as for				
	3	so as t	0				8	do he	er goo	d		
	4	In any	case				9		e way			
	5		as l'm				10		so,			
3	1	Incide	ntally				6	Alter	native	ly		
	2	On the		e/By			7		em go			
		and la	rge / E	Broadly			8	so as	to			
		speak					9	As far	as I'm	1		
	3	Mind	you					conce	erned			
	4	Anyw	ay/Bes	ides			10	in the	end			
	5	It's tru the sa		n so / All						÷		
4	1	All the	same	/Nevert	hele	55/	Eve	n so				
	2	Altern	atively	/								

- Alternative
- 3 so as to
- 4 extent 5 By the way/ Incidentally
- 6 As for
- besides / in any case / anyway 7
- 8 in the end
- by and large / on the whole / broadly speaking / to a 9 large extent
- 10 It's true; All the same / Even so / Nevertheless

#### **Unit 88**

- 1 1 So far, so good.
  - 2 Two heads are better than one.
  - 3 It's a small world.
  - 4 First come, first served.
  - 5 Practice makes perfect.
  - 6 No news is good news.
  - 7 The more the merrier.
  - 8 Don't judge a book by its cover.
- 2 1 The grass is always greener on the other side (of the fence).
  - 2 Actions speak louder than words.
  - 3 First come, first served.
  - 4 Better late than never.
  - 5 Two heads are better than one.
  - 6 Don't judge a book by its cover.
  - 7 It's a small world.
  - 8 An eye for an eye.

- 3 1 better late than never
- better safe than sorry 2
- 3 no news is good news
- the more the merrier 4
- 5 practice makes perfect
- 6 the end justifies the means
- two wrongs don't make a right 7
- 8 beggars can't be choosers
- 9 prevention is better than cure 10 don't judge a book by its cover
- 4 1 better safe than sorry practice makes 2
- perfect
- 3
- 4
- - greener on the other side (of the fence)
- 5 possible answers:

- 8 better late than never beggars can't be 9 choosers
- 10 first come, first served
- 11 Two wrongs don't
- make a right. 12 end justifies the means

- - 1 lagree that you shouldn't judge a book by its cover, and I think that prevention is better than cure. I also find there is a common human tendency to believe that the grass is always greener - it's very easy to look around and see people who have more than you. But if you look around it is also easy to find people who have less.
  - 2 I think there are some circumstances when the end never justifies the means, and I don't believe in an eye for an eye. I'm not sure why people say the more the merrier. It might be true sometimes, but quite often the opposite is true - having more people can spoil some things.
- 6 1 How a person looks is less important than their character.
  - 2 When you love somebody, you cannot see their faults.
  - You should care for your own family first, before you start looking after others.
  - rely on one course of action for success rather than give yourself several different possibilities
  - 5 After an unpleasant experience, you are careful to avoid something similar.
  - 6 used to say that when you are away from somebody you love, you love them even more

#### **Unit 89**

3

4

- 1 1 tons/piles
  - 2 thereabouts

those lines

- kind
- somehow 7 of that sort / along vague 8
  - 9 somebody

5 odd

6 approximately

- 2 1 sort of pretending to be ill
  - 2 have loads/tons/piles of rice
  - executive or something 3
  - give or take a few minutes 4 5
  - tomorrow somehow or other
  - 6 somewhere in the region
- 3 1 We invited a hundred or so to the wedding.
  - He looks sort of depressed. 2
  - Her job is something to do with marketing. 3
  - There was lots of good stuff at the festival.
  - 5 It's in the region of 300 miles.
  - 6 We could go to France or somewhere. I've got £500, give or take a few pounds. 7
  - 8 We could get him a book or something (like that / along those lines / of that sort) for his birthday.

two heads are better than one no news is good news 5 an eye for an eye

- 6 so far, so good
  - the grass is always

- 1 1 reported/said
  - 2 overcome

6 known

3 suspended/jailed 7 scheduled 8 caught up

5 empowered/authorized

- 4 cremated
- said to be dangerous (also possible: be reported ...) 2 1 2 jailed for five years
  - 3 scheduled for 9.00 p.m.
  - 4 short-listed (for the prize)
  - 5 caught up in a traffic jam for ages
  - 6 suspended from school
  - 7 known for her charity work.
  - 8 meant to join the army / meant for the army
  - 9 overcome with emotion when he saw her.

#### Unit 91

- 1 1 unknown
  - 2 incapable
  - 3 inhuman
  - 4 disobedient
  - 5 uncharacteristic
  - 6 invalid
- 11 incompatible 12 insufficient

8

7 unfinished

disloyal

10 unfamiliar

9 unemployed

- 2 an unofficial strike; an incompatible couple; an invalid ticket; insufficient money; an unqualified teacher; a disobedient dog; inhuman conditions; an unfamiliar name
- з inhuman 1 7 unpaid 2 unknown 8 uncharacteristic (of 3 unemployed her) 4 undercooked 9 unfamiliar unfinished 5 10 disloyal (of him) incapable 6 judge 1 advised 4 5 bought 2 charge 3 calculated 6 believed 5 1 miscalculated 4 misunderstood 2 Both are possible. 5 Both are possible. 3 unpack 6 overdid it misjudged 6 1 overcharged 5
  - 6 mistreating/mistreat
    - 7 overestimated

resignation

8 reassess

### **Unit 92**

2 misled

3 unwrap

4 undo

- 1 1 settlement
  - 2 refusal 7 proposal
  - acknowledgement 8 objection 3
  - 4 completion 9 denial
  - 5 measurement
- accomplishment, settlement
- **3** 1 hesitated 6 inspecting 2 denied been editing / edited 7
  - 3 objected 4 acknowledged
  - 5 accommodate 10 objected
- refusal / denial: Both are saying 'no' to something. inspection / examination: Both involve looking at sth carefully.
  - cooperation / collaboration: Both involve working with others towards a common goal.
  - agreement / settlement: Both involve finding a solution to a conflict/problem that both parties can agree on.
- dismissal / resignation: Both mean leaving a job (under different circumstances).

- 5 1 him (some / a lot of, etc.) encouragement 2 a settlement
  - 3 an inspection next week
  - 4 hesitation at the beginning
  - measurements of the room? 5
  - his resignation yesterday 6
  - accommodation for three more 7
  - 8 creation of the new company

#### 6 1 objections

- proposal 2 3
- 7 appreciation 8 edition

6 denial

- acknowledgement
- completion 4 5
- 9 detection
- dismissals

#### Unit 93

- 1 agricultural cooperative affordable profitable progressive structural destructive cooperation
- are affordable 2 1 5 structural 2 cooperative 6 agricultural
- 3 profitable 7 selective 4 destructive 8 logical **3** 1 protective 5 educational 6 selective
  - 2 progressive cooperative 3 7 logic
  - 4 functional 8 cooperation
- 4 architectural, innovative, believable, experimental, administrative, clinical, acceptable, constitutional, communicative, excusable

#### 5 Answer: intensify

6	1	maximize	6	specify
	2	strengthen	7	weaken
	3	simplify	8	stabilize
	4	authorize	9	clarify
	5	shorten	10	specialize

- 7 1 The builder said he would strengthen the wall.
  - 2 We need to clarify our position on this issue.
  - 3 He specializes in this field of medicine.
  - 4 The presence of the police intensified the concern in the crowd.
  - 5 Are you authorized to replace the tickets?
  - I need to maximize the time available to us. 6
  - We need to simplify the instructions for students. 7
  - You must specify the details on the form. 8
  - 9 stabilize
  - 10 weakens
- 8 tighten, legalize, modernize, visualize, purify, economize, equalize, pacify

#### **Unit 94**

1 transport n; transport v; combat n, v; extract n; extract v; deposit n, v; dispute n, v; torture n, v

2	1	c	3	а	5	h	7	e
	2	c f	4	9	6	d	8	b

- 3 1 There was a pause, then the speaker sat down.
  - The table was (completely) in the shade / in complete 2 shade.
  - We have an oil filter.
  - The Liberals have a five-point lead / have taken the lead 4 by five points.
  - We could hear (the) cheers from the crowd. 5
  - 6 Two of the prisoners suffered torture.
  - What transport will they use for the goods? 7
  - 8 They will battle to get the idea approved.

- 10 appreciation

6

2 positive: encouragement, appreciation, collaboration,

negative: dismissal, refusal, objection, denial

- 8 collaborate
  - 9 detect

1 extract

3

4

- 2 mate trace
- 6 trace combat 7
- deposit 8
- 9 disputing
  - 10 tackled
- 5 possible answers:

deposit

5 combat

- My best mate is a guy called Tom, and I've known him ever since university.
- 2 Yes, I have been in dispute with a rail company trying to get money back for a journey that was cancelled.
- No, I haven't but I know several people who have traced 3 their families back over three or four generations.
- Yes, I think I had to battle really hard to get to university. I missed one whole school term through illness and had to work incredibly hard to catch up.
- 5 Most money I earn is deposited automatically in my bank account, but I remember going to my bank about two weeks ago to deposit a cheque that somebody had given me.
- 6 I always sit in the shade because I burn easily if I sit in the sun.
- I sometimes cheer even when I'm watching sport on 7 TV, but I always cheer if I go to see live football matches when my team are playing.
- Yes, I had to pay a deposit when I rented a room in my 8 second year at university.
- 6 Abuse, alert, support, bid, bow and chase can all be used as nouns with no change in meaning. (But note that the the noun abuse is pronounced with an 's' sound, and the verb is pronounced with a 'z' sound.)

#### Unit 95

- 1 proceed interact exclude correspond embark reconcile congratulate distinguish adhere substitute
- 2 more positive: embark; interact; congratulate; proceed; confer; reconcile

more negative: deprive; dispose; exclude; surrender

3	1	on	3	of	5	with	7	of	
	2	from	4	with	6	from	8	on	
4	1	confer			6	dispose			
	2	devoted			7	cater			
	3	distinguis	h		8	adhere			
	4	proceed			9	compensa	te		
	5	interact			10	cling			
5	1	surrender	ed		7	compensa	te/m	nake	
	2	reconcile				up			
	3	distracts			8	exclude			
	4	insisted			9	substitute			
	5	deprived			10	devote			
	6	congratul	ated						
6		pe with sth				re at sb			
		late to sb	dillo.			lect on sth			
		btract sth f				m from sth			
	im	pose sth or	n/upoi	n sb	op	t for sth			
1.									
Uni	t 9	6							

1	of	2	in	5	for	7
2	on	4	of	6	on	8

7 contempt

8 advantage

- 2 1 limitations/restraints
  - exception 2
  - substitute 3 reminder 4
  - 5 confidence

  - 6 exposure

- 3 1 exposure to
  - 2 involvement in 3 emergence of
- 5 exception of 6 contempt for
- 7 reminder of 8 advantage of

4 limitations/restraints on

possible answers:

I have confidence in my ability to manage my life in general, but no confidence in my ability to be successful in business.

I don't think you should take advantage of every opportunity. Sometimes more money just means more problems, and not all ways of making money are legal. Yes, I think that's true.

I don't need reminders of people's birthdays; I can remember everyone's birthday in my family.

I'd like to have greater involvement in charity work; I will do more when I have time.

I think that's true. You can't have what you want without some effort.

The most expensive thing I've ever bought is a sofa, which I got in a sale.

Yes, I would support government limitations on air travel.

There are pluses and minuses, but on the whole, I think social media is allowing people to be more unkind and ruder to each other.

I feel contempt for certain corrupt and egotistical politicians.

#### Unit 97

1 intent subject compatible inherent resistant liable representative dedicated dependent sceptical immune

2	1	to	5	to	9	with
	2	about	6	on	10	in
	3	of	7	to		
	4	on	8	to		

3 1 F – Someone who is immune to a disease has little or no chance of getting it.

2 F – A feature which is inherent in a system cannot be removed from it. 3 Т

F – Someone who is dedicated to their work doesn't 4 leave their workplace early.

5 F – If an agreement is subject to approval, it might happen.

F – A qualification that is equivalent to a degree is 7 similar to/like a degree. 8 т

1 liable to

2 resistant to

3 immune to

equivalent to

- 5 intent on/upon ensuring
  - sceptical of/about 6
  - 7 representative of
  - 8 inherent in

#### **Unit 98**

of in 4

1	1	at	3	at	5	on	7	on	
	2	on	4	in	6	away	8	by	
2	1 2	at short at prese		/ at a mo	ment's	notice			
	3	on the b							
	4	by no m							
	5	at once /		way / str	raight av	way			
	6	on purp			-				
	7	by choic	e						
			and the second						

8 on good terms / on friendly terms

234

1

- 3 1 by choice
  - 2 at once / right away / straight away
  - 3 at present
  - in the near future 4
  - 5 on purpose
  - 6 on bad terms
  - 7 at short notice / at a moment's notice (also possible: at once, right away, straight away)
  - in full 8
  - 9 by no means
  - 10 on the basis of
- 4 in possession of, in office; under investigation, under attack; by means of; on hold; out of respect, out of touch

6 giant

9 board

10 honour

means

slaves / slave labour

7

8

- 5 1 in power / in office
  - 2 under investigation
  - 3 in possession of
  - 4 in honour of / out of respect for
  - 5 out of touch with
  - under attack / under construction 6
- б 1 hold
  - 2 respect; bereaved
  - 3 touch
  - possession 4
  - 5 tunnel; construction

#### **Unit 99**

- brutal, bizarre, favourable, upsetting, peculiar, conventional, reluctant, vicious, outstanding, eminent, notorious, infamous
- 2 positive meaning: outstanding, favourable, eminent, exceptional
- 3 evil/wicked, exceptional/outstanding, brutal/vicious, reluctant/unwilling, notorious/infamous, bizarre/weird, disturbing/upsetting
- 1 evil 4
  - 2 bizarre
  - eminent 3
  - notorious/infamous 4
  - 5 disturbing/upsetting
- unconventional 6
- 5 1 bare arms
- 2 a comparable house 3 Correct.
  - 4 a naked body
- 6 1 comprehensive
- 2 childlike 3 superb
- 7 1 comparative
  - 2 bare
  - 3 incomprehensible
  - 4 tasteful/tasteless

#### **Unit 100**

- 1 presumably
- 2 basically/essentially 3 ultimately
- 1 Evidently 2
  - 2 strangely (enough) /oddly (enough) / curiously (enough)
  - 3 Practically
  - 4 ultimately
  - basically 5

- 3 1 Evidently/Apparently
  - entirely 2
  - 3 fair enough
  - frankly / to be (perfectly) honest (also possible: 4 ultimately, basically)
  - curiously (enough)/ strangely (enough) /oddly (enough) 5
  - 6 presumably
  - practically/virtually 7
  - 8 ultimately
- 4 possible answer:

When I was in my twenties, I would've been prepared to commute every day for a better job with more money. Now in my forties, I'm not sure. I wouldn't see so much of my children, and I don't think I have the energy now to spend basically 12 hours a day working.

- 5 1 purely
- 2 truly
- 3 precisely
- primarily/chiefly/ 4 predominantly
- 1 chiefly/purely
- 2 strictly
- purely 3
- purely/briefly/chiefly 4
- 7 1 primarily/chiefly/
  - predominantly
  - 2 invariably
  - briefly 3
  - precisely 4
  - briefly 5
  - 6 truly
  - precisely 7
  - simply/absolutely 8
  - purely 9
  - 10 strictly

- 9 strictly 5 invariably
- 6 simply/truly
- 7 strictly

5 briefly 6 invariably

7 concept

8 sessions

- 8 simply

Answer key 235

tasteless childish superior

exceptional/

outstanding

willing

brutal/vicious

conventional

can be deadly

always very tasty

comprehensible

far superior

Correct.

deathly

7

8

9

10

5

6

7

8

4

5

6

5

6

7

8

- naked 7 deadly 8
- 4 frankly
- virtually/practically 5
- apparently 6
- to be (perfectly) o
- honest fair enough

presumably

# Word list

The CEFR levels given in this Word list indicate the words and phrases which are from the **3000**. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

#### abnormal 79

- abolish C1 54
- abolition 54
- about as in be about to do sth B1 53
- absence (1) as in absence makes the heart grow fonder 88
- absent-minded 5
- absolute B2 52
- absolutely B2 100
- absorb (= take in liquid, etc.) B2 6; (= understand) C1 6
- abuse n, v C1 33
- accelerate C1 26
- accelerator 26
- accept (= continue in a difficult situation) B1 72; (= agree to sth; allow sb to be part of a group) B1 19; accept responsibility for sth/sb 19 acceptable B2 23 accidentally B2 63
- accommodate B2 92
- accompany B2 44
- accomplish B2 68 accomplishment C1 92 accountable (to sb) C1 66 accountant B2 64 accumulate C1 32 accuracy B2 57 accurate B2 1
- acknowledge B2 92 acknowledgement 92 acquire B2 39 acquisition (1) 69 acquit sb (of sth) 53 acre (1) 61

accuse sb (of sth) B2 95

- action Al as in actions speak louder than words 88
- activist CI 59
- adapt (to sth) B2 45
- adapt sth (for sth) B2 70
- adaptation C1 43
- additional B2 66
- address (a problem) B2 72
- adequate B2 75
- adhere to sth C1 95
- adjust (= change sth slightly) B2 11; (= get used to sth) B2 45
- adjustment (1) 11; (1) 45
- administration B2 65
- admit sb (to hospital) 52
- adolescence 21
- adolescent n C1, adj 21
- adulthood 21
- adopt (= take a point of view) B2 76
- advance n advances (in sth) 48; in advance B2 37
- advantage as in take advantage of sth 97
- adventure A2 36
- adventurous 36
- advocate n, v C1 58
- aesthetic C1 80
- affair (= event/ situation) B2 29
- affection **C1** 16 affectionate 16
- affordable B2 93 agenda B2 69 agile 10 agility 10
- aggressive B2 19 agricultural C1 93
- aid n B2 56 Airbnb<sup>™</sup> 37 aircraft B2 55 alarm n B1 as in set the alarm 31 alert adj C1 26 alert n C1 56; on the alert 26 alien adj C1 77 alike adj C1 22 all the same 87 allegation C1 62 allege C1 62 allegedly C1 62 allergic to sth 14 allergy 14 alert as in on the alert 26 allocate C1 51 almond 24 alter B2 45 alteration 45 alternate (between A and B) 78 alternatively 87 ambiguity 1 ambiguous 1 ambulance B2 27 amend v C1 45 amendment C1 45 ancient A2 73 anger B2 8 annually B2 78 anticipate B2 68 antique 73 antivirus 40 anxiety B2 18 anxious B2 18 anyway A2 87
- apologetic 3 apparent B2 22 apparently B2 100 appeal (to sb) v B2 37 appealing C1 37 appetite C1 25 appetizing 25 applaud C1 43 applause 43 appliance 46 apply (pressure) 13 appoint (1) 65 appreciation C1 92 apprentice 64 apprenticeship 64 appropriate B2 1 approval B2 20 approve of sb/sth B2 20 approximately B1 89 apricot 24 apron 29 arable 35 argument (= set of reasons) B1 76 arise B2 72 armed B2 55; the armed forces 55 arms B2 55, 56 arrogance 17 arrogant 17 arson 33 arsonist 33 articulate v 🚺, adj 72 artistic B2 78 as
  - a favour 6 a matter of fact 84

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

blind as a bat 86 deaf as a post 86 dry as a bone 86 far as I know 83 far as I'm concerned B2 87 for sth B2 87 good as gold 86 good as new 73 it happens 84 light as a feather 86 long as B2 31 red as a beetroot 86 thin as a rake 86 white as a sheet 86 ashamed B2 18 ask v as in ask (sb) a favour 6; don't ask me 83 asparagus 24 aspect B2 43 aspire (to (be) sth) C1 71 assert C1 76; assert yourself C1 16 assertion C1 76 assertive 16 assess B2 60, 76 assessment B2 60, 76 assistance B2 61 associated with sth/ sb B2 50 assume B2 57 assumption B2 57 asthma 14 astonished 18 astounded 18 asylum C1 49 at

a moment's notice 98 all 84 any minute (now) 81 home (= playing sport) 41 once B2 98 one time 74

present B2 98 short notice 98 stake 67 the scene (of sth) 27 your own pace 21 atom 79 attack n A2 as in under attack 98 attic 38 attitude B1 16 attraction B1 33 aubergine 24 audience A2 43 authentic C1 73 authority B2 (= organization) 51 authorize (1 93 authorized as in be authorized to do sth 90 automatic B2 26 avert 59 avocado 24 awareness (of sth) B2 32 away (= playing sport) 41 awkward B2 44 axe v 56 back sb/sth 56, 69 back and forth 86

back sth up 40

background noise 12

backing C1 69

backup C1 40

backwards B1 as in backwards and forwards 85

bacteria B2 15

bad-tempered 5

badge B2 29

badly-hit 68

bail C1 53

balance (A with/and B) **B1** 66 balancing act 61 bald 7

ballot n C1, v 67 B and B 37 bank statement 32 barbecue n 29 bare (1 99 barely B2 11 bark v 12 barman/barmaid 64 barrier B2 59 basically B2 38, 100 basil 24 basis B2 as in on the basis (of sth) 98 bathe 15 battle n B1, v B2 94

#### be

a good thing/job that .... 84

about to do sth B1 53

authorized to do sth 90

behind sb 72

better/worse off 66

caught up in sth 90

confined to sth 48

cremated 90

empowered to do sth **C1** 90

getting on for sth 7

in two minds about sth 2

jailed B2 90

known as/for sth 90

meant for / to do sth 90

off (= leave) 44

on the lookout for sth/sb 26 overcome with

sth B2 90

overdrawn 32

reported to be sth (1) 90

said to be sth C1 90

scheduled for sth 90

short-listed for sth 90

#### stranded 63

suspended from sth 90

the last thing on sb's mind 2

tied up (= busy) 2

up to sb 81

/get out of control 68

bear v B2 63; can't bear sth/sb 20

beat (= mix quickly) B2 24

beaten as in off the beaten track 36

beauty as in beauty is only skin-deep 88

beetroot 24

beforehand 44

beg B2 9

beggar n as in beggars can't be choosers 88

behaviour A2 as in on your best behaviour 23

behalf as in on behalf of sb / on sb's behalf C1 51

behind as in be behind sb B1 72

being B2 59

believe A1 as in believe it or not 84; you're not gonna believe this 2

bench **C1** 39

bend v B1 10

beneficial B2 3, 21

bent adj B2 10

bereaved 98

besides B2 75, 87

bet (= believe sth is true) B2 81; you bet 83; your/ the best bet 83

betray C1 77

betrayal 77

better as in be better **off** 66

better late than never 88

better safe than sorry 88

better still 46

beyond B2 35

Word list 237

#### biased 79

bid n (= attempt) C1 56; (= offer) B2 69

**bid** v (= to attempt) C1 56; (= to offer) B2 69

birth certificate 5

bite v B1 as in bite your fingernails 8

bit n as in bits and pieces 86

bitter (= sharp taste) B2 25

bitterly as in bitterly cold 28

bizarre C1 99

black eye 15

blackmail n, v 33

blackmailer 33

blame n B2 as in take the blame 4

bland 25

blank adj A2 57

blanket B2 9

blast n C1 56

blaze n 60

bleed C1 15

bleeding 15

blind adj B2 as in (as) blind as a bat 86

blind n (= for a window) 30

blink v 11

blister n 15

blizzard 28

block v 27

blockbuster 43

blow n (= shock/ disappointment) B2 56

blurred (vision) 11

blush v 8

board n as in on board B2 98

boast v C1 16, 71; n 71 bodyguard 64 bold (= of people) B2 78 bond n B2 19 **bonus** (= sth good you get) [1] 38; (= extra money) [1] 67 bookcase 30 boost n B2 41, 56; v B2 56 boot (= of a car) 26 bottle sth up 18 bound to do/be sth B2 81 bracelet 29 braise 24 brake n, v 26; as in put on the brakes 26 branch (= of an organization) B1 55 brand new 73 brave B1 20 bravery 20, 60 break down 67 break the news 4 breakthrough [] 71 breast cancer 14 breathe a sigh of relief 12 breed v C1 47

bribe v 33

bribery 33

brief (description) B2 4

briefly (= for a short time; in a few words) **B2** 100

bring (= cause sb to reach sth) B1 2

bring sb up B2 22

bring sth about (1 45

bring sth up C1 82

broad (shoulders) B2 7

broad-minded 5

broadcast n, v B2 61

broadcaster B2 61 broadly speaking 74, 87 broccoli 24

broken home 21 broom 30 browse v 40 browser **(1)** 40

browsing 40

bruise v, n 15 brutal (1) 99 bucket 29 budget n B2 32, 37, 51; v 32, 37, 51 build up 32 built-up 34 bully n, v 20 bunk bed 30 burst out laughing 12 bush B2 39 but All as in but for 84 butcher 64 button A2 9 by and large 87 any chance 84 choice 98 far 84 means of sth [] 98 mutual consent 54 no means C1 98 the way 87 cabinet C1 9 cable B2 40 calculate B2 32 calculation C1 32 call on sb C1 59 call sth off 82 can opener 25 cancel B2 82 cancer B2 14 canteen 25 can't as in can't stand sth/sb 20 cap (= for your head) B1 29 capable B2 17 capital punishment 54 capitalism C1 50 capitalist C1 50 captain B1 20

care v A2 as in couldn't care less (about sth/sb) 25 caring adj 19

carpenter 64

carry as in get/be carried away 44

carry sth out A2 62

carve 🚺 24

carving knife 24

case (= situation) A2 70; in any case C1 70, 87; in some cases 70; in that case 70; the case (= true situation) B1 22

casserole 24

cast (= of a play/film) B2 43

casual (clothes) B2 29; casual (work) C1 64

casualty C1 27, 60

catch (a cold/flu) B1 12; catch (a glimpse of sth/ sb) B2 11; be caught up in sth 90

catchy 42

cater for sth/sb C1 95

caution C1 53

cautious C1 32

cease C1 56

ceasefire 56

celery 24

cell (= room in prison) B2 54; (= smallest unit of matter) B2 79

central heating 30

centre party 50

cereal 25, 35

certainty B2 3

chair (a committee) v B2 51

chairman B2 / chairwoman/ chairperson 51

challenge n B1 65

challenging B2 78

chance A2 as in a real/ good chance 41; by any chance 84; my last/big chance 41; no chance 83; take a chance (on sth) 63

change n Al as in a major change 45;

238 Word list

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

change (gear) v Al 26

channel (of communication) 72

chaos 🚺 27

chaotic 27

characteristic of sb B2 22, 91

characteristic n B2 22

charge v (= run at sb) 10; charge sth (up) B1 46; charge sb (with sth) B2 53

#### charger 46

charity as in charity begins at home 88

**charm** *n* (= the power of pleasing or attracting people) **C1** 17; (= a pleasant or attractive quality or feature) 36

charming **B2** 17, 36

chase v B2 10

check/checked (shirt) 29

cheek (= on the face) B2 7, 13; (= rudeness) 23

cheeky 23

cheer v B2 12, 94; n B2 94

chest of drawers 30

chief n B2 56

chief constable 53

chief executive 64

chiefly 100

childish 99

childlike 99

chilly 28

choice A2 as in by choice 98

chop v B2 24

chorus 42

chubby 7

circumstance B2 6

cite B2 57

citizen B2 51

civil war 47

civil servant 64

civil service 64

civilian C1 55

clap v 43

clapping 43

clarify B2 93

classic adj B2 43

clear (= remove) B1 47; clear sb (of sth) B1 56

clear (sth) up 44

click (on sth) v B1 40

click n 40 climax n 41

climb (= increase in value/ amount) B2 69

cling (to sth) C1 95

clinical C1 52

clip n (= part of film) B2 61; (= for fastening) 73

clip v (= fasten) 73

closely B2 28; closelyfought/contested 58

closure C1 67

coalition C1 58

coherence 76

coherent 76

coincide (with sth) C1 95

colander 24

collaborate C1 92

collaboration (with sb) C1 66

collapse (= fall to the ground) B2 60; (= decrease suddenly in value) 69

collide with sth/sb 27

collision C1 27

comb v 9

combat n C1 55, 94; v C1 94

combination B2 8, 35

come (with/in sth) (= sold or produced with sth) B1 2; come to a standstill 28; come top/bottom 71

come across (as sth) 17

come out 82

come over (as sth) 17

comfort B2 37

command v (= be in charge of sth) B2 55 concept B2 100

concern 4

concern v B2 34

sth) B2 34

concerning prep 58

conclusion 75

concrete n B2 80

condemn C1 76

condemnation 76

conduct v (= organize an

activity) B2 62, 79

confer (with sb) C1 95

confidence (in sth/sb) B2

confine sb/sth in sth C1

54; be confined to sth 48

conduct n B2 21

confess B2 82

confident B1 17

confidential 52

confinement 54

conflict n 58

confront C1 72

sth) (1 95

conscientious 17

conscious B2 15

consensus C1 58

consent 54

consent n Cl as in by

common/mutual

consequently B2 75

conservation B2 47

conservative adj, n B2 50

consider sb/sth to be sth /

239

Word list

conservatism 50

conserve C1 46

as sth B1 23, 47

considerable B2 60

confirmation C1 61

congratulate sb (on

connection B1 as in in connection with sth 59

17,97

condone 76

conclusion B1 76; in

concerned (about/for

concern n B2 34; sb's main

command of sth n (= knowledge/ability) 76

comment n A2 6, 23; no comment 6

commentary C1 77

commentator C1 61

commission B2 67

committee B2 51

commodity C1 57

commonly B2 14

sb A2 82

communism 50

communist adj 🚺 , n 50

commute v 100

companionship 77

company (= being with people) B1 44

comparable C1 3, 99

comparative B2 99

compatible (= with people)
91; compatible with sth/
sb (= of a computer) 97

compelling C1 42

compensate (for sth/sb) C1 82, 95

compensation C1 75

completion B2 92

complex adj B1 42

complicate 42

complicated B2 42

comply (with sth) [1] 80

component B2 40

compost 39

comprehensible 99

comprehensive B2 99

comprise B2 55

compromise n, v C1 58

concentrate B1 11

concentration B2 11

compulsory B2 55 conceal C1 7

considerate 16 considering prep 75 consist of sth B1 55 consistency C1 41 consistent 62 21, 41 conspiracy B2 56 constant B2 10 constantly B2 8 constraint C1 80 construct v B2 80 construction B2 80; under construction 98 consult B2 14, 45 consultation C1 14, 45 consume B1 46 consumer B1 46 consumption B2 46 contemporary B2 73 contempt for sth/sb C1 97 contender C1 41 contest n B2 58 contract n B2 38, 70 contrast (with sth) v B1 62 contrary n Cl as in on the contrary 83 contribute B2 44 contribution B2 44 control n A2 as in be/get out of control 68; under control 68 controversial B2 78 controversy B2 78 convalesce 52 convalescence 52 convenience B2 75 convenient B1 34 convention **B2** 48, 77 conventional B2 48, 99 conversion C1 73 convert (sth) (into sth) B2 73 convey (sth to sb) B2 77 convict sb (of sth) [] 53

convinced B2 43 convincing B2 43 cooperate (with sb) C1 58 cooperation 93 cooperative C1 93 cope with sth B2 21 core adj B2 58 corkscrew n 24 corporate B2 69 correspond (with sth/ sb) C1 95 cosmetic surgery 52 could Al as in could do with sth 83; couldn't care less (about sth/sb) 25 council B1 51 councillor C1 51 count v (= say numbers) A2 6; (= calculate a number) A2 6; (= include) B2 6 county B2 61 coup **C1** 69 courage **B2** 20, 60 courageous 20, 60 courgette 24 courteous 23 courtesy C1 23 coverage B2 62 crack v, n B2 12 crash n, v 12 crawl (= on hands and knees) C1 9; (= move slowly of traffic) 2 creamy 25 create B1 as in create an illusion 7 creation B2 92 credit n B2 as in in credit 32 cremate as in be cremated 90 crew **B2** 70 crisis B2 54 criterion/criteria B2 42, 76

critical (= dangerous) B2 27

crucial B2 10, 21 cure n, v B2 48 curiously as in curiously enough 100

custody (= being in prison) C1 53; (= a legal right) **C1** 62 customary 23 cut sth back 39 cutback as in make cutbacks 32 cute B2 7 daily adv B1 78 dairy B2 35 damaging **C1** 21, 72 damp adj 34, 40 danger All as in in danger of extinction 47 dare v B2 as in don't you dare 63 darkness B2 31; in total darkness 31 day-to-day 74 deadline B2 68 deadly B2 63, 99 deaf 12; (as) deaf as a post 86 deal n B1 56, 69 death toll 60 deathly 99 debate n B2 58 debit card 32 debt B2 32 deceive 82 decent (= honest and fair) B2 16; (= good enough quality) B2 34 decisive C1 16 decline v, n B2 47 decorate B1 38 decorating 38

criticism B2 22

criticize B2 22

cross (your legs) 8

crop n B2 35

decorative 47

dedicate yourself to sth 20

dedicated to sb/sth C1 97

deep A2 35

deep as in in a deep sleep 31

deep-fat fryer 24

deep-fry 24

deeply B2 23

deer 11

defeat n B2 41

defect n C1 79

defective 79

defence B2 62

defend B2 62

defensive C1 8

defiant 77

deficit (1) 32

defy **C1** 77

degree (= certain amount/ level of sth) B2 66

delegate (sth to sb) 68

deliberate B2 60

deliberately B2 60

delicate **C1** 61, 63

delight n 36

delighted B2 18

delightful 36

deliver (= give a message, etc.) B1 42

delivery B2 42

demanding 10

demonstrate (= protest) 59; (= show) **B2** 78

demonstration B2 59

demonstrator 59

denial C1 92

dense (fog) C1 28

dental 67

deny B2 92

department A2 65

dependent on sb/sth B2 28,97

240

conviction (= belief) [1] 79

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

depending on sb/ sth B1 78 depict C1 77 deposit n B2 38, 94; v C1 94 depressed B2 18, 34 depressing B2 34 depression B2 18 deprivation 21 deprive sb (of sth) <a>[<1]</a> 21,95 deprived 21 deserve B2 62, 78 desirable C1 34 desire n B2 49 desperate B2 18 desperation 18 despise 20 destructive C1 93 detailed (description) B2 4 detain C1 53 detect B2 92 detection **G1** 92 deter 54 deteriorate C1 71 determine B2 42 determination 43 deterrent 54 detest 20 devastate C1 60 devastated 18 devastation 60 device A2 73 devise C1 10 devote sth (to sth/ sb) B2 95 diabetes 14 diagnose C1 48 diagnosis C1 48 diagnostic 48 die out 47 differ (from sth/sb) B2 95 differentiate C1 55

dig v B2 39 dignified 20 dignity C1 20 directly B1 63 disadvantage B1 34 disapproval 20 disapprove of sb/sth 20 disapproving 1 disaster A2 81 discard C1 14 discharge sb (from hospital) C1 52 discipline B2 33 disclose C1 18 discomfort 11 discourteous 23 discrimination G1 49 discussion A2 as in under discussion 98 disgust n 18 disgusted 18 dislike n B1 as in take an instant/immediate dislike to sb 19 dislocate 15 disloyal 91 dismiss B2 65, 92 dismissal C1 92 disobedience 59 disobedient 91 disorder B2 14 display v B2 8, 78; n 8 disposable 44 disposal (1) 46 dispose of sth C1 46, 95 dispute n C1 67, 94; v C1 94 disruption **C1** 28, 59 disruptive 66 dissatisfied 71 dissolve C1 14

a distinction 55

distinguish (between people or things) B2 55; distinguish sth/sb (from sth/sb) B2 95

distract sb (from sth) B2 95

distress n C1 20, 61

distribute B2 50

distribution B2 50

district B2 34

disturb B2 31

disturbing CI 99

dive (= into water) B2 9 diverse B2 36, 55, 66

diversification 70

diversify 70

diversity B2 55

divert sth/sb (from sth) C1 47

divide B2 58

division **B2** 58 do (= be enough/

acceptable) B2 2; do sb a favour 6; do sb good 87: do sth at the last minute 74

domestic (= of animals) B2 73

dominance C1 58

dominant B2 41, 58

dominate 41

domination 41

don't as in don't ask me 83; don't judge a book by its cover 88; don't you dare 63

donor C1 48

doorbell 30

dosage 14

dose **C1** 14

doubt 81

downpour 28

dozen B2 30

drag v B2 9

draft n, v B2 94

doubt n B1 as in no

downwards **B2** 23, 40

distinction Cl as in make

drain v CI 24

draw v B2 as in draw sb's attention to sth 7

drawback 34

drawer 30

dream n A2 as in a dream come true 84

dressing 15

dress up 29

drift into sth 33

dripping 30

driving licence 5

drop out (of sth) 71

drought B2 28

drown G1 61

dry adj A2 as in (as) dry as a bone 86

dubbed C1 43

dull (= of weather) C1 28

dustbin 30

dynamic B2 16, 71

dynamism 71

early adj Al as in an early night 44

earth as in what, etc. on earth 84

earth tremor 60

ease v C1 11

easy as in take it easy 36

eco- (abbreviation of ecology) 46

economize 32

ecstatic 18

edit (a film, etc.) 61; (= prepare for publication) B2 92

edited 61

edition B2 92

educational B1 93

efficiency 🚺 17

efficient B2 17

effort B1 as in make an effort 4

egg Al as in put all your eggs in one basket 88

Word list

241

electorate 58

electrician 64

elegant B2 29

eligible C1 51

eliminate B2 11

elimination 11

elsewhere B2 65

embark on sth 95

embody C1 77

emerge (= become known) B2 62; (= come out of a hidden place) B2 62; (= start to exist) B2 62

emergence of sth/ sb C1 97

emigrate 49

emigration 49

eminent 99

empirical C1 79

empower [1] as in be empowered to do sth 90

en suite 38

enable sb to do sth B2 37, 48

enclosed 14

encompass 🔇 55

encounter v (= experience sth difficult) B2 66; (= meet unexpectedly) B2 42

encounter n B2 42

encounter v B2 66

encouragement (1) 92

end n as in in the end A2 87; the end justifies the means 88

end up (doing sth) B1 47

endangered 47

endless (1) 68

endure C1 63

energetically 13

energy-saving 46

enforce C1 45

Word list

242

enforcement 🔄 45

engage (= interest/ attract) B2 42 enhance B2 7

enlist 55

enlisted 55

enough as in strangely/ oddly/curiously enough 100

enrol on sth [ 52

ensure B2 51

enterprise 🚺 66

enthusiasm B2 16

enthusiastic B2 16

entire B2 59

entirely B2 100

entitle (sb to sth) C1 67

entrance hall 38

entrepreneur B2 64

equivalent to sth adj B2 97

era B2 48

eradicate 48

erect C1 59

escalate C1 72 essential B1 10

essentially (32) 38, 100

establish (= start or create sth) B2 31; (= discover or prove the facts of a situation) B2 42

estate B2 61

estimate n B2, v B2 30, 73

ethic **B2** 16

ethical B2 16

ethnic B2 49

evacuate [ 60

evacuation 60

evaluate B2 76

evaluation B2 76

even as in even so 87 ever as in ever since B2 63

evidently 100

evil adj B2 77, 99; n B2 77

evolution B2 45

evolve B2 45

exact adj A2 1

exaggerate C1 7, 72

-

exaggeration 7

example B1 as in set an example 4 exterior 30, 38

extinct 47

extinction 47

extract n B2 94

extreme B2 50

extremism 50

extract sth (from sb) v 94

extraordinary B2 74

extremist n C1, adj 50

eye n as in an eye for an

eye 88; eye contact 8;

face n as in a familiar face 4

fall v B1 as in fall asleep 31

extrovert n, adj16

eye strain 11

eyebrow 13

eyesight 11

eyewitness 27

fabulous B2 43

face up to sth 72

facilitate (1) 45

fair enough 100

failure B2 71

faith B2 49

fame B2 20

fancy dress 29

far as in by far 84

asleep 31

fatal C1 14

fate **C1** 77

fattening 25

fault n B2 19

favour n (= sth that helps

feature n (= part of face/

sth/sb) 61 50

favour v B2 50

favourable 99

body) B1 7

sb) B1 6; be in favour (of

faulty 79

fancy sb B1 8; fancy

fast adv B2 as in fast

(doing) sth BI 44

external adj B2 40

exceed (= do more than you are allowed to do; be greater than a particular number/amount) B2 14

#### excellent A1 78

exception as in take exception to sth 23; with the exception of sth/ sb C1 97

exceptional C1 23, 99

excess C1 14

excessive B2 80

exclude sb (from sth) B2 95

exclusive C1 37

exclusively C1 54

executive n B2 64

exemplify 93

exhausted 31

exit (= of a motorway) n B2, v C1 27

expectation B2 43

expenditure C1 32

expense B2 37

experimental C1 79

expire 🚺 14

expiry date 14

exploit C1 70

exploitation C1 70 exploration B2 76

explore B2 76

expose (= show sth that is hidden) B2 62; (= tell the true facts about sth) B2 77

exposure to sth B2 97

extend 82 38

extension 38

extensive B2 27

extent 50

extended (= of a building) (1), (= of a piece of writing) 76

extent B2 as in to a large

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

extent 85: to some

feedback B2 70

fellow adj B2 62

feminist adj C1 77

fertile 39

figurative 1

figure (= body) 7

filter n, v C1 94

filthy 34

finance n B2 65

final adj A1 as in a final resort 84

financial B1 65

findings B2 62

fingertip 13

fire v (= dismiss) B1 65

fire brigade 60

firefighter 60

firm n B2 70

firmly **B2** 13

first aid 15

first adv as in first and foremost 85; first come, first served 88

fist as in clenched fist 8

fit in (with sb/sth) 66

flash n B2 28

flatmate 38

flattering 7

flee **C1** 49

flexibility C1 37

flexible B2 37

flip-flop n 29

flirt (with sb) 8

float (= in water) B2 61; (= suggest an idea) 69

flood (= water) B1 68; (= a large quantity of sth) B2 68

flourish C1 71

flourishing 36

foil v 56

fold v B1 9; fold your arms 8

follow as in follow in sb's footsteps 22 food processor 24

foot as in put your feet up 39; put your foot in it 23

footstep 12

for as in for my part 49; for some reason 84 for the most part 49; for the time being 74

forehead 13

forgive B2 19

formally 61

former **B2** 69, 73

formerly B2 73

fortunate B2 73

fortune B2 62

forward planning 71

foster (= help/ develop) C1 66

found v B2 70

foundation(s) (= of a building) C1 80

founder n B2 70

fracture v 15

fragment n B2 61

framework B2 80

frankly 💶 100

fraud B2 33

free as in free of charge 52

freelance adj, adv 66

freeze v (= of a computer) 40

frequency B2 35

frequent B2 35

fresh (= new) B2 69

fringe benefit 67

frog A2 39

from as in from time to time 74

fruity 25

frustrated adj 🚺 68

frying pan 24

fulfil B2 66

fulfilling 66

full as in in full **C1** 98 fully-booked 37 functional C1 93

sth across 82

the credit 4

the sack 65

aim) 83

there (= achieve your

through (to sb) 82

through sth 82

giant adj B1, n B2 98

give as in give or take 89;

give sb a hug/tap, etc 13;

away (= on holiday) A2 37

give sb a lift 81; give sb

ghost story 43

the sack 65

given (that) 37

glamorous 7, 29

glimpse n C1 11

downhill 71

for a stroll 10

strength 71

hiking 10

other 83

from strength to

in one ear and out the

off (= leave a place) B2 81

off (= ring) B2 31

changing) 34

red 8

on (= happening) 34

on (= continue without

on (= of time: pass) 34

through (a phase) 21

sth; experience sth;

perform a series of

actions) 82

to sleep 31

go-ahead n 56

through sth (= examine

golden (opportunity) B2 1

Word list 243

go

glance at sth/sb 11

ginger 24

girder 80

give in 67

fundamental 55

funding B2 51

funds n B2 47

furnished 38

furthermore B2 75

future n Al as in in the near future B2 98

gain (wisdom) B2 21

gale 28

gallop 63

gang B2 33

gap as in gap in the market 70

gatecrasher 44

gaze at sth/sb 11

gear 🚺 26

generalization as in make generalizations 8

generally speaking 74

generate B2 46

generous B1 37

genre **B2** 42

gently 13

genuine (= real) 62 73; (= showing what you think) 62 16

gesture 8

### get

(back) to sleep 31

(sb/sth to do sth) 2

away from it all 36 away with sth 66

carried away 44

enjoyable) 44

hold of sth 30

for sth 7

out of sth 2

over sth 82

sb down 72

in the way of sth 66

on as in be getting on

somewhere/nowhere 71

going (= start to become

good adj as in (as) good as gold 86; (as) good as new 73; good of sb (to do sth) 44

good n as in do sb good 85

goodness as in goodness knows 83

gorgeous B2 7

govern B2 58

grab v B2 13; grab sb's attention 57

graffiti 34

grand adj B2 37

grant n B2 51

grant (bail) v B2 53

grapefruit 24

grass n A2 as in the grass is always greener (on the other side) 88

grate v 24

grater 24

greasy 25, 30

greed 20

greedy 20

green adj B1 51

greenhouse B2 39

grounds (for sth/doing sth) 82 53

group therapy 54

growing adj 72

**guarantee** n **B2** 37, 66; v **B2** 37, 66

guaranteed adj 66

guard n B1, v B1 55

guess v as in guess what 84

guest house 37

guidance C1 3

guidelines B2 3, 7

habitat B2 47

had as in had better B2 44

half Al as in in half 9; half a dozen 30

halt v C1 67

hand v as in hand in your notice 65

244 Word list

handle (emotions, etc.) B2 18

handling (1) 3 handy (1) 34

handyman 64

hang around/about 34

hang on B2 83

hard adj A1 as in it's hard to say 22

hard-wearing 5

harsh C1 33

#### hate v A1, n B1 94

have as in have a (good) laugh 44; have a part to play (in sth) 49; have second thoughts (about sth) 2; have sth/sb in mind C1 83; having said that 37

hay fever 14

hazard n C1 26, 54

hazardous 26

head n (= of an organization) A2 51

head v (= be in charge) B1 51

headlight 26

heal B2 15

health care 52

heart Bl as in a heart of gold 1

heart attack 14

heartbroken 18

heat (sth) (up) 25

heatwave 28

heaven B2 62

heavy (sleeper) B1 31

hedge n 39 heighten (1) 93

helicopter B1 27, 55

hell (= in religion) B2; (= a very unpleasant experience) B2; (= a swear word) 62

hen party 29

hence 75

herb **B2** 24

herd **B2** 35 hereditary 79 heredity 79 hero A2 20 heroic 20 heroine 20 heroism 20 hesitate **B2** 92 hesitation 92 hideous 7 high *as in* a high profile 51 high-heeled shoe 29 hike v 10

hindsight as in with hindsight 74

hit (single) n A2 42

hit v **B1** 60

hold n as in on hold 98

hollow B2 39

holy **B2** 16

home as in at home (= playing sport) 41

homeless adj **B2** 34

honest B1 as in to be (perfectly) honest 100

honour n B2 as in in honour of sb/sth 98

hoover n, v 30

hopeless 71 horizontal 7

horn **C1** 12

host n B1 44

hostess 44

hostile (= unfriendly) C1 49; (= in business) 69

hostility 49

household 3

housewife/ househusband 64

housing B2 3 how as in How come? 83; how dare you 63

however as in however much/hard, etc. 22

hug v, n 13

human being 59 human race 3 human resources 65 humanitarian (1) 3 humanity (1) 3 humid 28 humidity 28 humorous (2) 23 humorous (2) 23 hundreds (of sth) (A) 15 hunting (3) 56

hypothesis B2 79

I as in I couldn't care less 25; I haven't the faintest idea 83; I mean A2 81; I wouldn't mind 84

icon **B2** 40

identity card 5

ideological **CI** 50

ideology CI 50

idiot C1 17

idiotic 17

if as in if all else fails 84; if only **B2** 84; if you don't/wouldn't mind 84

ignore B1 32

illustrate B2 76

imaginative 78

immature 17

illustration B2 76

immediate adj B1 as in

take an immediate

dislike to sb 19

immigration **B2** 49

immune system 79

immune to sth B2 97

immigrant B1 49

imminent 🚺 69

immunity 79

impact n B1 21

implement v B2 45

implication C1 77

imply **B2** 77

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

implementation [] 45

impose sth on/upon 45

impress B2 23, 37 impressed B2 23 impressive B1 37 imprison C1 54 imprisonment C1 54

#### in

a deep sleep 31 a minute 83 a row 41 a whisper 12 advance 37 any case [1] 70, 87 conclusion 75 connection with sth C1 59 credit 32 danger (of extinction) A2 47 decline 47 excess of sth 14 favour of sb/sth B1 50 full **C1** 98 half 9 honour of sth/sb 98 office 98 part B2 49 place B2 15 possession of sth 98 power 98 reserve 55 retrospect 74 some cases A2 70 tears 12, 18 that case 70 the end A2 87 the middle of nowhere 37 the near future **B2** 98 the public eye 62 the public interest 61 the region of sth 89 the short/medium/long term 46

the wake of sth C1 69 total darkness 31 view of sth 75 your own time 21 inability C1 14 inaccurate 1 inadequate C1 75 inappropriate [1] incapable 91 incentive B2 21, 64 inch n B2 63, 74 incident B2 27, 77 incidentally 87 inclined to do sth [] 67 inclusion C1 3 inclusive 3 incoherent 76 income **B2** 32 incompatible 91 incomprehensible 99 inconsiderate 16 inconsistent 41 inconvenience 75 increasingly B2 35 incredible A2 74 ineligible 51 inevitable B2 19 infamous C1 99 infect C1 48 infection **B2** 15, 48 infectious 15, 48 inflexible 37 influential C1 21 inform B2 52 infrequent 35 inherent (in sth) [C1] 77, 97 inherit (qualities/features) b2 22; (money/land) B2 77 inheritance 77 inhuman 91 initial adj B2 19 initially B2 19

initiative B2 66 inmate C1 54 inner (city) B2 34 innovate 70 innovation B2 70 innovative **B2** 70, 73 inoffensive 1, 23 insert (sth into sth) B2 79,80 insertion C1 79 inside lane 27 insight (into sth) B2 66 insignificant 72 insist (on sth/doing sth) B2 95 insoluble 72 insomnia 31 inspect (1) 92 inspection C1 79 inspector B2 53 inspiration C1 20 inspirational 20 inspire B2 20 install B2 40 installation 40 instance B2 47 instant (food) adj B2 25; take an instant dislike to sb 19 instantly B2 57 institute B2 54 institution B2 54 insufficient C1 91 insult n, v C1 1 insulting 1 insurance B2 65 integration (into sth) C1 49 integrity C1 16 intended (for sth) B2 39 intense B2 18, 60 intensify C1 93 intensity C1 60

intent on/upon sth / doing sth 97 intentional 60 interact (with sb) B2 95 interfere (in sth) C1 71 interference C1 71 interior n C1 38 internal B2 40 interpret B2 (= explain the meaning of sth) B2 1; (= decide that sth has a particular meaning) B2 8 interpretation B2 1,8 interrupt B2 68 introvert n, adj 16 introverted adj 16 invalid 91 invariably 100 invest in sth B1 70 investigation B2 as in under investigation 98 investment (= sth worth buying) B2 46; (= investing money) B2 70 invisible [1] involvement (in sth) (1 97 ironic C1 1 ironically C1 1 ironing board 30 irony C1 1 irrational 77 irrelevant (1) 42 irreplaceable 3 irritable 31 irritate 11 irritating 12 irritation 11 isolated B2 35 isolation C1 35 issue v (a fine, etc.) B2 53; (= make a statement) B2 69 it's as in it's a small world

88; it's about/high time 74; it's hard to say 22; it's true (that ...) 87

jail v B2 as in be jailed 90

jaw 13

jeweller 64

jewellery A2 64

job as in be a good job 84

joy 18

joyful 18

judge v B) as in don't judge a book by its cover 88

judgement B2 23

juicy 25

jump v as in jump to conclusions 8

junction C1 27

junior 52

junk food 5

justice (= the fair treatment of people; the legal system) B2 54

### justifiable 54

justification 🚺 54, 76

justify B2 37, 54, 76

keep (= remain fresh) 2; keep (animals) 35; keep sth a secret 4

keep ahead (of sb) 70

kerb 26

kettle 9

key sth (in) **B1** 40

key to sth n (= an important
 thing) 7

kid v as in you're kidding 83

kidnap 🚺 33, 56

kidnapper 33, 56

kidnapping 33

kilt 29

kind of 89

kitchen scales 24

kneel down 9

know v A1 as in be known as/for sth B1 90; you never know 81, 84

knowledgeable 17

246 Word list

labour n (= people who work) B2 35

labourer 35

lacking (in sth) adj 17

land v A2 74

landfill 46

landlady 38

landlord C1 38

lane (= road) B2 27

## lap (1) 25

largely B2 38

last adj A1 as in a last resort 84

last v (= continue; be enough) A2 71

last-minute 5

lasting adj 74

late adj as in a late night 44; (= no longer alive) 22

laugh n as in have a (good) laugh 44

launch v (= start a computer program) B2 40; (= start an activity) B2 40, 70

law and order 86

lawnmower 39

laze around/about 36

lead n, v B1 94

leadership B2 69

leaflet B2 14

league B2 41

lean (towards sb) B2 8

lean against sth B2 9

lean adj 25

lease n 38

leave sth to/with sb B2 2; leave sth to/till the last minute 74

leave n (= holiday) B2 67

left-wing 50

legalize 93

lemon-squeezer 24

lentil 24

let me see/think 83

let sb down 71

letter box 30

liable to sth C1 97

loo 30

look back (on sh) 74

look out for sth/sb 8

look up (= improve) 19

lookout as in be on the

lord (= a title) B2 61; the

lose as in lose face 84;

love n Al as in love is

lose your temper 20

luck A2 as in (the) best of

lookout for sb/sth 26

look up to sb 20, 82

loose-fitting 29

loosen 93

Lords 56

blind 88

lower adj 63

loyal B2 91

luck 83

lucrative 64

lung cancer 14

luxurious 37

luxury B1 37

lyrics B2 42

magistrate C1 53

magnificent B2 73

maintain (= in good

maintenance (1) 39

majority B2 58

make

major (change) A2 45

(= think or calculate) 2

a speedy recovery 63

a distinction 55

a note of sth 68

an effort 4

cutbacks 32

generalizations 8

concern 4

main Al as in sb's main

condition) B2 39; (= at a

certain standard) B2 60

lump 14

loyalty card 5

liberal adj, n C1 50

liberalism 50

librarian 64

lick v 23

lie-in as in have a lie-in 31

life expectancy 5

lifeboat 70

lift n B1 as in give sb a lift 81

light adj A2 as in (as) light as a feather 86

light sleeper 31

lightly 13

like prep Al as in like me/ you/him, etc. 81

likelihood 🔄 3, 47

limitation (on sth) B2 97 literal 1

literally B2 1

litter B2 34

live v A1 as in live in peace 49

lively B2 16, 34

liven sth up 44

live stream n 61

live-stream v 61

living n (= money you earn) B1 35

load v B2 27

load n (= sth being carried) B2 27; (= the amount of weight/pressure) 80; loads (of sth) 89

loan n B2 70

loathe 20

loft 38

lock sb up 54

log 🚺 27

logic (1) 93

logical B2 93

long-lived 79

long-standing (1) 5

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

long-term B2 14

it (= various meanings) 81 sth of sb 17 sb feel welcome 44 sb redundant 65 sb/sth do sth 81 sth/sb out 11 up (= comprise) 55 up (for sth/sb) 95 up for sth 82 make-up B2 7 mango 24 manifesto 51 manners A2 23 manslaughter 33 manual adj 26, 64 manufacture B2 70 manufacturer 70 manufacturing B2 65 march v C1 10, 29 market n Bl as in on the market 38 market research 65 mass adj, n B2 57; massmarket 57 massage v, n 13 massive B2 27 **mat** 30 matching B2 29 mate n, v B2 94 maternity 67 matter as in as a matter of fact 84; no matter what/ how, etc. **B2** 68 mature adj (of behaviour) **C1** 17; (= fully grown) **C1** 39 maximize C1 93 may as in may as well do

sth 83 mayor B2 51

meadow 35

mean v as in be meant for / to do sth 90

mean adj (= wanting to keep money) 37; (= unpleasant) 19

means (of sth / doing sth) B2 50; by means of sth, by no means 98

measurement **B2** 92

mechanism B2 73

medium adj B1 25

meet (the needs of sb/ sth) **B2** 80

melody (1) 42

memorable B2 42

mention v A2 as in not to mention C1 84

mercy **C1** 77

merger C1 69

merit n C1 78

merry as in the more the merrier 88

mess n 81; make a mess of sth 81

metaphor B2 1

metaphorical 1

middle n A2 as in in the middle of nowhere 37

might as in might as well do sth 83

migrant 49

migration C1 49

mild (weather) B1 28

military n, adj B2 55

military service 55

mind n A2 as in my mind is like a sieve 86; be in two minds about sth 2; have sth in mind 83; my mind is/goes a complete blank 83; on my mind 31 mind v as in mind you 85

mineral B2 48

minimize C1 59

minimum adj B2 67

minister B2 56

minor adj B2 14, 72

minority (= within a community) B2 49 minute n Al as in (at) any minute (now) 81; do sth at the last minute 74; in a minute, the minute (that ...) 83

#### miscalculate 91

miserable (= making you feel very unhappy or uincomfortable) B2 37; (= very unhappy or uncomfortable) B2 52

misery C1 20 misinterpret 8

misjudge 91

mislead 91

missile C1 55

mission 59

mist 11

mistake sb/sth for sb/sth 3

mistreat 91

misty 11

misunderstand 91

- mix v B1 24
- mixed as in mixed farming 35; mixed feelings 35; mixed race 35

moderate adj C1, n 50

modernize 93

modify B2 73

molecular 79

molecule 79

moment Al as in at a moment's notice 98

money A1 as in put money into sth, take money **out** 32

monitor v B2 46

monthly adv 78

moon as in over the **moon** 18

mop n 29

moral adj B2 33

morals n B2 33

more as in more or less B2 87

- moreover B2 75 mortgage n B2 38

mother tongue 5 motion B2 80 motivated 10, 17 motivation B2 10, 17 mount v B2 69 mount up 32 movement B2 59 mow (the lawn) 39 mud B1 39 muddy 39 mug n 25 mug v 33 mugger 33 mugging 33 multiple adj B2 58 multiply B2 72 mutate 79 mutation 79 mutual C1 66 mysterious B2 63 mysteriously 63 naked **B2** 99 nap n as in have a nap 31 narrative n B1 76 narrator 76 narrow adj A2 7; a narrow escape 4 narrow-minded 5 nasty 62 19 native adj B1 49

nature (= character) B1 21; (= physical world) A2 39

near adj B1 as in in the near future B2 98

nearby B2 34

necessarily as in not necessarily B1 8

neglect n, v C1 33

negotiate B2 58

negotiation B2 58

nerves B2 68

nest C1 39

network B1 61

nevertheless B2 35, 75, 87

news A1 as in no news is good news 88

next to (nothing) 73

nightdress/nightie 31

nightmare (= bad dream) B2 12, 31; (= bad experience) B2 12

no as in no comment 6; no way [A2], no chance 83; no matter what/ how, etc. [B2] 68; no wonder 84

nod v C1 9

nominate C1 78

nomination C1 78

nonetheless C1 75

nostalgia 49

nostalgic 49

not as in not necessarily B1 8; not to mention C1 84

note n A1 as in make a note of sth 68

note sth down 68

notice n B1 as in take no notice of sb/sth 52

noticeable 3

notify C1 61

notion (of sth) B2 23

notorious C1 99

now as in now and again 85; now and then 85

nowadays B2 64 numerous B2 60 number plate 26

nurture n, v 21

nut A2 24

obedient 91

object v B2 92

objection C1 92

objective adj B2 79 objectivity 79

obligatory 55 oblige C1 75 observant 8

Word list

248

#### observation B2 8

observe B2 8

obstacle B2 71

obvious B1 22, 45

occasionally B2 35

occupational as in occupational hazard 35

occupy (= enter a place and take control of it) (1), (= fill or us a space / an amount of time) (2), (= live or work in a room, etc.) (1) 59

occur B1 79

odd adj (= approximately) 89; (= not regular or fixed) 28

oddly as in oddly enough 100

odds and ends 85

off adv A2 as in be off (= leave) 44

off as in off the beaten track 36; off the top of my head 83

offence (= a crime) B2 53; take offence (at sth) 23

offender B2 33

offensive adj B2 1, 23

office B2 as in in office 98

official adj B1 91

#### on

a daily/weekly basis 68 and off 85

behalf of sb / on sb's

behalf C1 51

board B2 98

good/friendly/bad, etc. terms (with sb) 98

hold 98

my mind 31

purpose 98

standby 46

the alert 26

the basis of sth B2 98 the contrary 83

the market 38

the part of sb / on sb's part C1 57

the whole 34, 87

once as in at once B2 98; once bitten, twice shy 88

one as in one (thing) at a time 68

ongoing B2 45, 47

only as in only just 11

open-minded 5

open-plan 38

opening (= beginning; the act of making sth open; a small hole) B2 57

#### operating theatre 48

operation (= surgery) B1 48; (= organized activity) B2 55

opponent B2 41

oppose B2 50

opposed to sth B2 50

opposite n A1 as in the exact/complete opposite 4

opposition B2 50

opt for sth C1 37

optician 11

optional 55

or as in or so B2 89; or something/ somewhere, etc. 89; or thereabouts 89

organ (= of the body) B2 48

origin B2 as in country of origin 49

originality 43

otherwise B2 57, 75

out as in out of date 73; out of respect (for sb) 98; out of touch (with sth) 98; out of work 65

outcome B2 69

#### outfit B2 29

outgoings 32 outline v, n B2 76 outside n A2 30 outskirts 35

outstanding (= excellent) B2 23, 78, 99

over as in over the moon 18

overall adv B2 38

overcharge 91

overcome (a problem) B2 71, 72, 82; be overcome with sth (1) 90

overdo 91

overdrawn as in be overdrawn 32

overestimate v 41, 91

overhear 12

oversleep 31

overtake 26

overweight 7

sth) (1 68

favour 6

own up to sth 82

ownership B2 50

own pace 21

packaging 73

packed lunch 25

panel (= group of

panic n B2, v 63

parachute 55

partly B2 50

partnership B2 70

pass away/on 22

pass sth on 35

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

parental C1 33

specialists) B2 78; (= piece

of metal, glass, etc) B2 80

part A1 66; have a part to

play (in sth) 44; in part

B2 49; on the part (of

participant (in sth) B2 52

pass v as in pass the buck 4

sb) / on sb's part [] 57

pacify 93

pace B2 21, 57; at your

overwhelmed (by

overwhelming C1 68

owe B2 32; owe sb a

passage B2 34 passion B1 16 passionate B2 16, 71 pat v 13 patience B2 19 patient adj B2 19 pause n, v B2 94 pavement 26 pay and display machine 26 pay (sth) off 32 PC 53 peace A2 as in live in peace 49 peak (1) 69 peculiar C1 99 pedestrian crossing 26 peel v 24 peeler 24 peer pressure 21 penalty (= punishment) B2 33 pension B2 67 perfect (example) adj A1 4 perk n 67 persist C1 14 persistent C1 14 personally (= by a particular person) B1 22; personally speaking 74 perspective 72 phase n B2 21 phenomenon B2 79 philosophy B2 58 pick sth up (= get a skill, habit, etc.) 22 pile-up 27 pile n as in piles of sth 89 pinch v B2 13 pitch n B2 41 pity n B2 34; that's a pity, what a pity 34 place n A1 as in in place B2 15

plague (= disease; serious problem) 68 plain B2 29 plaster n 15 play as in play a part (in sth) B1 21 play down 72 plea **C1** 56 pledge n, v C1 56 plot n, v B2 56 plug (sth) in 9, 40 plug n C1 30 plumber 30, 64 plummet 69 plunge C1 69 poacher 47 poaching 47 point sth out B1 47 police constable 53 police officer 53 police v 51 policing 51 pollen 14 pond (1) 39 poor (= low quality) B1 43 pop in (to somewhere) 25 pop round/over/in 44 porch 30 portray C1 77 pose v B2 47 position (= job) B2 64; (= opinion) **B2** 76 possess B2 3 possession B1 as in in possession of sth 98 post (= job) B2 64 postpone C1 82 potential adj (= may happen) **B2** 14, 26; (= can be successful) B2 17 potential n (= possibility of success) B2 17, 70 potentially B2 14

power n A2 as in in power 98

practically 100 practice makes perfect 88 praise v B2 43 pray B1 9 precaution 60 precedent C1 67 precious B2 57 precise B2 1 precisely (= exactly and correctly; for emphasis) B2 100 precision C1 1, 57 predictable B2 43 predominantly C1 100 preferably 37 pregnancy C1 77 pregnant B2 77 prejudice n **C1** 49, 61 preparation B2 44 prescribe C1 52 prescription C1 52 presence (= of a person) B2 22 present v (= give sth to sb; show/describe) B2 76 present n A1 as in at present 98 presentation B1 76 preserve B2 73 press-up 10 pressure n B1 as in under pressure 41 prestigious C1 78 presumably C1 100 pretentious 78 prevention as in prevention is better than cure 88 primarily B2 100 prime adj B2 52 principal (concern) adj B2 4 principle B2 54 printing B2 57

prior to sth B2 75

# prioritize 68 priority B2 41, 68 privacy B2 62 private (sector) adj B1 65 pro n as in the pros and cons 66, 86 probe n, v **C1** 56 problematic (1) 3 procedure B2 53 proceed (with sth) B2 95 producer B2 70 productive C1 68 productivity C1 68 profitable C1 93 progressive B2 93 prominent C1 50 promote B1 65 promotion B2 65 **prompt** *adj* 32, 68 prompt v C1 40 promptly 32, 68 proportion B2 54 proposal B2 92 propose B2 6, 82 prospect n (= that sth will happen) B2 44; prospects (= chance of being succesful) B2 65 protection B2 70 protective C1 93 protest n, v B1 59 protester B2 59 provided (that) 31, 75 providing (that) 75 pry (into sth) 62 psychological B2 18 psychologist B2 18 psychology B2 18 public adj A2, B1 61; in the public eye 62; in the

public interest 61; public appearance 61; public figure 61; public money 61; public sector 65

publication B2 57

Word list 249

publish A2 82 pull away (= drive off) 26 pull out (= of a car) 27 pulse 24

punch v, n C1 13

punctual 74

punctuality 74

pupil B2 1

cotton) B2 4

purely **B2** 100

purify 93

purpose A2 as in on purpose 98

pursue (= achieve sth over time) B2 45; (= continue with sth) B2 69

push (= make sb work harder) B2 2

## put

(= say or write sth) B2 2 a strain on sth/sb 19 all your eggs in one basket 88 money into sth 32 on the brakes 26 sth aside 68 sth forward B2 82 sth in 38 sth into practice 45 sth off 82 sth on (clothes) A2 9 up with 63 your feet up 39 your foot in it 23 pyjamas 31 qualification (= in a competition) 41; qualification(s) (= exams passed) B1 65 qualified adj B1 91 qualify B1 41 quit B1 65 quotation B1 57 quote n, v B1 57

Word list

250

#### racial B2 49

racism B2 3

racist adj, n B2 3

radiator 30

radical (= new and different) 1 48; (= wanting political change) 50; (= complete) 45

rage n 🚺 77

rainbow 28

raise (a problem, topic, etc.) **B2** 72, 82

raisin 24

rally (around/to sb/sth) 62

rank n B2 53

ransom n 56

rape n, v (1) 33 rapid (32) 79

rapidly B2 79

rapist 33

rare (= cooked a short time) 25

rash n 14

raspberry 24

rate n A2 48

rather A2 43

rational C1 77

## raw B2 25

rear-view mirror 26 reassess 91

reassure C1 72

rebel n C1, v 20

rebellion **C1** 59

rebellious 20

reboot v 40

recall v B2 74

reckon v B2 81

recognition A2 3

reconcile sth (with sth) 95

reconditioned 73

recovery B2 as in make a speedy recovery 63

recruit v B2 65

recruitment B2 65

recuperate 52

recuperation 52

red adj A1 as in (as) red as a beetroot 86

redecorate 38

redo 38, 91

redundant as in make sb redundant 65

refer sb (to sth) A2 52

referendum [ 58

refine 70

reflect (= like a mirror) B1 6; reflect (on sth) B2 6

reform v, n C1 45

refreshing (change) 45

refuge C1 49

refugee B2 49

refuse (bail) 53

refusal C1 92

regard sth/sb as sth B2 23, 54

regard n as in with regard to sb/sth C1 75

regarding prep 58, 75

regardless of sth/sb C1 72

region A2 47; in the region of sth 89

regional B2 47

register v (= put your name on a list) B2 52, 65

register n (= a list) B2 65; (= words/style that sb uses) 76

regret v B2 19, 34; n B2 34

regulation B2 80

regulator C1 61

rehab (abbreviation of rehabilitation) 62

rehabilitate 54

rehabilitation C1 54

reinforced (concrete) 80 relate to sth 42

release (tension) 62 13

relatively B2 41

resolve B2 72

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

relevance C1 42 relevant B2 42

reluctance 19

reluctant (1) 19, 99

remaining adj 63

remand v as in be remanded in custory 53

remark n B2 23

remarkable B2 36

remarkably B2 36

remind sb about sth B1 68; remind sb of sb/ sth B1 22

reminder of/about sth C1 68, 97

remote B1 36

rental (property) C1 38

reoffend 54

reoffender 54

replacement C1 3

report v A2 as in be reported to be sth C1 90

representative of sb/sth adj B2 97

reproduce C1 73

requirement B2 3

rescue n, v B2 60

resemblance 22

resemble C1 22

resident n B2 51

resignation (1) 92

resist (= refuse to accept

sth) B2 45; (= not be

resistance (= refusal to

by sth) C1 80

resistant to sth 97

harmed by sth) B2 80

accept sth) C1 45, 59; (=

ability not to be harmed

resign B2 65

reserve n B2 as in in

(= an extra force) 55

reserve 55; the reserve(s)

reproduction (1) 73

resort n (= a place for holidays) B2 36; a last/ final resort 84

respect n Bl as in gain sb's respect 19; out of respect (for sb) 98

respect v B1 82

responsibility B1 as in take responsibility 4

restless as in have a restless night 31

restoration C1 36, 45

restore B2 36, 45

restrict B2 31, 48

restricted 1

restriction B2 48

resume C1 48

retail n B2 65

retain B2 36, 70

retention 36, 70

retrospect as in in retrospect 74

reveal B2 18, 62

revelation C1 62

revenge 🚺 54

reversal 45

reverse v (a car) (1 26; (= a change sth to the opposite) (1 45

revolution **B2** 48

revolutionary adj 🔄 48

reward n, v B2 65

rewarding 66

rewrite 91

rhythm B2 42

rich (= of food) B2 25

ridiculous B2 17

right n (= moral or legal claim) B1 67

right adv B1 as in right away 98

right-wing 50

ripe adj 25

rival n B2 70

road sign 26

roar as in roar with laughter 4

rock v C1 62

rocket v 69

role model 5, 21

rough (= approximate) B2 30

root (= of a plant) B2 39

row1 n B1 as in in a row 41

row2 n (= argument) 71

rub v B2 13

ruin v B2 40

rule sth out 56

rumour v C1 62

run v Al as in run flat out 10

run after sb/sth 10

run away 10

run off with sth 10

run sb/sth over 10

rural B2 35

rush v B2 10; rushed off your feet 52

sack v C1 65

safe adj A2 as in safe and sound 85

safety helmet 70

saint CI 16

salty 25

sandal 29 satisfied B2 71

save (= rescue) A2 60

saving n B2 46

say v Al as in be said to be sth 90; to say the least 28

say n as in have a say in sth 51

saying 88

scale n B2 60

scalp 13

scandal B2 62

scanner 48

scare v B2 as in scare sb to death 43

scatter 27

scattered (showers) C1 28

semi-detached house 38

sense A2 as in a sense of

sensitive (= understanding

feelings) B2 19; sensitive

(to sth) (= easily affected

sentence sb (to sth) B2 53

seriously B1 as in take sb

seriously 17, 51, 72

serve (= do useful

service station 27

set v (= decide; fix sth for

others to copy) B1 67; set

(an example) B1 4; set (the alarm) B1 31

set n (= scenery in a film) 43

set sth up (= arrange for

sth to happen; make

equipment ready for

disagreement) B2 67

shake (your head) A29

shame n (= the feelings of

shareholder (C) 69

shed n 39

quilt, etc.) B2 18; that's a

shame, what a shame 34

Word list 251

use; build/put sth

somewhere) 82

work) B2 55

session B2 100

set sth aside 68

set sth off 69

setback 72

settings 40

settle (= end a

settle down 19

settlement (1) 92

severe B2 18, 63

sew sth (on) 9

shade n, v 94

shallow B2 35

senior adj B2 52

sensational 43

humour 23

sensible B1 16

by sth) B2 31

sentiment C1 42

sequence 43

sergeant B2 53

scene (= of an accident) A2 27

scenery 36

sceptical of/about sth (1) 97

schedule v B1 as in be scheduled for sth 90

scheme **B2** 56

scrape through (an exam) 71

scratch v, n B2 13

scream v, n B2 12

screenplay 43

screw v, n C1 9

scroll up/down 40

scrutinize 79

scrutiny C1 79

search warrant 53

second A1 as in have second thoughts (about sth) 2

second-hand 73

secret n A2 as in the secret of your success 71

sector B2 65

see (= find out) B1 2

seek B2 64

segregate 54

segregation 54

selective C1 93

self- (= of, to or by yourself) 54

self B2 52

self-assessment 54

self-catering 54

self-confidence 5

self-contained 54

self-employed 64

self-explanatory 1

sell v Al as in selling like

self-righteous 5

self-service 25

hot cakes 86

self-esteem 72

shiver v 29

shock n B2 18, 49; v B2 18

shocked B2 18

shoplifter 33

shoplifting 33

short as in at short notice 98; short (of sth) B2 81

shortage B2 28, 32

shortlist n 78

short-listed as in be shortlisted for sth 90

short-lived 79

short-sleeved 29

short-term B2 14

shortcut 5

shorten 93

shortfall 32

shortlist n 78

show off 16

show-off 16

shrug v C1 9

sibling B2 22

sick as in sick and tired 85; sick to death of sth 85

side effect 14

sigh v C1 12

sight n B1 11

signal n B1, v 8

significance B2 72

significant B2 28, 60, 72

significantly 60

silence n B2 12

silk B2 29

simplify 93

simply (= for emphasis; in a simple way) B1 100

since conj B2 (= because) 75

sincere B2 16

sing v A1 as in sing along to sth 42

single-minded 5

sit v A1 as in sit on the fence 76

252 Word list

skid v 26

skinny 7

skirt n Al as in a check(ed)/tight-fitting/ loose-fitting skirt 29

skull B2 15

slam v C1 12

slang 1

slap v C1, n 13

slave n B2 98 slave labour 98

sleep v A1 as in sleep like a log 31, 86

sleeper (= bed on a train) 31

sleeping bag 31

sleeping pill 31

sleepy 31

slender 7

slice v B1 24

slide v B2 13

slight (accent) B2 4

slim 7

slip (over/on sth) B2 74

slope n B2 39

slow down B1 26

slum 33

small as in it's a small world 88

smoke alarm 30

sneeze v 12

snore v 12, 31

so as in so as to do sth B2 87; so far, so good 88

soar (1) 69

socialism 50

socialist adj C1, n 50

socialize (with sb) 44

socket 9, 30

soil n B1 39

solely C1 66

solicitor C1 53

solve A2 72

somehow B2 89

something as in something like that/of that sort 89; something to do with sth 89 spot n (= particular area) B1 35

sprain (your wrist/

spread (a rumour) B1 4

squeeze v (= press) C1 13;

(a lemon) (1 24

stag party/night 29

stake n as in at stake 67

stand as in stand a chance

stand still 11; stand the

of (sth/doing sth) 41;

test of time 42

standby as in on

standby 46

starve B2 63

status B2 64

status quo 50

steadily B2 13

steering wheel 26

stereotype C1 49

stick (in sth) (= become

stick up for sb/yourself

into sth) B1 23

stick to sth B2 31

fixed) B1 74; (= put sth in

a place) B1 81; (= put sth

stereotypical 49

stew v 24

19, 51

stiff adj 10

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

steer C1 26

step n B2 30

step sth up 67

stand up for sth/sb 51

stare (at sb/sth) B2 19

stay v A1 as in stay put 63

stepfather/mother, etc. 22

spot v B2 11, 63

ankle) 15

squeeze n 13

stabilize C1 93

stage v B2 59

staircase 38

stance B2 76

stale 25

somewhat B2 43

soon as in sooner or later 85

sophisticated CI 23

sophistication 23

sort of 89

sort sth out B2 41

sought after 47

soul B2 1

sound adj C1 as in safe and sound 85

sound effect 43

spacious 38

spade 39

spare adj B2 30; spare part 5

specialist adj B2 52, 57

specialist n B2 52

specialize (in sth) B2 93

species **B2** 39, 47

specify B2 93

spectacular B2 11

speed up 26

speedy as in make a speedy recovery 63

spell n C1 (= a period of time) 28

spice n B2 24

spicy B1 25

spill v B2 9, 27

spirit (= lives after

death) B2 1

spiritual B2 20

split (= divide) B2 78;

spokesperson B2/

sponsor n B2 78

spokesman B2/

spokeswoman B2 51

(= divide to share) B2 23

splendid 73

spinach 24

still adj (= without moving) B1 11; (= adding to sth you have said) B1 85

stimulate 13

stool 30

storage (= space to keep things) C1 38; (= process of keeping information) C1 40

storey 38

straight away 98

straightforward 17

strain n C1 11; put a strain on sth/sb 19

strand as in be stranded 63

strangely as in strangely enough 100

strap n 29

stream (= small river) B2 35, 68; (= continuous flow of things) B2 68

strengthen B2 10, 93

stressed out 68

stretch v B2 10

strict B2 19, 37

strictly (= in all circumstances) B2, (= exactly/ completely) C1 100

strike n B2 67

strike (= of a disaster) B2 60; strike sb (= come to mind) **B2** 2; strike sb as sth B2 17

stroke v 13

stroll n, v 10

strong (accent) B1 4

structural C1 93

structurally 80

structure n B2 80

struggle n B2, v B2 17, 71

stuck (in sth) 63

stuff n B2 89

stumble v C1 10, 63

stunning **B2** 7, 36

style n A2 76

stylistic 76

subject to sth B2 97 subjective 79 submit **B2** 78 subsidize 32 subsidy C1 32 substitute sth/sb (for (sth/ sb) C1 95 substitute (for sth) n C1 97 subtitles 43 subtle C1 45 subtract sth from sth 32 suburb B2 34 success A2 71 suede 29 sufficient B2 91 sum (of sth) B2 32 summarize B1 76 summary B1 76 super adj B2 99 superb **C1** 43, 99 superior adj C1 99 supplement n C1 48 support v (= hold sth in position) B2 80 support n (= help) A2 69; (= sth that holds sth else) B2 80 supportive C1 21 suppress (feelings) 18; (= prevent sth from developing) C1 66 surface n 42

surfer 70

surgeon B2 48

surgery B2 48

surgical C1 48

surplus C1 32

surrender (to sb) C1 95

surround B2 34; be surrounded by sth 34

surrounding B2 34

survival (rate) B2 48

suspect v B2 52; suspect sb of (doing) sth B2 53

suspect n B2 53

suspend B2 as in be suspended from sth 90 suspicion **C1** 11, 60 suspicious 11,60 suspicious (circumstances) C1 6 suspiciously 11 swamp n 63 swap v 35 swear (= promise; use bad language) B2 1 swearing 1 sweat v, n 8 sweep v B2 9 sweeping (change) 45 sweet (of sb) 2 swelling 15 swerve v 26 switch (to sth) v B1 40, 46 swollen 15 sympathetic B2 21 sympathy B2 21 synonym 1 synonymous 1 tabloid n 62 tackle (a problem) B2 60, 72; (= in sport) v C1 94 tackle n C1 94

### take

(no) notice of sb/sth 52 a chance (on sth) 63 advantage of sth B2 97 after sb 22 an instant/immediate dislike to sb 19 exception to sth 23 it easy 36 money out 32 offence (at sth) 23 over (from sb) B2 82

over sth B2 82 responsibility 4 sb in 82

sth in 6

sb/sth seriously 17, 51, 72 sth away from sth 32 the blame 4 to sb/sth 17 up sth B1 57 your time 83 takeaway 25 takeover 69 tale B2 63 talk down to sb 57 talkative 16 tank n B2 55 tap v, n B2 13, 40 tasteful 99 tasteless 25 tasty 99 tattoon7 team spirit 66 tear n (= water from the eye) B2 11, 18; in tears 12, 18

tear v B2 9

teens **B2** 22

tendency B2 22

tender C1 25

tension B2 13, 43

term as in in the short/ medium/long term 46; on good/friendly/bad, etc. terms (with sb) 98

terraced house 38

territory B2 47

territorial 47

that as in that's a pity/ shame 34; that's life 84

the as in the (only) thing is ... 84; the end justifies the means 88; the grass is always greener (on the other side) 88; the more the merrier 88; the secret of your success 71

theory B1 79

therapy B2 54, 79

thereabouts as in or thereabouts 89

thereby C1 75

thick (= stupid) 2

thick (fog) **B1** 28

thin adj A2 as in (as) thin as a rake 86

thing as in be a good thing 84; be the last thing on sb's mind 2; the (only) thing is ... 84

think sth up 10

thorough B2 80

thoroughly B2 15

thoughtful C1 16

threat B2 47; under threat 47

threaten B2 33

thrilled **C1** 18

thrive C1 71

thriving 36

throw sth away (= remove; waste an opportunity) 41

thus **B2** 75

tie v as in be tied up (= busy) 2

tight-fitting 29

tighten 💶 93

time as in at one time 74; from time to time 74; in your own time 21; it's about/high time 74; take your time 83; time flies 74

time-consuming 44

timid 17

tin opener 25

tip n (= thin point) 63

title (= position of winner) 41

to as in to a large extent 85; to be (perfectly) honest 100; to go (= remaining) 81; to say the least 28; to some extent 50

tolerate C1 59

tons (of sth) B2 89

tone (= general character/ attitude) 62 57

too as in too good to be true 84

254 Word list

top n as in a silk top 29; off the top of my head 83

torrential (rain) 28

torture n, v 🚺 94

tough (childhood) B2 19; tough (meat) B2 25; (= strong) B2 19, 64; (= strict) B2 19

toxic C1 46

trace v B2, n C1 94

trade union 67

traffic warden 26

tragedy B2 77

transaction C1 32

transfer v B2 65

transform B2 41, 45

transformation C1 41, 45

transition B2 21

transplant v, n 48

transport n A2, v B1 94

trap v B2 60

tray 25

treat v as in treat sb like dirt 4; treat sb with respect 4; treat sb/ yourself (to sth) 25

trek n, v 36

tremor 60

trial as in trial and error 85

trip (over) B2 10

tropical B2 39

true Al as in it's true (that ...) 85; too good to be true 84

truly B2 16, 100

tumble dryer 46

tune n B2 42

tunnel n B2 98

turn out (to be sth) 73

turn up (= be found; arrive) 81

turnout C1 58 twist (your ankle) C1 15 two as in two heads are better than one 88; two wrongs don't make a right 88

typical (example) A2 4 tyre B1 26

ultimately B2 100

unacceptable B2 23 unanimous 43 unaware 32 unbiased 79 uncertainty B2 3 uncharacteristic 91

unconscious B2 15 unconventional 77,99 uncooked 91

### under

attack 98 construction 98 control 68 discussion 98 investigation 98 pressure 41 the weather 83 threat 47 undercooked 91 underemployed 91 underestimate v 41 undergo B2 36, 80 underpaid 91 undo 91 unemployed adj **B1** 65, 91 unfamiliar 91 unfavourable 99 unflattering 7 unforgettable 42, 74 unfortunate B2 73 unfurnished 38 unique (= special and unusual) B2 80; (= being the only one) 36

unit (= a single thing) A2, (= in a hospital) B2, (= a small machine) 79 unknown 91 unofficial 91 unpack 91 unpaid 91 unplug 40 unprecedented [] 91 unpredictable 43 ungualified 91 unsophisticated 23 unspoiled/unspoilt 36 unsuitable 1 untie 91 unwilling 19,99 unwind (a bandage) 91; (= relax) 36 unwrap 91 up as in be up to sb B2 81; up to (= as far as) B1 81; up to date 73 update v, n B1 40 uphold C1 59 upper adj B2 63 upright adv 59 upsetting 99 upwards B2 40 urge v B2 56 urgent B2 72 utter (chaos/nonsense) 4 vacancy (= for a job) 64; (= in a hotel) 37 vacant (= of a job) 64 vaccinate 48 vaccine 48 vacuum v 30 vacuum cleaner 30

vague (= not clear in a

person's mind) C1 74;

(= not having enough

vanish (into thin air) 🛄 11

information) C1 89

valid B2 53, 91

value v B2 66

vary B2 78

variable adj 🚺 78

www.oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/wordlists/oxford3000-5000

vast (= extremely large) B2 55; vast (majority) B2 4

venue **B2** 78

verification 79

verify **C1** 79

vertical adj B2 7

via B2 27

vibrant C1 36

vice 74

vicious C1 99

victory B2 41

view v (= think about
sth) B1 23

view n as in in view of sth 75

vigorously 13

villain 20

virtual B2 1

virtually 1, 100

virtue C1 74

virtuous 74

virus A2 15

visible B2 11

vision B2 11

visualize 93

vital B2 10

vitamin B2 48

vivid 74

V-neck(ed) 29

voluntary B2 51

volunteer B1 51

vow v C1, n 56

vulnerable **C1** 18

wage B2 67

waistcoat 29

wake n as in in the wake of sth C1 69

wander (a)round B2 10, 36

ward n 🖸 52

warm up/down 10

warm (welcome) B1 44

warrant n C1 53

watermelon 24

way as in by the way 87; no way A2 83

weaken C1 10, 93

wealth B2 50

wealthy B2 50

weapon B1 55

weather as in under the weather 83

weather forecast 28

weed n (1, v 39) weeding 39

weird B2 99

welcome adj as in a welcome change 45; make sb feel welcome 44

welcome n as in a warm welcome 44

well behaved 5

well-being C1 52

well done 25

well informed 17

what as in what a pity/ shame 34; what for? 83; what if ...? 52

wheel n A2 26

when as in when it comes to sth ... B2 83

whereas B2 75

whether (or not) B1 81

while (= although; whereas) B2 75

whisk n, v 24

whisper v, n B2 12; in a whisper 12

white adj A1 as in (as) white as a sheet 86

whole as in on the whole 34, 87

wholesale (change) 45

wicked 99

wide adv as in wide awake 31

widen C1 10

widespread B2 28

widow n C1 22

widower 22

wig 29 wildlife B2 39 will n B2 58 willing B2 99 windscreen 26

windscreen wiper 26

your as in your/the best

**bet** 83

youth B2 34

youth hostel 37

zebra crossing 26

wing mirror 26

wipe v **C1** 40

wipe sth out 47, 48

wisdom B2 21

wise B2 21

with as in with hindsight 74; with regard to sb/ sth C1 75; with the exception of sth/sb C1 97

withdraw B2 32

withstand 80

witness n B2 27

wonder n as in no wonder 84

wood(s) A2 39

work n Al as in out of work 65

work v B) as in work like a dream 86

workout (= exercise) C1 10

work out A2 10

work sth out B1 32

world Al as in it's a small world 88

worn out (= exhausted) 5, 31; (= no longer useful) 5

worse adv **B1** as in be worse off 66

worsen 18

wound v, n B2 15

wrap v B2 15

wreck v, n 56

wrinkle n 7

**yawn** v 31

yell v C1 12

you as in you bet 83; you never know 81, 84; you're kidding 83; you're not gonna believe this 2

Word list 255

# Abbreviations used in the book

adj	adjective	
adv	adverb	
[C]	(of a noun) countable	
conj	conjunction	
inf	informal	
n	noun	
OPP	opposite	
pl	plural	
pp	past participle	
prep	preposition	
pt	past tense	
sing	singular	
sb	somebody	10
sth	something	
SYN	synonym	
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable	
V	verb	

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.





www.oup.com/elt

# Oxford Word Skills

# Learn to use the most important words and phrases in English topic by topic

Based on the Oxford 5000<sup>™</sup>, Oxford Word Skills teaches you the words and phrases you need to use in English in real life. The Oxford 5000 is a list of the 5,000 essential core words that every learner of English needs to know, graded by CEFR level.







- learn over 2,800 words and phrases
- improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- practise the words in context
- study 100 units (20 extra!) with more practice
- use in the classroom and for self-study

Now with one year's access to the best-selling Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary app. Use the app with Oxford Word Skills to:



- listen to the pronunciation of each new word and do exercises on pronunciation
- look up the meaning of any word you don't know

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing material for learning and teaching vocabulary.

